SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules

Manual · 03/2013



SINAMICS

SIEMENS

SIEMENS

SINAMICS

S120 Cabinet Modules

Manual

Preface	
Safety information	1
System overview	2
Mechanical installation	3
Electrical installation	4
Cabinet Modules	5
Maintenance and servicing	6
Diagnostics	7
Options	8

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

DANGER

indicates that death or severe personal injury will result if proper precautions are not taken.

∕ WARNING

indicates that death or severe personal injury may result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠ CAUTION

indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE

indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

↑ WARNING

Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Preface

SINAMICS documentation

The SINAMICS documentation is organized in the following categories:

- General documentation/catalogs
- Manufacturer/service documentation
- Electronic documentation

This documentation is part of the manufacturer/service documentation for SINAMICS. All of the documents are available individually.

Please contact your local Siemens office for further information about other available SINAMICS publications.

For the sake of simplicity, this documentation does not contain comprehensive detailed information about all types of the product and cannot cover every conceivable case of installation, operation, or maintenance.

The contents of this documentation are not part of an earlier or existing agreement, a promise, or a legal agreement, nor do they change this. The Purchase Agreement contains the complete and exclusive obligations of Siemens, including the warranty provisions. These contractual warranty provisions are neither extended nor curbed as a result of the statements made in this documentation.

Target group

This documentation is intended for machine manufacturers, commissioning engineers, and service personnel who use the SINAMICS drive system.

Objective

This manual describes the hardware components and design of the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules. It provides information about installation, electrical connection, and cabinet design.

Technical support

If you have any questions, please contact our hotline:

Time zone Europe and Africa		
Phone	+49 (0) 911 895 7222	
Fax	+49 (0) 911 895 7223	
Internet	http://www.siemens.com/automation/support-request	

Time zone America		
Phone	+1 423 262 2522	
Fax	+1 423 262 2200	
E-mail	techsupport.sea@siemens.com	

Time zone Asia/Pacific		
Phone	+86 1064 757 575	
Fax	+86 1064 747 474	
E-mail	support.asia.automation@siemens.com	

Note

Country-specific telephone numbers for technical support are provided at the following Internet address:

http://www.automation.siemens.com/partners

Internet addresses

Up-to-date information about our products can be found on the Internet at the following address:

http://www.siemens.com

Information about SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules can be found under: http://www.siemens.com/sinamics-s120-cabinet-modules

EMC limit values for South Korea

이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.

For sellers or other user, please keep in mind that this device in an A-grade electromagnetic wave device. This device is intended to be used in areas other than home.

The EMC limit values that have to be observed for Korea correspond to the limit values of the EMC product standard for variable-speed electric drives EN 61800-3 of category C2 or the limit value class A, Group 1 according to EN 55011.

With suitable additional measures the limit values to category C2 or to limit class A, Group 1, are maintained. Additional measures, such as the use of an additional RFI suppression filter (EMC filter), may be necessary.

In addition, measures for a correct EMC-compliant configuration of the plant are described in detail in this manual and the "SINAMICS Low Voltage Configuration Manual".

Table of contents

	Preface.		3
1	Safety information		
	1.1	Requirements	17
	1.2	Electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD)	18
	1.3	Safety information	19
	1.4	Residual risks	22
2	System o	overview	25
	2.1	Overview	25
	2.2	Field of application	27
	2.3	Benefits	28
	2.4 2.4.1 2.4.2 2.4.3 2.4.4	Line Modules General information Basic Line Modules Smart Line Modules Active Line Modules	29 29
	2.5 2.5.1 2.5.2	DC link components Braking Modules as an option for a Motor Module or a Line Module Central Braking Modules	33
	2.6 2.6.1 2.6.2	Motor Modules	33
	2.7	Auxiliary Power Supply Modules	33
	2.8	Overview of options	34
	2.9	System structure	36
	2.10	System data	
	2.11 2.11.1 2.11.2 2.11.2.1 2.11.2.2	Derating data Derating data for booksize format Derating data for chassis format General Derating measures.	39 39 39
3	Mechanical installation		43
	3.1	Important notes	43
	3.2	Mechanical installation: Checklist	46
	3.3 3.3.1 3.3.2	Installation	48

	3.3.2.1	On-site requirements	48
	3.3.2.2	Requirements on the levelness of the floor	50
	3.3.2.3	Shipping and handling indicators	51
	3.3.2.4	Unpacking the cabinets	53
	3.3.2.5	Tools required	53
	3.3.3	Lifting the cabinet units off the transport pallet and installing them	54
	3.3.4	Disassembling the crane transport assembly	55
	3.3.5	Connection to the foundation	
	3.3.6	Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units	58
4	Electrica	l installation	63
	4.1	Safety information	63
	4.2	Electrical installation: Checklist	64
	4.3	Insulation test	71
	4.4	EMC-compliant design	72
	4.5	Connecting shielded three-phase cables	72
	4.6	Connections	73
	4.6.1	Cable lugs	73
	4.6.2	Connection overview	
	4.6.3	PE busbar	75
	4.6.3.1	General information	75
	4.6.3.2	Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units	75
	4.6.3.3	Connection according to the system-side grounding concept	
	4.6.3.4	Connecting external cables to the PE busbar	77
	4.6.4	DC busbar	78
	4.6.4.1	General information	78
	4.6.4.2	Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units	78
	4.6.5	Auxiliary power supply system	81
	4.6.5.1	General information	81
	4.6.5.2	Connection overview	86
	4.6.5.3	Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units	87
	4.6.5.4	Connecting to the infeed	89
	4.6.6	Connecting the motor cables	89
	4.6.7	Line supply connections	93
	4.6.8	Adjusting the fan voltage	94
	4.6.9	Connecting Cabinet Modules to non-grounded line supplies (IT systems)	96
	4.6.10	Signal connections	106
	4.6.11	Other connections	107
	4.6.12	Cable routing	107
	4.6.12.1	General information	107
	4.6.12.2	Cable routing for Line Connection Modules	109
	4.6.12.3	Cable routing for Basic Line Modules	112
		Cable routing for Smart Line Modules	
		Cable routing for Active Line Modules	
		Cable routing for Booksize Base Cabinets and Booksize Cabinet Kit	
		Cable routing for Motor Modules in the chassis format	
		Cable routing for Central Braking Modules	
	4.6.12.9	Cable routing for Auxiliary Power Supply Modules	136

5	Cabinet	Modules	139
	5.1	Line Connection Modules	139
	5.1.1	General information	139
	5.1.2	Description	140
	5.1.2.1	Fuse switch disconnector (input current ≤ 800 A)	143
	5.1.2.2	Circuit breaker (input current > 800 A)	143
	5.1.2.3	Terminal block -X40 external 230 V AC auxiliary infeed	145
	5.1.3	Versions of Line Connection Modules	146
	5.1.3.1	Version L42 for Active Line Modules	146
	5.1.3.2	Version L43 for Basic Line Modules	147
	5.1.3.3	Version L44 for Smart Line Modules	
	5.1.4	Options	150
	5.1.5	Technical data	
	5.2	Basic Line Modules	156
	5.2.1	General information	156
	5.2.2	Description	
	5.2.3	Interface description	
	5.2.3.1	General information	
	5.2.3.2	Control Interface Module	
	5.2.3.3	X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection	
	5.2.3.4	DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402	
	5.2.4	Options	
	5.2.5	Technical data	
	5.3	Smart Line Modules	168
	5.3.1	General information	
	5.3.2	Description	
	5.3.3	Interface description	
	5.3.3.1	General information	
	5.3.3.2	Control Interface Module	
	5.3.3.3	X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection	
	5.3.3.4	DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402	
	5.3.4	Options	
	5.3.5	Technical data	
	5.4	Active Line Modules	
	5.4.1	General information	
	5.4.2	Description	
	5.4.3	Interface description	
	5.4.3.1	General information	
	5.4.3.2	Control Interface Module	
	5.4.3.3	X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection	189
	5.4.3.4	DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402	190
	5.4.4	Options	191
	5.4.5	Technical data	192
	5.5	Booksize format Motor Modules	
	5.5.1	General information	
	5.5.2	Description	
	5.5.3	Interface description	
	5.5.3.1	General information	203
	5.5.3.2	Customer terminal block X55.1	204
	5.5.4	Ontions	205

	5.5.5	Technical data	207
	5.5.6	Overload capability	211
	5.6	Chassis format Motor Modules	212
	5.6.1	General information	
	5.6.2	Description	
	5.6.3	X55 customer terminal strip	
	5.6.3.1	General information	
	5.6.3.2	X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection	
	5.6.3.3	X46 Brake control and monitoring	
	5.6.3.4	DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402	
	5.6.4	Options	
	5.6.5	Technical data	
	5.6.6	Overload capability	
	5.7	Central Braking Modules	
	5.7.1	General information	
	5.7.2	Description	
	5.7.3	Interfaces	
	5.7.4 5.7.5	Options Technical data	
	5.7.5 5.7.6	Derating data	
	5.7.7	Braking resistor	
	5.7.7 5.7.7.1	Description	
	5.7.7.2	Safety information	
	5.7.7.3	Duty cycle	
	5.7.7.4	Interfaces on the braking resistor	
	5.7.7.5	Configuring the "Overtemperature" checkback	
	5.7.7.6	Technical data	
	5.8	Auxiliary Power Supply Modules	255
	5.8.1	General information	
	5.8.2	Description	
	5.8.3	Fuse switch disconnector (-Q1)	
	5.8.4	Transformer (-T2) for generating the auxiliary voltage 230 V AC	
	5.8.5	Auxiliary power supply system	
	5.8.6	Customer interfaces for supplying power to an additional auxiliary power supply system	
	5.8.7	Options	264
	5.8.8	Technical data	265
6	Mainten	ance and servicing	267
	6.1	Chapter content	267
	6.2	Cleaning the cabinet	268
	6.3	Servicing the cabinet	268
	6.4	Replacing components	270
	6.4.1	General information	
	6.4.2	Safety information	
	6.4.3	Installation device for power blocks	
	6.4.4	Replacing the filter mats	
	6.4.5	Replacing power units	
	6.4.6	Replacing the Motor Module, booksize format	

	6.4.7	Replacing the power block, chassis format	277
	6.4.7.1	Replacing the power block, frame size FB	
	6.4.7.2	Replacing the power block, frame sizes GB and GD	
	6.4.7.3	Replacing the power block, frame size FX	
	6.4.7.4	Replacing the power block, frame size GX	
	6.4.7.5	Replacing the power block, frame size HX	
	6.4.7.6 6.4.8	Replacing the power block, frame size JX	
	6.4.8.1	Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX	
	6.4.8.2	Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX	
	6.4.8.3	Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX	
	6.4.8.4	Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX	
	6.4.9	Replacing the Control Unit	306
	6.4.10	Replacing the fans	
		Replacing the fan, Booksize Cabinet Kit	
		Replacing the fan, frame sizes FB, GB and GD	
		Replacing the fan, sizes FX and GX	
		Replacing the fan, size HX	
		Replacing the fan, frame size JX	
		Replacing the fan, frame size Gl	
		Replacing the fan, frame size HI	
		Replacing the fan, frame size JI	
	6.4.11	Replacing the fuses	
		Replacing the fuses for the auxiliary power supply	
		Replacing the fuses (F71 to F73) in the Line Connection Module	
		Replacing fuses in the fuse switch disconnector for Booksize Cabinet Kit	
		Replacing the DC fuses for chassis format	
		Replacing cylindrical fuses	
	6.4.11.6	Replacing the LV HRC fuses	
	6.4.13	Replacing the pre-charging resistors of the DC interface (option L37)	
	6.4.14	Replacing the backup battery for the cabinet operator panel	
	6.5	Forming the DC link capacitors	
7		-	
7	Diagnos	tics	
	7.1	Chapter content	
	7.2	LEDs on the CU320-2 DP Control Unit	348
	7.3	LEDs on the CU320-2 PN Control Unit	351
	7.4	LEDs on the CBE20 Communication Board	354
	7.5	LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Basic Line Module	356
	7.6	LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Smart Line Module	357
	7.7	LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Active Line Module	358
	7.8	LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Motor Module, chassis format	359
	7.9	LEDs on the Motor Module in the booksize format	360
	7.10	LEDs on the Central Braking Module	361
	7.11	LEDs on the Voltage Sensing Module (VSM) in the Active Interface Module	361

	7.12	LEDs on the SMC10 Sensor Module	. 362
	7.13	LEDs on the SMC20 Sensor Module	. 362
	7.14	LEDs on the SMC30 Sensor Module	. 363
	7.15	LEDs on the TM54F Terminal Module	. 364
	7.16	LEDs on the temperature sensor module TM150	. 364
	7.17	LEDs on the SITOP power supply unit	. 365
8	Options		. 367
	8.1	Safety information	. 367
	8.2	D14, Preliminary copy of customer documentation	. 368
	8.3	G20, CBC10 Communication Board	. 368
	8.4	G33, CBE20 Communication Board	. 372
	8.5	G51 to G54, temperature sensor module TM150	
	8.5.1	General information	
	8.5.2 8.5.3	Interfaces Connection example	
	8.6	G56, contactor monitoring	
	8.7	K01 to K05, safety license for 1 to 5 axes	
	8.8	K08, AOP30 advanced operator panel	. 384
	8.9	K46, Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC10	. 386
	8.9.1	General information	
	8.9.2 8.9.3	Safety information	
	8.9.4	Connection example	
	8.10	K48, Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC20	
	8.10.1	General information	
	8.10.2 8.10.3	Safety information	
	8.10.4	Connection example	
	8.11	K50, Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC30	. 395
	8.11.1	General information	
	8.11.2 8.11.3	Safety information	
	8.11.4	Connection example	
	8.12	K51, VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module Cabinet-Mounted	. 404
	8.13	K52, Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	. 406
	8.14	K70, fan power supply	. 407
	8.15	K73, auxiliary power supply 24 V DC	. 407
	8.16	K76, auxiliary voltage generating unit in the Line Connection Module	. 408
	8.17	K82, terminal module for activating safety functions "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1"	. 410
	8.18	K87, Terminal Module TM54F	. 411

8.19 K88, Safe Brak	e Adapter SBA 230 V AC	413
8.20 K90, Control U	nit CU320-2 DP	415
	ation	
8.20.2 Connection over	erview	416
8.20.3 Connection exa	ample	419
8.20.4 X55 customer t	terminal strip	421
8.20.4.1 Overview		421
8.20.4.2 X41 EP termina	al / temperature sensor connection	424
	trol and monitoring	
	outs/outputs	
	outs/outputs	
	RIVE-CLiQ interface	
	JS	
	dress switch	
	ernet)	
	erface (RS232)	
•	kets T0, T1, T2	
	card	
	emory card	
	ons	
•	memory card parameter settings	
	CompactFlash card	
8.21 K94, Performan	nce extension for CU320-2	438
8.22 K95. Control U	nit CU320-2 PN	439
	ation	
8.22.2 Connection over	erview	440
8.22.3 Connection exa	ample	443
8.22.4 X55 customer t	terminal strip	445
8.22.4.1 Overview		445
8.22.4.2 X41 EP termina	al / temperature sensor connection	448
8.22.4.3 X46 Brake con	trol and monitoring	449
	outs/outputs	
	outs/outputs	
	RIVE-CLiQ interface	
	ernet)	
	erface (RS232)	
	ROFINET connection	
•	kets _{T0, T1, T2}	
•	card	
•	emory card	
	ns	
	memory card parameter settings	
8.22.10.4 Slot for the	CompactFlash card	460
8.23 L00, use in the	first environment according to EN 61800-3, Category C2 (TN/TT systems) \dots	461
8.24 L07, dv/dt filter	compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter	463
8.25 L08/L09, motor	reactor/2 motor reactors in series	.466
8.26 L10, dv/dt filter	plus Voltage Peak Limiter	468
	actor for Line Connection Modules < 800 A	

8.28	L21, Operation in an IT system	472
8.29	L22, supplied as standard without line reactor	473
8.30	L25, circuit breaker in withdrawable unit design	474
8.31 8.31.1 8.31.2 8.31.3	L34, output-side circuit breaker General information Switching cycles for the output-side circuit breaker Overview diagram of option L34	475 477 479
8.31.4.2	Parameter assignment Parameterization with script Parameterization with free function blocks Parameterization with DCC (Drive Control Chart)	480 480
8.32 8.32.1 8.32.2 8.32.2.1	L37, DC interface incl. pre-charging input circuit for the relevant DC link capacitance General information DC interface incl. pre-charging for Booksize Cabinet Kits Important safety precautions	485 485
8.32.2.2 8.32.2.3 8.32.2.4	DC interface, principle of operation Commissioning the DC interface with option K90/K95 Commissioning the DC coupling without option K90/K95	487 487 487
8.32.3.2 8.32.3.3	DC interface incl. pre-charging for Motor Modules in the chassis format Important safety precautions Accessibility of the DC connection to the Motor Module Measuring points for verifying isolation from supply	489 490 492
8.32.3.5 8.32.3.6	Installation	494 495
8.33	L41, current transformer upstream of main switch	496
8.34 8.35	L42/L43/L44, Line Connection Module for Active/ Basic/Smart Line Modules	
8.36 8.36.1 8.36.2	L46/L47, grounding switch upstream/downstream of main breaker	499
8.37	L50, cabinet lighting with service socket	501
8.38	L51, holder for ARC detector	502
8.39	L55, cabinet anti-condensation heating	503
8.40 8.40.1 8.40.2	L61/L62, L64/L65, braking units	505
8.40.3 8.40.4 8.40.5 8.40.6	S1 - Threshold switch Braking Module Example connection of Braking Module Braking resistors	509 512 512
8.40.7 8.41	Technical data	
8.42	M06, base 100 mm high, RAL 7022	

8.43	M07, cable-marshalling compartment 200 mm high, RAL 7035	522
8.44	M13, Line connection from above	524
8.45 8.45.1 8.45.2	M21, degree of protection IP21	525
8.46 8.46.1 8.46.2	M23/M43/M54, degree of protection IP23/IP43/IP54	528
8.47	M26/M27, side panels mounted on right and left	535
8.48	M51, motor reactor terminal connection	536
8.49	M59, closed cabinet door, air inlet from below through floor opening	537
8.50	M60, additional shock protection	538
8.51 8.51.1 8.51.2	M70, EMC shield bus General information Connecting the cables to the EMC shield bus	539
8.52	M77, version without component support plates and without additional control components	540
8.53 8.53.1 8.53.2	M80 to M87, DC busbar system	541
8.54	M90, crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	543
8.55	N52, DC link fuses for Basic Line Modules	544
8.56	P10, measuring instrument for line values (installed in the cabinet doors)	544
8.57	P11, measuring instrument for line values with PROFIBUS connection (installed in the cabinet door)	545
8.58	Y11, factory assembly into transport units	547
Index		549

Safety information

1.1 Requirements



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

The cabinet units described in this manual are used in industrial high-voltage installations. During operation, this equipment contains rotating and live, bare parts. For this reason, it could cause severe injury or significant material damage if the required covers are removed without authorization, if the equipment is used or operated incorrectly, or if it has not been properly maintained.

When the machines are used in non-industrial areas, the installation location must be protected against unauthorized access (by protective fencing, for example) and appropriate signs must be displayed.

The persons responsible for the safety of the plant are under an obligation to ensure that:

- The basic planning work for the plant and the transport, assembly, installation, commissioning, maintenance, and repair work is carried out by qualified personnel and/or checked by the experts responsible.
- All the documentation for the plant is always readily at hand.
- The technical data and specifications regarding the applicable installation, connection, environmental, and operating conditions are always observed.
- The plant-specific assembly and safety guidelines are observed and personal protection equipment is used.
- No work whatsoever is carried out by unqualified personnel either on this equipment or in its vicinity.

These instructions are intended for qualified personnel and only contain information and notes relating to the intended purpose of the machines.

The operating instructions and the machine documentation are available in the languages specified in the supply contracts.

Note

Support by SIEMENS service centers

We recommend engaging the support and services of your local Siemens service center for all planning, installation, commissioning, and maintenance work.

1.2 Electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD)

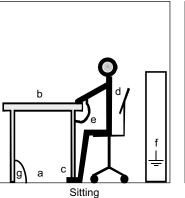
CAUTION

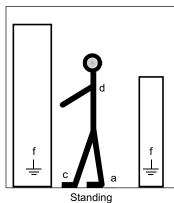
Components sensitive to electrostatic charge

The Cabinet Modules contain electrostatic sensitive devices. These components can be easily destroyed if not handled properly. Observe the following notes if you nevertheless have to work with electronic modules:

- You should only touch electronic modules if absolutely necessary.
- If you do have to touch modules, your body must be electrically discharged first. For this purpose, you are advised to wear a grounded ESD wristband.
- Modules must not come into contact with highly insulating materials (such as plastic parts, insulated desktops, articles of clothing manufactured from man-made fibers).
- · Modules must only be set down on conductive surfaces.
- Modules and components should only be stored and transported in conductive packaging (such as metalized plastic boxes or metal containers).
- If the packaging is not conductive, the modules must be wrapped with a conductive packaging material. (such as conductive foam rubber or household aluminum foil), prior to placing them in the packaging.

The necessary ESD protective measures are elucidated once again in the following illustration:





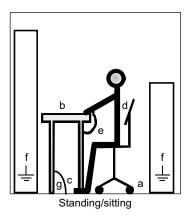


Figure 1-1 ESD protective measures

- a = conductive floor surface
- b = ESD table
- c = ESD shoes
- d = ESD overall
- e = ESD wristband
- f = ground connection for cabinet units
- g = connection to conductive floor

1.3 Safety information



Qualified personnel

SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules must only be commissioned by suitably qualified personnel.

The personnel must take into account the information provided in the technical customer documentation for the product, and be familiar with and observe the specified danger and warning notices.

Operational electrical equipment and motors have parts and components which are at hazardous voltage levels.

Dangerous motion of the driven machine components is possible when the system is operational.

All work on the electrical system must be carried out when the system has been disconnected from the power supply and is in a de-energized condition.

Note

Machinery directive (2006/42/EC)

When the European common market was launched, a decision was made that the domestic Standards and regulations of all of the EU Member States relating to the technical implementation of machines would be harmonized. This meant that, as an internal market Directive, the content of the Machinery Directive had to be implemented by the individual member states as national legislation. For the Machinery Directive, this was realized with the aim of achieving standard protective goals and, in turn, removing technical trade barriers. In accordance with the definition of a machine ("an assembly of linked parts or components, at least one of which moves"), this Directive is extremely extensive. The revised version from 2006, which shall be binding as of Dec. 29, 2009 without transitional period, has expanded its area of application and now includes "Logic units to ensure safety functions".

The machinery directive involves the implementation of machines. It has 28 Articles and 12 Annexes. The basic safety and health requirements specified in Annex I of the Directive must be fulfilled for the safety of machines.

The protective goals must be implemented responsibly to ensure compliance with the Directive.

Manufacturers of a machine must verify that their machine complies with the basic requirements. This verification is facilitated by means of harmonized standards.

1.3 Safety information

DANGER

Five safety rules

When carrying out any kind of work on electrical devices, the following "five safety rules" must always be observed in accordance with EN 50110-1 and EN 50110-2:

- Disconnect from power supply.
- · Protect against reconnection.
- · Make sure that the equipment is de-energized.
- Ground and short-circuit.
- Cover or enclose adjacent components that are still live.



Correct and safe operation

Safe, problem-free operation of SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules requires proper transportation, storage, setup, and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance.

The details in the catalogs and proposals also apply to the design of special equipment versions.

In addition to the danger and warning information provided in the technical customer documentation, the applicable national, local, and plant-specific regulations and requirements must be taken into account.

Only protective extra-low voltages (PELV) that comply with EN 60204-1 may be connected to any connections and terminals that are intended for the voltage range between 0 V and 48 V.

NOTICE

Disconnecting the connections before a voltage test

As part of routine tests, SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules undergo a voltage test in accordance with EN 61800-5-1. Prior to performing the voltage test for electrical equipment of industrial machines in accordance with EN 60204-1, Section 18.4, all connections of the Cabinet Modules must be disconnected/removed to prevent the units from being damaged.

Motors must be connected according to the circuit diagrams provided.

Note

When operated in dry operating areas, SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules with three-phase induction motors conform to Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC.

SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules with three-phase induction motors conform to EMC Directive 2004/108/EC in the configurations specified in the associated EC Declaration of Conformity, provided that the configuration guidelines and actions are consistently applied.

1.3 Safety information

NOTICE

Malfunctions caused by mobile telephones

Operating the equipment in the immediate vicinity (< 1.5 m) of mobile telephones with a transmitter power of > 1 W may lead to incorrect operation.

1.4 Residual risks

Residual risks of power drive systems

The control and drive components of a power drive system (PDS) are approved for industrial and commercial use in industrial line supplies. Their use in public electrical grids requires a different configuration and/or additional measures.

These components may only be operated in closed housings or in higher-level control cabinets with protective covers that are closed, and when all of the protective devices are used.

These components may only be handled by qualified and trained technical personnel who are knowledgeable and observe all of the safety information and instructions on the components and in the associated technical user documentation.

When carrying out a risk assessment of the machine/plant in accordance with the EU Machinery Directive, the machine manufacturer/plant operator must consider the following residual risks associated with the control and drive components of a power drive system (PDS).

- 1. Unintentional movements of driven machine components during commissioning, operation, maintenance, and repairs caused by, for example:
 - Hardware defects and/or software errors in the sensors, controllers, actuators, and connection technology
 - Response times of the controller and drive
 - Operating and/or ambient conditions not within the scope of the specification
 - Condensation / conductive contamination
 - Parameterization, programming, cabling, and installation errors
 - Use of radio devices / cellular phones in the immediate vicinity of the controller
 - External influences / damage
- 2. In the event of a fault, exceptionally high temperatures, including open fire, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc. can occur inside and outside the converter, e.g.:
 - Component malfunctions
 - Software errors
 - Operating and/or ambient conditions not within the scope of the specification
 - External influences / damage

Converters of the Open Type/IP20 degree of protection must be installed in a control cabinet (or protected by another equivalent measure) in such a way that contact with fire inside and outside the converter is prevented.

- 3. Hazardous touch voltages caused by, for example:
 - Component malfunctions
 - Influence of electrostatic charging
 - Induction of voltages in moving motors
 - Operating and/or ambient conditions not within the scope of the specification
 - Condensation / conductive contamination
 - External influences / damage
- Electrical, magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated in operation that can pose a
 risk to people with a pacemaker, implants or metal replacement joints, etc. if they are too
 close.
- 5. Release of environmental pollutants or emissions as a result of improper operation of the system and/or failure to dispose of components safely and correctly.

Note

The components must be protected against conductive pollution (e.g. by installing them in a cabinet with degree of protection IP54B acc. to EN 60529).

Provided conductive pollution can be prevented at the installation site, the degree of

Provided conductive pollution can be prevented at the installation site, the degree of protection for the cabinet can be decreased accordingly.

For more information about residual risks of the Power Drive System components, see the relevant chapters in the technical user documentation.

1.4 Residual risks

Electromagnetic fields

/!\warning

Electromagnetic fields "electro smog"

Electromagnetic fields are generated by the operation of electrical power engineering installations such as transformers, converters or motors.

Electromagnetic fields can interfere with electronic devices, which could cause them to malfunction. For example, the operation of pacemakers can be impaired, potentially leading to damage to a person's health or even death. It is therefore forbidden for persons with pacemakers to enter these areas.

The plant operator is responsible for taking appropriate measures (labels and hazard warnings) to adequately protect operating personnel and others against any possible risk.

- Observe the relevant nationally applicable health and safety regulations. In Germany, "electromagnetic fields" are subject to regulations BGV B11 and BGR B11 stipulated by the German statutory industrial accident insurance institution.
- · Display adequate hazard warning notices.



- Place barriers around hazardous areas.
- Take measures, e.g. using shields, to reduce electromagnetic fields at their source.
- Make sure that personnel are wearing the appropriate protective gear.

System overview 2

2.1 Overview

SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules are the components of a modular cabinet unit system for multi-axis drives with a central supply infeed and a common DC link busbar, as typically found in paper-making machines, roller mills, test stands, or hoisting gear.

They contain built-in units from the SINAMICS S120 product series, thus making them an ideal supplement to the SINAMICS G150 and SINAMICS S150 series of cabinet units for single drives.

All drive components, from the supply infeed to the motor-side inverters, are configured in a clear, compact layout in the individual Cabinet Modules. They can be combined with great flexibility and can be optimally adapted to customer-specific requirements thanks to a comprehensive array of options.

The main components of the system are as follows:

- Line Connection Modules with line-side components such as contactors, fuses, and circuit breakers, as well as line reactors for Basic Line Modules and Smart Line Modules.
- Line Modules for the infeed in the following versions:
 - Basic Line Modules for 2-quadrant operation
 - Smart Line Modules for 4-quadrant operation
 - Active Line Modules for 4-quadrant operation with negligible line harmonic distortions
- Central Braking Modules for short-term braking
- The following types of Motor Module:
 - Booksize Cabinet Kits
 - Chassis format
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules to supply the auxiliary power supply system
- Control Units

Standardized interfaces for both the power and the control connections facilitate configuration and installation. Communication between the power modules and the central Control Unit takes place via DRIVE-CLiQ, the internal drive serial interface.

2.1 Overview

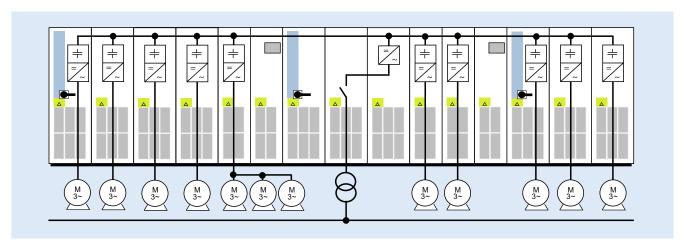


Figure 2-1 Example of a drive line-up with SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules for a multi-motor drive

The following table provides an overview of the voltage ranges and power ratings available for the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules:

Table 2-1 Overview of voltage ranges and power ratings of the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules

	Line voltage 3 AC	Input current	DC link voltage DC	DC link current	Output current	Power
Line Connection Modules 1)	380 480 V 500 690 V	250 3200 A 280 3200 A				
Basic Line Modules 1)	380 480 V 500 690 V	365 1630 A 260 1580 A	510 650 V 675 930 V	420 1880 A 300 1880 A		200 900 kW 250 1500 kW
Smart Line Modules 1)	380 480 V 500 690 V	463 1430 A 463 1430 A	510 650 V 675 930 V	550 1700 A 550 1700 A		250 800 kW 450 1400 kW
Active Line Modules 1)	380 480 V 500 690 V	210 1405 A 575 1270 A	570 720 V 750 1035 V	235 1574 A 644 1422 A		132 900 kW 560 1400 kW
Motor Modules Booksize	(380 480 V)		510 750 V	3.6 to 200 A	3 to 200 A	1.6 107 kW
Motor Modules Chassis 1)	(380 480 V) (500 690 V)		510 750 V 675 1080 V	252 1686 A 102 1524 A	210 1405 A 85 1270 A	110 800 kW 75 1200 kW
Central Braking Modules 1)	(380 480 V) (500 600 V) (660 690 V)		510 750 V 675 940 V 890 1080 V			500 1000 kW 550 1100 kW 630 1200 kW
Auxiliary Power Supply Module	380 690 V	125 250 A				

¹⁾ The power range can be extended as required by connecting up to 4 identical modules in parallel.

2.2 Field of application

The modular SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules drive system is used to coordinate multiple motors in a multi-axis drive system.

Typical examples include:

- Paper-making machines
- Roller mills
- Hoisting gear
- Test stands

Moreover, high-power single drives (parallel connection) can also be implemented with Cabinet Modules.

2.3 Benefits

The outstanding system features of the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules provide plant operators with the following advantages:

- Process optimization with minimal effort:
 - A standard PROFIBUS or PROFINET interface and various analog and digital interfaces allow them to be easily integrated into automation solutions.
 - Vector control ensures that they fulfill the most exacting requirements regarding the accuracy and dynamic response of drives.
- High level of reliability and availability:
 - Individual modules and power components can be replaced quickly and easily, which ensures a higher level of plant availability.
- Energy savings during operation:
 - The motor-side inverters are coupled via the common DC link and allow energy to be exchanged between motors that are motoring and generating. This means that energy is saved, there is less load on the supply infeed and line harmonics are reduced.
 - The supply infeed is generally only dimensioned for the maximum motor power required / maximum motor current and not the sum of the energy requirements of the Motor Modules connected to the DC link. For example, for conveyor systems or engine test stands with Motor Modules that are simultaneously in the motoring and generating modes, this frequently results in smaller supply infeeds.
- Cost minimization during operation, maintenance, and service:
 - Simple commissioning thanks to the menu-driven "STARTER" commissioning tool.
 - Optional menu-prompted AOP30 advanced operator panel for clear and user-friendly drive monitoring / diagnostics, commissioning, and operation using a user-friendly, backlit graphic LCD for plain-text display and a bar-type display of process variables.
 - All device modules are easily accessible, which makes them extremely service friendly.
- Space-saving design
- Environmentally-friendly operation:
 - The converters are exceptionally quiet and compact thanks to state-of-the-art IGBT power semiconductors and an innovative cooling concept.

2.4 Line Modules

2.4.1 General information

Power is fed to the drive line-up via Line Modules, which generate a DC voltage from the line voltage and, therefore, supply energy to the Motor Modules connected to the DC link. They are suitable for connection to systems grounded at the neutral point (TN, TT) and non-grounded (IT) systems.

The Line Modules are connected to the incoming supply via Line Connection Modules and are implemented in accordance with EN 61800-3 Category C3.

2.4.2 Basic Line Modules

Basic Line Modules are designed only for infeed operation, i.e., they are not capable of feeding regenerative energy back into the supply system.

If regenerative energy is produced, e.g., when braking drives, it must be converted to heat by means of a supplementary braking module and a braking resistor.

When a Basic Line Module is used as the infeed, a line reactor is included. If the infeed is realized via a transformer with an appropriate rating in 6-pulse operation with a Basic Line Module or in 12-pulse operation with two Basic Line Modules, the line reactor is optional and can be omitted.

If two or more Basic Line Modules are operated in parallel on a common supply system in order to increase power, line reactors are also included in the associated Line Connection Module.

For a compact configuration, Line Connection Modules up to input currents of 3,200 A are available. Two Basic Line Modules can be operated in parallel on these Line Connection Modules. When Basic Line Modules are connected in parallel, for selective protection of the individual devices, line-side fuses are installed.

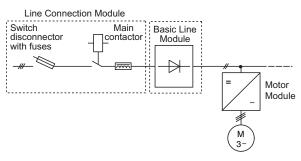


Figure 2-2 Line Connection Module with Basic Line Module ≤ 800 A

2.4 Line Modules

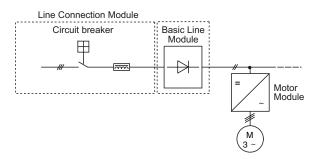


Figure 2-3 Line Connection Module with Basic Line Module > 800 A

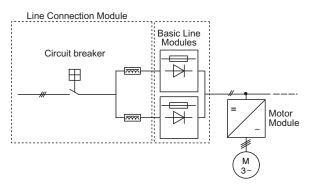


Figure 2-4 Line Connection Module with Basic Line Modules connected in parallel

2.4.3 Smart Line Modules

Smart Line Modules can supply energy to the DC link and return regenerative energy to the supply system. A Braking Module and braking resistor are required only if the drives need to be decelerated in a controlled manner after a power failure (i.e. when energy cannot be recovered to the supply). When a Smart Line Module is used as the infeed, the corresponding line reactor is a standard requirement.

For a compact configuration, Line Connection Modules up to input currents of 3,200 A are available. Two Smart Line Modules can be operated in parallel on these Line Connection Modules.

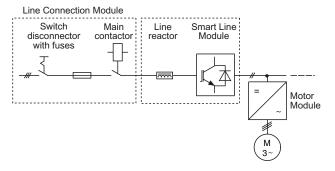


Figure 2-5 Line Connection Module with Smart Line Module ≤ 800 A

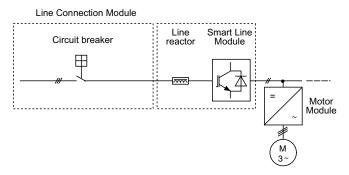


Figure 2-6 Line Connection Module with Smart Line Module > 800 A

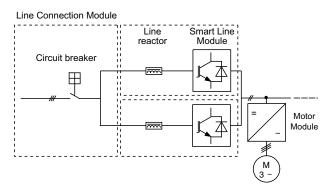


Figure 2-7 Line Connection Module with Smart Line Modules connected in parallel

2.4.4 Active Line Modules

Active Line Modules can supply energy to the DC link and return regenerative energy to the line supply. A Braking Module and braking resistor are required only if the drives need to be decelerated in a controlled manner after a power failure (i.e. when energy cannot be fed back to the supply).

In contrast to Basic Line Modules and Smart Line Modules, however, Active Line Modules generate a regulated DC voltage, which remains constant despite fluctuations in the line voltage. In this case, the line voltage must remain within the permissible tolerance range. Active Line Modules draw a virtually sinusoidal current from the supply system and cause virtually no line harmonic distortions.

Active Line Modules are always used in conjunction with an Active Interface Module. Active Interface Modules include the required pre-charging input circuit for the Active Line Module, in addition to a Clean Power Filter.

These two components are considered to be an integral unit for SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules and are supplied together.

For a compact configuration, Line Connection Modules up to input currents of 3,200 A are available. Two Active Line Modules with their associated Active Interface Modules can be operated in parallel on these Line Connection Modules.

2.5 DC link components

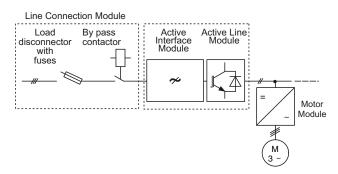


Figure 2-8 Line Connection Module with Active Interface Module and Active Line Module ≤ 800 A, example frame size HX + HI

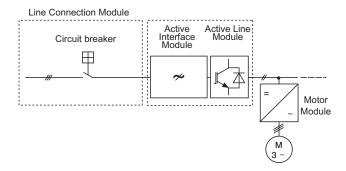


Figure 2-9 Line Connection Module with Active Interface Module and Active Line Module > 800 A

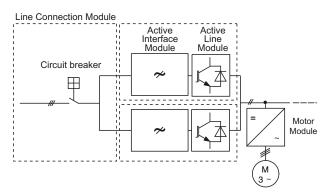


Figure 2-10 Line Connection Module with Active Interface Modules and Active Line Modules connected in parallel

2.5 DC link components

Braking Modules are used so that the regenerative energy, which is produced when drives brake, can be converted into heat using braking resistors.

Using a Braking Module and braking resistance it is also possible to brake motors when the power fails.

2.5.1 Braking Modules as an option for a Motor Module or a Line Module

For lower braking powers, Braking Modules are available with continuous braking powers up to 50 kW. These Braking Modules are available as option L61/L64 (25 kW) or L62/L65 (50 kW) for Basic Line Modules, Smart Line Modules, Active Line Modules or Motor Modules.

2.5.2 Central Braking Modules

For larger braking powers, separate Central Braking Modules are available. These modules are implemented centrally in the drive line-up. To increase the braking power, up to four Central Braking Modules can be connected in parallel.

2.6 Motor Modules

There are two different types of Motor Module available with the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules drive system.

2.6.1 Booksize Base Cabinets with Booksize Cabinet Kits

Motor Modules at the low end of the power range (1.6 to 107 kW) can be configured as Booksize Cabinet Kits installed in Booksize Base Cabinets. Booksize Cabinet Kits are also available as Double Motor Modules in the 1.6 to 9.7 kW power range.

2.6.2 Chassis Cabinets

Each Chassis Cabinet is fitted with one SINAMICS S120 Motor Module in chassis format and covers the 75 to 1200 kW power range.

Higher powers can be achieved by connecting the Motor Modules in parallel.

2.7 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Auxiliary Power Supply Modules supply power to the auxiliary power supply system of the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules.

The fans of the SINAMICS S120 devices installed in the Cabinet Modules are some of the devices connected to this auxiliary power supply system. In addition, the auxiliary power supply system supplies the electronics modules with external 24 V DC. This is required when the DC link is not charged in order, for example, to maintain PROFIBUS communication.

2.8 Overview of options

Table 2- 2 Overview of options

Option code	Brief description of option			
D02	Customer documentation (circuit diagram, terminal diagram, layout diagram) in DXF format			
D14	Draft of customer documentation			
D58	Documentation language: English/French			
D60	Documentation language: English/Spanish			
D80	Documentation language: English/Italian			
F03	Unit acceptance with the customer present: Visual acceptance			
F71	Unit acceptance with the customer present: Function test with no motor connected			
F75	Unit acceptance with the customer present: Function test with test bay motor (no load)			
F77	Unit acceptance with the customer present: Insulation test			
F97	Unit acceptance with the customer present: Customer-specific acceptance inspections (on request)			
G20	CBC10 Communication Board			
G33	CBE20 Communication Board			
G51	1 temperature sensor module TM150			
G52	2 temperature sensor modules TM150			
G53	3 temperature sensor modules TM150			
G54	4 temperature sensor modules TM150			
G56	Contactor monitoring			
K01	Safety license for 1 axis			
K02	Safety license for 2 axes			
K03	Safety license for 3 axes			
K04	Safety license for 4 axes			
K05	Safety license for 5 axes			
K08	AOP30 advanced operator panel installed in the cabinet door			
K46	Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC10			
K48	Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC20			
K50	Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC30			
K51	Voltage Sensing Module for determining the motor speed and the phase angle			
K52	Additional SMC30 Sensor Module			
K70	Fan power supply			
K73	Auxiliary power supply 24 V DC			
K76	Auxiliary power generation in the Line Connection Module			
K82	Terminal module for controlling the "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" safety functions			
K87	Terminal Module TM54F			
K88	Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC			
K90	Control Unit CU320-2 PROFIBUS			
K94	Performance extension for CU320-2			
K95	Control Unit CU320-2 PROFINET			
L00	Use in the first environment according to EN 61800-3, Category C2 (TN/TT systems)			

Option code	Brief description of option
L07	dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter
L08	Motor reactor
L09	2 motor reactors connected in series
L10	dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter
L13	Main contactor
L21	Operation in an IT system
L22	Line reactor not included in scope of delivery
L25	Circuit breaker in withdrawable unit design
L34	Output-side circuit breaker
L37	DC interface incl. pre-charging input circuit of the associated DC link capacitance
L41	Current transformer upstream of main breaker
L42	Line Connection Module for Active Line Modules
L43	Line Connection Module for Basic Line Modules
L44	Line Connection Module for Smart Line Modules
L45	EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door
L46	Grounding switch upstream of main breaker
L47	Grounding switch downstream of main breaker
L50	Cabinet lighting with service socket
L51	Holder for ARC detector
L55	Cabinet anti-condensation heating
L61	25 / 125 kW braking unit for line voltages of 380 480 V and 660 690 V
L62	50 / 250 kW braking unit for line voltages of 380 480 V and 660 690 V
L64	25 / 125 kW braking unit for line voltages of 500 600 V
L65	50 / 250 kW braking unit for line voltages of 500 600 V
L87	Insulation monitoring
M06	Base 100 mm high, RAL 7022
M07	Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high, RAL 7035
M13	Line connection from above
M21	IP21 degree of protection
M23	IP23 degree of protection
M26	Side panel (right)
M27	Side panel (left)
M43	IP43 degree of protection
M51	Motor reactor terminal connection
M54	IP54 degree of protection
M59	Closed cabinet door (air inlet from below through floor opening)
M60	Additional shock protection
M70	EMC shield bus
M77	Version without component support plates and without additional control components
M80	DC busbar system (Id = 1170 A, 1x 60 x 10 mm)
M81	DC busbar system (Id = 1500 A, 1x 80 x 10 mm)
M82	DC busbar system (Id = 1840 A, 1x 100 x 10 mm)

2.9 System structure

Option code	Brief description of option
M83	DC busbar system (Id = 2150 A, 2x 60 x 10 mm)
M84	DC busbar system (Id = 2730 A, 2x 80 x 10 mm)
M85	DC busbar system (Id = 3320 A, 2x 100 x 10 mm)
M86	DC busbar system (Id = 3720 A, 3x 80 x 10 mm)
M87	DC busbar system (Id = 4480 A, 3x 100 x 10 mm)
M90	Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)
N52	DC link fuses for Basic Line Module
P10	Measuring instrument for line values (installed in the cabinet door)
P11	Measuring instrument for line variables with PROFIBUS connection, installed in the cabinet door
T58	Rating plate data in English/French
T60	Rating plate data in English/Spanish
T80	Rating plate data in English/Italian
Y09	Special paint finish for cabinet
Y11	Factory assembly into transport units
Y31	One-line label for plant identification, 40 x 80 mm
Y32	Two-line label for plant identification, 40 x 180 mm
Y33	Four-line label for plant identification, 40 x 180 mm

2.9 System structure

Line Modules are coupled with the various Motor Modules using prefabricated DC busbar sets with different current load ratings.

An auxiliary power supply system spanning the individual Cabinet Modules supplies the required auxiliary voltages for the equipment fans and the 24 V DC loads.

Communication between the Control Unit, Line Module and Motor Module, and other active SINAMICS components takes place via DRIVE-CLiQ connections.

DRIVE-CLiQ is an internal serial interface of the drive that enables fast and easy configuration of the complete drive line-up with prefabricated cables in varying lengths.

As an option, Cabinet Modules can be delivered in preconfigured transport units with a total width of up to 2,400 mm each. This option is recommended in particular for Line Modules together with Line Connection Modules since, in this case, the Line Connection Module must be equipped with a pre-charging DC link or line reactors (depending on the type of Line Module), in addition to the electrical interface (mounted on a busbar).

2.10 System data

General technical system data

Electrical data					
Line voltages and power ranges		% (-15 % < 1 min), 1.6 800 k % (-15 % < 1 min), 55 1200 l			
Line system configurations	Line supplies grounded a supplies (IT systems)	t the neutral point (TN/TT syst	ems) or non-grounded line		
Line frequency	47 63 Hz				
Output frequency	Vector control: 0 600 Hz Servo control: 0 650 Hz V/f control: 0 650 Hz				
Line power factor fundamental factor	Basic Line Modules: > 0.96	Smart Line Modules: > 0.96	Active Line Modules: Can be adjusted (set in factory to $\cos \varphi = 1$)		
Efficiency	> 99.0 %	> 98.5 %	> 97.0 %		
Control method	Servo control, vector control with and without encoder or V/f control				
Fixed speeds	15 fixed speeds plus 1 minimum speed, programmable				
Skipped speed ranges	4, parameterizable				
Braking operation	With regenerative feedba	ck or by additional Braking Mo	dules and braking resistors		

¹⁾ Output data in the basic version, performance enhancement possible with parallel connection.

Mechanical data	Mechanical data				
Degree of protection	IP20, IP21, IP23, IP43 and IP54 (with options M26 and M27, side panels on the right and left respectively)				
Safety class	Safety class I acc. to EN 61800-5-1				
Cooling method	Forced air cooling AF to EN 60146				
Shock protection	BGV A 3 acc. to EN 50274				
Cabinet system	Rittal TS 8, doors with double-bit key, tripartite base plates for cable inlet				
Paint finish	RAL 7035 (indoor requirements)				

Compliance with standards	
Standards	EN 50274, EN 60146-1, EN 60204-1, EN 60529, EN 61800-2, EN 61800-3, EN 61800-5-1
CE marking	According to EMC Directive No. 2004/108/EC and Low Voltage Directive No. 2006/95/EC and Machinery Directive No. 2006/42/EC
RFI suppression	According to the EMC product standard for variable-speed drives (EN 61800-3), second environment (first environment on request)

2.10 System data

Ambient conditions							
	Operation	Storage	Transport				
Ambient temperature	<i>0 °C</i> ²⁾ +40 °C	-25 °C to +55 °C	-25 °C to +70 °C				
	to +50 °C see derating data		from -40 °C 2) for 24 hours				
Relative humidity (condensation not permissible)	5 % <i>95</i> % ²⁾	5 % ²⁾ 95 % ²⁾	5 % 95% at 40 °C				
corresponds to class	3K3 acc. to EN 60721-3-3	1K4 acc. to EN 60721-3-1	2K3 to EN 60 721-3-2				
Installation altitude	 Motor Modules, Booksize Cabinet Kit format: up to 1000 m above sea level - no derating, > 1000 m - see characteristics/derating data 						
	 Cabinet Modules: up to 2000 m above sea level - no derating, > 2000 m - see characteristics/derating data 						

²⁾ Deviations from the specified class are shown in *italics* .

Mechanical strength							
	Operation	Storage	Transport				
Vibrational load							
- Displacement	0.075 mm at 10 58 Hz	1.5 mm at 5 Hz 3) 9 Hz	3.1 mm at <i>5 Hz</i> ³⁾ 9 Hz				
- Acceleration	9.8 m/s² at >58 200 Hz	5 m/s² at >9 200 Hz	10 m/s² at >9 200 Hz				
- Corresponds to class	-	1M2 acc. to EN 60721-3-1	2M2 acc. to EN 60721-3-2				
Shock load							
- Acceleration	100 m/s ² for 11 ms	40 m/s ² for 22 ms	100 m/s ² for 11 ms				
- Corresponds to class	3M4 to EN 60721-3-3	1M2 to EN 60721-3-1	2M2 to EN 60721-3-2				

³⁾ Deviations from the specified class are shown in *italics*.

Note

Weight of a cabinet unit

The relevant weight of a cabinet unit is specified on the test certificate supplied and on the rating plate. The specified weight corresponds to the actual expansion stage of the cabinet unit.

Note

Limiting overvoltages

On systems with a grounded phase conductor and a line voltage > 600 V AC, line-side components should be installed to limit overvoltages to overvoltage category II in accordance with EN 61800-5-1.

2.11 Derating data

2.11.1 Derating data for booksize format

SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules with power units, booksize format, and the associated system components are dimensioned for an ambient temperature of 40 °C and installation altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level. If SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules with power units in the booksize format are operated at ambient temperatures higher than 40 °C and/or installation altitudes higher than 1000 m above sea level, then the corresponding derating factors must be taken into account as a function of the ambient temperature and/or the installation altitude. These derating factors differ from the derating factors for chassis format power units and are specified in Catalog PM21 / SINAMICS S120 Drive System. They are valid for SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules with booksize format power units in degrees of protection IP20, IP21, IP23, IP43 and IP54.

2.11.2 Derating data for chassis format

2.11.2.1 General

SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules as well as the associated system components are dimensioned for an ambient temperature of 40 °C and installation altitudes up to 2000 m above sea level.

S120 Cabinet Modules include Basic Line Modules, Smart Line Modules, Active Line Modules and Motor Modules with power units, chassis format including the associated system components, (e.g. line filter, chassis Braking Modules and motor filter), as well as Line Connection Modules and Auxiliary Power Supply Modules.

Exceptions are S120 Cabinet Modules with power units, Booksize format and the Central Braking Modules. This derating data can be taken from Chapter "Cabinet Modules" in subchapter "Derating data" of the particular S120 Cabinet Modules.

2.11 Derating data

Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature

If SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules are operated at ambient temperatures higher than 40 °C, then the output current must be reduced. Ambient temperatures higher than 50 °C are not permissible. The following tables specify the permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature for the various degrees of protection.

Table 2-3 Current derating as a function of ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP20/IP21/IP23/IP43

Installation altitude			Curi	ent derating fa	ictor		
above sea level in m		at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of					
	20 °C	20 °C 25 °C 30 °C 35 °C 40 °C 45 °C 50 °C					
0 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %

Table 2- 4 Current derating as a function of the ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP54

Installation altitude			Curi	ent derating fa	octor		
above sea level in m		at an	ambient temp	erature (air inta	ake temperatu	re) of	
	20 °C	20 °C 25 °C 30 °C 35 °C 40 °C 45 °C 50 °C					
0 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %	80.0 %

Installation altitudes greater than 2000 to 5000 m above sea level

If SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules are operated at installation altitudes greater than 2000 m above sea level, then it must be taken into account that with increasing installation altitude, the air pressure and therefore the density of the air decreases. The cooling effect as well as the insulating capability of the air decrease as a result of the lower air density.

Installation altitudes greater than 2000 to 5000 m can be achieved if the derating measures in the following chapter are applied.

2.11.2.2 Derating measures

Installation altitudes greater than 2000 to 5000 m can be achieved if the following derating measures are applied. These measures apply for the following drive configurations with SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Drives with Basic Line Modules at all voltage levels (3 AC 380 to 480 V and 3 AC 500 to 690 V).
- Drives with Smart Line Modules in all voltage levels (3 AC 380 to 480 V and 3 AC 500 to 690 V).
- Drives with Active Line Modules in the voltage level 3 AC 380 to 480 V (drives with Active Line Modules for 3 AC 500 to 690 V on request).

Reducing the ambient temperature and the output current

Due to the reduced cooling efficiency, it is necessary, on the one hand, to reduce the ambient temperature and, on the other, to lower heat loss in the Cabinet Module by reducing the output current, whereby ambient temperatures lower than 40 °C may be offset to compensate. The following tables specify the permissible output currents as a function of the installation altitude and ambient temperature for the various degrees of protection. The specified values already take into account the permissible compensation between installation altitude and ambient temperature less than 40 °C (air intake temperature where the air enters the Cabinet Module). The values apply under the precondition that the cooling air flow through the devices – as specified in the technical data – is guaranteed as a result of the cabinet installation.

Table 2- 5 Current derating as a function of ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP20/IP21/IP23/IP43

Installation altitude above sea level in m		Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of					
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %
2500	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	96.3 %		
3000	100 %	100 %	100 %	98.7 %			
3500	100 %	100 %	100 %				
4000	100 %	100 %	96.3 %				
4500	100 %	97.5 %					
5000	98.2 %						

Table 2- 6 Current derating as a function of the ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP54

Installation altitude	Current derating factor						
above sea level in m		at aı	n ambient tem	perature (air in	take temperati	ure) of	
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %	80.0 %
2500	100 %	100 %	100 %	96.3 %	89.8 %		
3000	100 %	100 %	98.7 %	92.5 %			
3500	100 %	100 %	94.7 %				
4000	100 %	96.3 %	90.7 %				
4500	97.5 %	92.1 %					
5000	93.0 %						

2.11 Derating data

Use of an isolating transformer to reduce transient overvoltages according to IEC 61800-5-1

As a consequence, overvoltage category III is reduced to overvoltage category II – which in turn reduces the demands placed on the insulating capability of air. An additional voltage derating (reduction of the input voltage) is not required if the following secondary conditions are maintained:

- The isolation transformer must be fed from a low-voltage supply or a medium-voltage supply and must not be directly supplied from a high voltage supply.
- The isolation transformer may supply one or several Line Modules.
- The cables between the isolation transformer and the Line Module or Line Modules must be routed so that a direct lightning strike is completely ruled out, i.e. cables must not be routed outside.
- The following line supply types are permissible for drives equipped with Basic Line Modules and Smart Line Modules:
 - TN line supplies with grounded star point (no grounded phase conductor).
 - IT line supplies (operation with a short circuit must be restricted to the absolutely shortest possible time).
- The following line supply types are permissible for drives equipped with Active Line Modules:
 - TN systems with grounded star point (no grounded outer conductor, no IT systems) for installation altitudes of greater than 2000 m.

Mechanical installation

3.1 Important notes

Transport

/!\warning

Hazards during transport and when replacing components

Please note the following when transporting the cabinet units:

- The devices are heavy and are usually top heavy. The center of gravity is marked on the devices.
- Ensure that the ground at the installation location is strong enough to bear the weight of the cabinet units.
- Suitable hoisting gear operated by trained personnel is also required due to the weight
 of the cabinet units.
- The cabinet units must always be transported in the upright position indicated. The cabinet units must not be tipped and transported in a horizontal position.
- Transport units comprise several cabinet units. Due to their weight and length, transport
 units must always be transported with the transport rails mounted on top and the
 wooden pallet attached.

Serious injury or even death and substantial material damage can occur if the cabinet units are not lifted or transported properly.

Note

Notes on transportation:

- The cabinet units are packaged by the manufacturer in accordance with the climatic conditions and stresses encountered during transit and in the recipient country.
- The notes on the packaging relating to transportation, storage, and proper handling must be observed.
- The cabinet units must be carried on a wooden pallet when transported with fork-lift trucks.
- NOTICE :
 - Cabinet units must not be disassembled while still on wooden pallets and awaiting transport!
- If required, cabinet units can be delivered in transport units. When a crane is used to move the cabinet units, a crane transport assembly is provided for the transport unit.
- Permissible ambient temperatures during transport:
 - -25 to +70 °C Class 2K3 to EN 60721-3-2
 - briefly up to -40 °C for max. 24 hours

3.1 Important notes

Note

Notes regarding damage in transit:

- Carry out a thorough visual inspection of the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules before
 accepting the delivery from the shipping company. Pay special attention to transport
 damage that is not readily apparent but indicated by the tilt and shock indicators; see
 chapter Shipping and handling indicators (Page 51).
- Check that you have received all the items specified on the delivery note.
- Notify the shipping company immediately of any missing components or damage.
- If you identify any hidden defects or damage, contact the shipping company immediately and ask them to examine the cabinet.
- If you fail to contact them immediately, you may lose your right to claim compensation for the defects and damage.
- If necessary, you can request the support of your local Siemens office.



/ WARNING

Transport damage

Damage in transit indicates that the cabinet was subject to unreasonable stress. The electrical safety of the cabinet can no longer be ensured. It must not be connected until a thorough high-voltage test has been carried out.

Death, serious injury, or substantial material damage can result if these factors are not taken into account.



Inform Technical Support (hotline)

Commissioning must not be carried out, if an indicator has tripped. Please contact Technical Support immediately.

If commissioning is carried out without prior inspection of the indicators, safe operation of the converter cannot be guaranteed. This can result in death, serious personal injury or material damage.

Storage

The cabinet units must be stored in clean, dry rooms. Temperatures between -25 °C and +55 °C are permissible (class 1K4 to EN 60721-3-1). Temperature variations greater than 20 K per hour are not permitted.

If the cabinets are stored for a prolonged period, cover them or take other appropriate measures to ensure that they do not become dirty and that they are protected against environmental influences. If such measures are not taken, the warranty becomes invalid in the event of a claim for damages.



Forming the DC link capacitors

The cabinet unit should not be stored for more than two years. If the cabinet unit is stored for more than two years, the DC link capacitors of the power units must be reformed during commissioning.

The reforming procedure is described in the chapter titled "Maintenance and service", section "Reforming the DC link capacitors".

NOTICE

Do not apply mechanical loads to the hoods!

The hoods (option M23, M43 or M54) are delivered separately and must be installed on site.

Therefore the hoods must not be subjected to mechanical loads, otherwise they could be destroyed.

3.2 Mechanical installation: Checklist

Important safety precautions



/!\warning

Safe operation of the devices

To ensure that the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules operate safely and reliably, they must be properly installed and commissioned by qualified personnel, taking into account all the warning notices provided.

In particular, the general and national installation and safety guidelines for high-voltage installations (e.g. VDE – the Union of German Technical Engineers) as well as the guidelines relating to the proper use of tools and personal protective equipment must be observed.

Death, serious injury, or substantial material damage can result if these guidelines are not observed.

Checklist

Use the following checklist to guide you through the mechanical installation procedure for the cabinet/transport unit. Read the chapter titled "Safety information" before you start working on the cabinet.

For installation instructions, see the "Mechanical installation" section or refer to the documents listed in the table below.

Note

Checking the checklist

Check the boxes accordingly in the right-hand column if the option involved applies to the scope of delivery. In the same way, check the boxes once you have finished the installation procedure to confirm that the activities have been completed.

Table 3- 1 Mechanical installation: Checklist

Item	Activity	Applicable?/	Completed?
1	Check the transport indicators prior to installation.		
	(→ See the chapter titled "Installation/preparation", in section "Transport indicators")		
2	Check the center of gravity label on the cabinet unit		
3	The ambient conditions must be permissible.		
	(→ See general technical data in section "System data" in chapter "System overview")		

3.2 Mechanical installation: Checklist

Item	Activity	Applicable?/Completed?	
4	The load-carrying capacity and properties of the ground must fulfill the requirements for installation of the Cabinet Modules.		
	(→ See the chapter titled "Cabinet Modules" in the technical data for the relevant Cabinet Modules)		
	(→ See Chapter "Mechanical installation", in Section "Preparation")		
5	The crane transport assembly (option M90) installed for delivery must be removed once the transport unit or individual cabinet units have been set down at the final installation location.		
	(→ See the Chapter titled "Installation", in section "Disassembling the crane transport assembly")		
6	Before the cabinet units are finally installed, the wooden pallets supplied with the transport unit must be removed properly.		
	$(\rightarrow$ See the Chapter titled "Installation", in section "Lifting from the transport pallet and installing the cabinet units")		
7	The minimum ceiling height required (for unhindered air discharge) must be observed. The cooling air supply and exhaust must not be obstructed and must be available in sufficient quantity.		
	(→ See the chapter titled "Installation", in section "Preparation")		
8	The cabinet must be firmly attached to the fixing points provided.		
	A proper connection must be established if the cabinet units are installed side-by-side.		
	$(\rightarrow$ See the Chapter titled "Installation", section "Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units")		
9	The following optional components, which are supplied separately for transport reasons, must be assembled on the plant side. This applies to the following options:		
	IP21 degree of protection with canopy (option M21)		
	IP23/IP43/IP54 degrees of protection with hood or filter elements (options M23, M43, M54)		
	(→ See Chapter "Options", in section "M21, degree of protection IP21 " and "M23 / M43 / M54, degrees of protection IP23 / IP43 / IP54" under Installation.)		
10	If it is possible to enter the area underneath the cabinet units, plant-side shock protection must be provided for this area.		
11	The handle must be mounted for option L37 (DC interface including pre-charging input circuit).		
	(→ See the chapter titled "Options", subsection "DC interface including pre-charging input circuit")		
12	With option M26, the installed cabinet equipment must be enclosed on the right, and with option M27, the installed cabinet equipment must be enclosed on the left!		
	Side panel installed on the right (option M26)		
	Side panel installed on the left (option M27)		
	(→ See Chapter "Options" in section "M26 / M27, side panels mounted to the right or left".)		
13	All shock protection measures (guards, plates) in and on the cabinet units must be installed before commissioning.		
14	The clearance around an open control cabinet door (escape route) specified in the applicable accident prevention guidelines must be observed.		

3.3 Installation

3.3.1 Important safety precautions





Safe operation of the devices

To ensure that the cabinet units operate safely and reliably, they must be properly installed and commissioned by qualified personnel, taking into account all the warning notices provided.

In particular, the general and national installation and safety guidelines for high-voltage installations (e.g. VDE – the Union of German Technical Engineers) as well as the guidelines relating to the proper use of tools and personal protective equipment must be observed.

Death, serious injury, or substantial material damage can result if these guidelines are not observed.

3.3.2 Preparatory steps

3.3.2.1 On-site requirements

The Cabinet Modules are designed for installation in closed, electrical operating areas in compliance with EN 61800-5-1. A closed electrical operating area is a room or area containing electrical equipment which can be accessed by trained personnel only. Access is controlled by a door or other form of barricade which can be opened only by means of a key or other tool. The room or area is also clearly signed with appropriate warning notices.

The installation location must be dry and dust-free. The air supplied must not contain any electrically conductive gas, vapors, or dust, which could impair operation. It may be necessary to filter the air supplied to the installation room. If the air contains dust, filter mats (option M54) can be installed in front of the ventilation grilles in the cabinet doors and also in front of the hoods, if necessary. Option M54 offers additional protection against water sprayed against the housing from any direction and corresponds to degree of protection IP54.

The permissible values for climatic ambient conditions must be taken into account.

Derating is required for ambient temperatures > 40 °C (104 °F) and installation altitudes > 1000 m (Booksize Cabinet Kit) or > 2000 m (Chassis) (→ see Chapter "System overview" under Derating data).

The basic version of the cabinet units complies with the IP20 degree of protection in accordance with EN 60529.

NOTICE

Requirements for IP20

Cabinet Modules do not fulfill the requirements for IP20 until they have been closed off by installing a side panel on the right (option M26) and a side panel on the left (option M27)!

The cabinet units are installed in accordance with the dimension drawings supplied. The clearance to be maintained between the top of the cabinet and the ceiling is shown in the diagram below. Additional dimensions must be taken into account for the M06 (cabinet base) and M07 (cable-marshaling compartment) options.

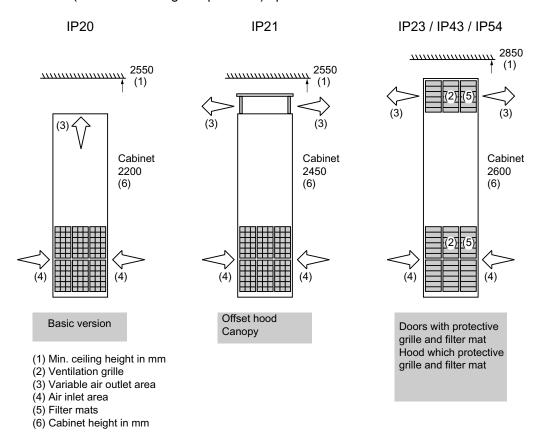


Figure 3-1 Required room height for different degrees of protection (without Options M06 and M07)

Note

Further dimensions

Further dimensions can be found in the relevant dimension drawings on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

3.3 Installation

The cooling air for the power unit is drawn in from the front through the ventilation grilles in the lower part of the cabinet doors. The warmed air is discharged through the perforated top cover or the ventilation grilles in the hood (with options M23/M43/M54 for degrees of protection IP23/IP43/IP54). Cooling air can also be supplied from below through raised floors or air ducts, for example. To allow this, you have to create openings in the sectioned base plate.



High-frequency interference

The converter generates high-frequency interference, which means that interference suppression measures must be applied in residential areas.

3.3.2.2 Requirements on the levelness of the floor

The foundation at the installation location of the cabinet devices must be level to ensure proper functioning of the cabinet units.

- Care must be taken to ensure that the doors can be opened and closed, the locking systems work properly.
- Flat sections (such as doors, side panels and hoods) must be sealed correctly to ensure compliance with the specified degree of protection.
- When connecting cabinet units side-by-side, ensure that no air can enter through gaps.

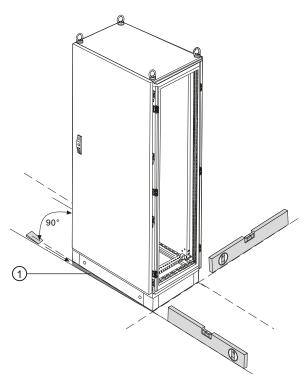


Figure 3-2 Requirements on the levelness of the floor

The following points must be observed to ensure full functionality of the cabinet units:

- The foundation must be level.
- Irregularities must be leveled out.
- Gaps where air can enter caused by leveling measures (e.g.: 1) in the diagram) must be sealed.

3.3.2.3 Shipping and handling indicators

The cabinet units are equipped with tilt and shock indicators to monitor for damage during transit.



Figure 3-3 Tilt indicator



Figure 3-4 Shock indicator

Position of the shipping and handling indicators

The tilt indicators are affixed to the top of the cabinet unit inside the doors.

The shock indicators are affixed to the bottom of the cabinet unit inside the doors.

3.3 Installation

Checking the shipping and handling indicators prior to commissioning

It is essential to check the shipping and handling indicators prior to commissioning the converter.



Figure 3-5 Tilt indicator tripped

The tilt indicator provides immediate visible evidence of whether the cabinet units have been handled and stored upright. Blue-colored quartz sand begins to flow into the arrow-shaped indicator area. The tilt indicator has tripped when the blue color extends beyond the middle line of the arrowhead.



Figure 3-6 Shock indicator tripped

The shock indicator shows if an acceleration has exceeded $98.1 \text{ m/s}^2 (10 \text{ x g})$ and indicates the direction of acceleration. The black color of the arrows indicates that an impermissible shock load has occurred in the direction of the arrow.



Inform Technical Support (hotline)

Commissioning must not be carried out, if an indicator has tripped. Please contact Technical Support immediately.

If commissioning is carried out without prior inspection of the indicators, safe operation of the converter cannot be guaranteed. This can result in death, serious personal injury or material damage.

Removing the shipping and handling indicators prior to commissioning

NOTICE

Removing the shipping and handling indicators prior to commissioning

The shipping and handling indicators must be removed before commissioning the converter.

If this is not observed, the transport indicators can cause damage in the unit when the converter is operated.

Ethyl alcohol can be used to remove any remains of adhesive after removing the transport indicators from the control cabinet.

3.3.2.4 Unpacking the cabinets

The packaging material must be discarded in accordance with the applicable country-specific guidelines and rules.

3.3.2.5 Tools required

To install the connections, you will need:

- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench
- Screwdriver (size 2)
- Screwdriver Torx T20 / T25 / T30

A socket-spanner case with two long extensions is recommended.

3.3.3 Lifting the cabinet units off the transport pallet and installing them

The applicable local guidelines regarding the transportation of the cabinet from the transport pallet to the installation location must be observed.

A crane transport assembly (option M90) can also be fitted on the top of the cabinet.

The fixing screws of the transport pallets can be removed without having to lift the cabinet unit. The positions of the fixing screws are indicated by red markings on the outside of the pallets.





Figure 3-7 Lifting from the transport pallet (left: without base; right: with base)

For cabinet units without base (in the figure on the left), the fixing screws of the transport pallets must be removed from the underside of the pallet.

For cabinet units with base (in the figure on the right), the fixing screws of the transport pallet are accessible only after the cover is opened. They can then be loosened and removed directly from the front.



Pay attention to the weight and center of gravity!

The weight specified on the packaging and the designated center of gravity must always be taken into account when the cabinet is lifted or transported!

This potential hazard must be taken into account particularly once you have unscrewed the cabinet units from the transport pallet!

Center of gravity of the cabinet

The diagram below shows the center of gravity of the cabinet (for all sizes), which must always be taken into account when lifting and installing the cabinet.

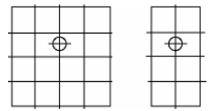


Figure 3-8 Center of gravity of the cabinet

Note

Center of gravity of the cabinet

A sticker with the precise position of the center of gravity of the cabinet is attached to all cabinets/transport units.

3.3.4 Disassembling the crane transport assembly

With option M90 (crane transport assembly), the Cabinet Modules are equipped with either transport eyebolts or mounting rails.

With option Y11 (assembly into transport units in the factory), the Cabinet Modules are always equipped with a mounting rail.



Figure 3-9 Option M90 / Y11, mounting rails

3.3 Installation

Removal

The transport eyebolts can be unscrewed and removed. Depending on the length of the cabinet or transport unit, the support rails can have a varying number of fastening screws. These must be unscrewed and removed before the rails can be removed.

/ WARNING

Careful handling of the support rails

The support rails are heavy and must be removed very carefully.

Screws can fall into the unit as it is disassembled and cause serious damage when the equipment is started up.

Original roof screws



Figure 3-10 Original roof screws accessory kit

After removing the crane transport aids, the transport eyebolts or the fixing screws of the mounting rail that have been removed must be replaced by the original roof screws from the accessories pack supplied in order to ensure compliance with the degree of protection and proper grounding of the cabinet.





Figure 3-11 Delivery state (left), original roof screws (right)

3.3.5 Connection to the foundation

Preparatory steps

 If possible, allow unimpeded access to the holes at the bottom of the cabinet units by removing the protective covers when carrying out installation work.

Connection to the foundation

For the connection to the foundation, four holes are provided on each cabinet panel for M12 screws (see pictures in the next section). The fixing dimensions are specified on the associated dimension drawings.

Every cabinet panel must be attached to the ground using at least 2 opposing attachment points (1 screw each in the front and rear part of the cabinet panel).

If this is not possible for reasons of accessibility, then the attachment points of the adjacent cabinet panels must be correspondingly raised.

Generally, as many attachment points as possible should be used.

Note

Additional information

Further dimensions can be found in the relevant dimension drawings on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

3.3.6 Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units

Description

An accessories kit is provided with each cabinet or transport unit for the connection of cabinet units in a side-by-side installation. The table below shows the content of this accessories kit for connecting the cabinet units.

Table 3-2 Content of the accessories kit for connecting the cabinet units

Quantity	Material	Fig.	Notes
1 x	Sealing strip		The sealing strip must be glued to the cabinets before connecting them.
3 x	Cabinet connectors, outer including the mounting material		The cabinet connector is attached from the outside and screwed tight from the outside. Tightening torque: 9 Nm
3 x	Cabinet connectors, inner including the mounting material	W.	The cabinet connector is fixed using 4 screws. Tightening torque: 5 Nm

Preparatory steps

 Allow unimpeded access to the profiles in the cabinet interior (if necessary, remove the side panels, doors, and protective covers).

Assembling

- 1. Glue the sealing strip to the cabinet frames of the cabinets to be connected.
- 2. Push the cabinets together, they must come completely together both at the front and rear sides. The distance between the cabinets must be approximately 3 mm.
- 3. Attach the cabinet connectors to the outside and inside corresponding to the subsequent drawing.
- 4. If necessary, reattach the protective covers and doors. The ground connections must also be attached to the doors.

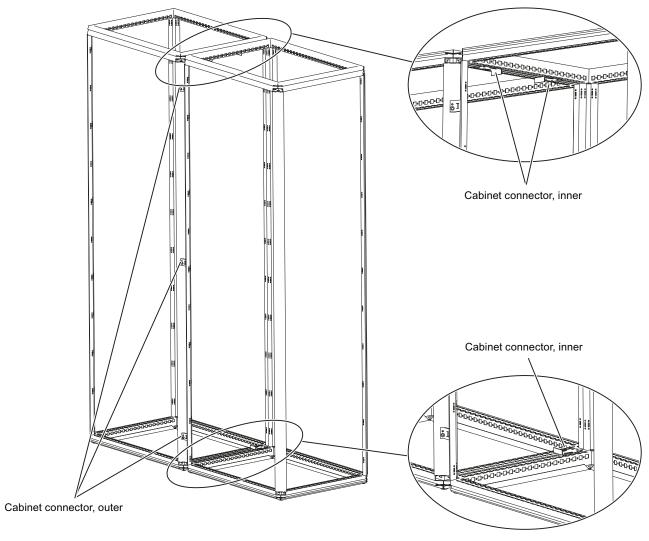


Figure 3-12 Positions of the cabinet connectors

3.3 Installation

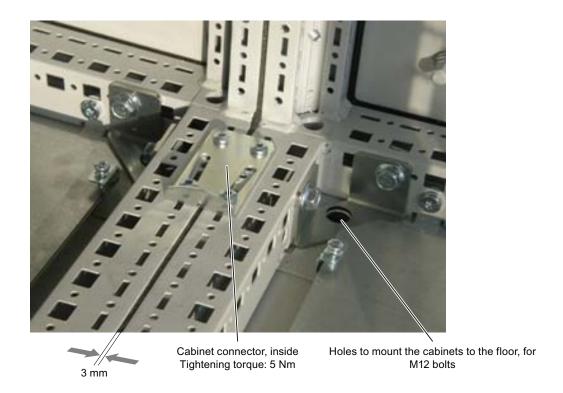


Figure 3-13 Inner cabinet connectors at the lower cabinet frame

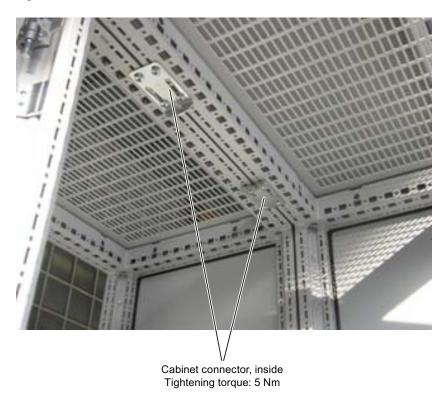


Figure 3-14 Inner cabinet connectors at the upper cabinet frame



Cabinet connector, outer Tightening torque: 9 Nm

Figure 3-15 Cabinet connector, outer

Note

Installing the canopy or hood at a an early stage!

It is recommended to attach the canopy or hood at an early stage to prevent foreign matter entering the cabinet units.

Note

Installing the side panels

For each row of cabinets installed, one side panel must be installed on the right (option M26) and one side panel on the left (option M27).

3.3 Installation

Electrical installation 4

4.1 Safety information

Required safety precautions before installation work is carried out



Hazardous electrical voltage

The Cabinet Modules are used in industrial high-voltage installations. During operation, this Cabinet Module contains rotating and live parts. For this reason, there is a risk of severe injury or significant material damage if the required covers are removed without authorization, if it is used or operated incorrectly, or if it has not been properly maintained.

You must read and comply with the safety information provided in this Manual.

When carrying out any kind of work on electrical devices, the following five safety rules must always be observed in accordance with EN 50110-1 and EN 50110-2:

- Disconnect from power supply.
- · Protect against reconnection.
- Make sure that the equipment is de-energized.
- · Ground and short-circuit.
- Cover or enclose adjacent components that are still live.

Note

Different versions

The Cabinet Modules come in a range of different frame sizes, with each size differing from the others in several ways. The main differences are:

- The covers used can have different dimensions, and they can be arranged and secured in different ways.
- The components can be arranged differently within the cabinet units.
- The components can be mounted within the cabinet units using different methods.

These variations result from the different requirements made of the components/equipment installed in the cabinet units. These differences are intentional and exist for "EMC optimization" reasons.

Important safety precautions





Hazardous electrical voltage

The cabinet units are operated with high voltages.

All connection work must be carried out when the cabinet is de-energized.

All work on the unit must be carried out by trained personnel only.

Work on an open unit must be carried out with extreme caution because external supply voltages may be present. The power and control terminals may be live even when the motor is not running.

Dangerously high voltage levels are still present in the unit up to 5 minutes after it has been disconnected due to the DC link capacitors. For this reason, the unit should not be opened until a reasonable period of time has elapsed.

The user is responsible for ensuring that the motor, cabinet units, and other components are installed and connected in accordance with the recognized technical rules in the country of installation and with other applicable regional regulations. Special attention should be paid to cable dimensioning, fuses, grounding, shutdown, disconnection, and overcurrent protection.

If an item of protective gear trips in a branch circuit, a leakage current may have been disconnected. To reduce the risk of fire or an electric shock, the current-carrying parts and other components in the cabinet should be inspected and damaged parts replaced. When an item of protective gear trips, the cause of the trip must be identified and rectified.

NOTICE

Forming the DC link capacitors

The cabinet unit should not be stored for more than two years. If the device is stored for more than two years, its DC link capacitors must be reformed during commissioning. The reforming procedure is described in this Manual in the chapter titled "Maintenance and servicing", section "Reforming the DC link capacitors".

Checklist

Use the checklist below to guide you through the electrical installation procedure for the cabinet. Read all the safety information in the section "Safety information" before carrying out any work on the unit.

For wiring instructions, see the "Electrical installation" section or refer to the documents listed in the table below.

Note

Checking the checklist

Check the boxes accordingly in the right-hand column if the option involved applies to the scope of delivery. In the same way, check the boxes once you have finished the installation procedure to confirm that the activities have been completed.

Table 4- 1 Electrical installation: Checklist

Item	Activity	Applicable?/Completed?				
Gene	General information					
1	For strain relief, the cabl mounting bar).	es must be clamped on the cable propping bar (C-type				
2	When EMC-shielded cables are used, screwed glands that connect the shield to ground with the greatest possible surface area must be provided on the motor terminal box. In the cabinet, the cable shields must be secured to the shield buses/plates with the fixing accessories provided to ensure proper EMC.					
3	PE busbar	The PE busbar between the cabinet units or transport units must be linked.				
		A connection with the ground for the entire system must also be established!				
		(→ See the section titled "PE busbar")				
4	DC busbar	When several cabinet units or transport units are installed side-by-side, the DC busbars must be connected to each other by means of the jumpers provided.				
		(→ See the section titled "DC busbar")				
5	Auxiliary power supply system	The auxiliary power modules must be interconnected between the cabinet units or transport units and supplied with the correct voltages.				
		Make sure that the correct voltage is applied!				
		(→ See the following section titled "Auxiliary power supply system")				
6	For Cabinet Modules not used as a transport unit, connections on the plant side must be made according to the circuit diagram.					
	The open connections that are correspondingly marked must be wired up according to the circuit diagram.					

Item	Activity	Applicable?/Completed?				
Power	Power connections					
7	A yellow warning label is attached to the basic interference suppression module at each connection clip.					
	• The warning label must removed from the connection clip (by pulling it off) if the connection clip is to remain in the unit (operation on a grounded line supply).					
	 The warning label must be removed together with the connection clip if the unit is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system). 					
	(\rightarrow See the following section titled "Connecting the Cabinet Modules to ungrounded line supplies (IT system)"					
8	The cables must be properly connected with the required torque to the terminals provided.					
	The maximum permissible cable lengths between the Motor Module and the motor must be observed depending on the type of cable used.					
	 (→ See the following section titled "Connecting the motor cables") (→ See the chapter titled "Cabinet Modules", section "Motor Modules in booksize format") 					
	(→ See the chapter titled "Cabinet Modules", section "Motor Modules in chassis format")					
9	When connecting the braking resistor, the maximum permissible cable lengths between Central Braking Module and the associated braking resistor must be observed.					
	The thermal contact of the braking resistor must be wired up and its signal evaluated by the Control Unit or the control.					
	(→ See the chapter titled "Cabinet Modules", section "Central Braking Module")					
10	When connecting the braking resistor, the maximum permissible cable lengths between the Braking Module (options L61/L62, L64/L65) and the associated braking resistor must be observed.					
	The resistor is connected at terminals R1 and R2 on the Braking Module.					
	The thermal contact of the braking resistor must be wired up and its signal evaluated by the controller.					
	(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "L61/L62, L64/L65, braking units")					
11	With a parallel connection of Motor Modules in chassis format and connection to a motor with a single-winding system, it is essential either to observe the specified minimum cable lengths or to install a motor reactor (option L08).					
	$(\rightarrow$ See the chapter titled "Cabinet Modules", section "Motor Modules in chassis format")					
12	The DC coupling – including the pre-charging circuit of the associated DC link capacitance (Option L37) – must be connected properly and all the fuses must be checked to ensure that they are secure.					
	The digital signal for pulse inhibit must be properly wired and parameterized.					
	$(\rightarrow$ See the chapter titled "Options" under "L37, "DC interface including pre-charging circuit of the associated DC link capacitance" in section "Commissioning the DC interface")					
13	The cable shields must be properly applied.					
14	The circuit breaker's tripping current must be set in accordance with the specific plant conditions.					
	(→ See the chapter titled "Cabinet Modules", section "Line Connection Modules")					

Item	Activity		Applicable?/Completed?	
15		age must be set for the 230 V AC fans in the Line Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and ormat.		
	taps.	line voltage is performed by reconnecting the transformer		
		Electrical installation" in section "Adjusting the fan voltage")		
16	Auxiliary Power Supply Mo			
	Fine tuning to the relevant taps.	line voltage is performed by reconnecting the transformer		
		Cabinet Modules", section "Line Connection Modules") Cabinet Modules", section "Auxiliary Power Supply Module")		
17		or the transformer in the Auxiliary Power Supply Module for 3 AC 380 480 V voltage range.		
	(→ See the chapter titled "C	Cabinet Modules", section "Auxiliary Power Supply Module")		
18		tion is increased > IP21, the installed fan in the Line of the bition L43 must be supplied with 230 V AC from the auxiliary of Module.		
	(→ See the chapter titled "C Line Modules")	Options", Section "L43 Line Connection Modules for Basic		
19	components in the "Basic I "Motor Module in chassis f period from the date of ma power components is shor reformed. If the unit has no	an be determined from the rating plates of the power Line Module", "Smart Line Module", "Active Line Module", ormat", and "Booksize Cabinet Kit" Cabinet Modules. If the nufacture to initial commissioning or the downtime of the ter than 2 years, the DC link capacitors do not have to be on the terminal to the link capacitors and the Chapter titled "Maintenance and the DC link capacitors".		
Signal	connections			
20	Cabinet operation by higher	er-level controller/control room.		
	The control cables must be and the shield applied!	e connected in accordance with the interface assignment		
	To prevent interference, th cables.	e control cables must be laid separately from the power		
	Cabling and connections n	nust always comply with the relevant EMC guidelines.		
	(→ See the chapter titled "E	Electrical installation")		
21	DRIVE-CLiQ cables	All DRIVE-CLiQ cables must be connected correctly.		
		The permissible cable lengths should be carefully observed.		
		(→ See "S120 Commissioning Manual, Rules for wiring with DRIVE-CLiQ") (→ See "S120 Equipment Manual for Booksize Power Units, DRIVE-CLiQ Cabinet Gland" and "S120 Equipment Manual for Booksize Power Units, DRIVE-CLiQ Coupling")		

Item	Activity		Applicable?/	Completed?		
Optio	Options					
22	G20, CBC10 Communication	The supplied CBC10 is installed in the factory in the option slot of the Control Unit.				
	Board	(→ See the Chapter titled "Options", in section "G20, CBC10 Communication Board")				
23	G33, CBE20 Communication Board	The supplied CBE20 is installed in the factory in the option slot of the Control Unit.				
		Remove the CBE20 in a no-current state and note down the MAC address. Install the CBE20 into the option slot again.				
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "G33, CBE20 Communication Board")				
24	G51 to G54, Temperature sensor module TM150	The Terminal Module TM150 can be connected to a maximum of 12 temperature sensors (PT100, PT1000, KTY84, PTC, bimetallic NC contact).				
		(→ See section "Options" in Section "G51 to G54, temperature sensor module TM150 ")				
25	K01 to K05, Safety license for 1 to 5 axes	Activating the safety licenses.				
		(→ See Chapter "Options" in Section "K01 to K05, Safety license for 1 to 5 axes")				
26	K46, SMC10 Sensor Module	The SMC10 Sensor Module is used for detecting the actual motor speed and the rotor position angle.				
		The following encoders are supported by the SMC10 Sensor Module:				
		Resolver, 2-pin				
		Resolver, multi-pole				
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "K46, SMC10 Sensor Module for detecting the actual motor speed and the rotor position angle")				
27	K48, SMC20 Sensor Module	The SMC20 Sensor Module is used for detecting the actual motor speed and the path length.				
		The following encoders are supported by the SMC20 Sensor Module:				
		Incremental sin/cos 1Vpp				
		EnDat absolute encoder				
		SSI encoder				
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "K48, SMC20 Sensor Module for detecting the actual motor speed and the path length")				

Item	Activity		Applicable?/Completed?	
28	K50, SMC30 Sensor Module	The SMC30 Sensor Module is used for detecting the actual motor speed.		
		The following encoders are supported by the SMC30 Sensor Module:		
		TTL encoder		
		HTL encoder		
		SSI encoder		
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "K50, SMC30 Sensor Module for detecting the actual motor speed")		
29	K51, VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module cabinet-mounted	Voltage sensing module VSM10 is used to operate a permanent-magnet synchronous machine without encoder with the requirement for switching to a machine which is already running (flying restart function).		
		To commission the function, the permanent-magnet synchronous machine without encoder must be input and "Flying restart" activated with p1200.		
		(→ See the section "Options", section "K51, VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module cabinet-mounted")		
30	K52, Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	The additional SMC30 Sensor Module is used for safe actual value sensing when using the Safety Integrated Extended Functions.		
		(→ See the section "Options", section "K52, Additional SMC30 Sensor Module")		
31	K70, Fan power supply	Voltages 1 AC 230 V and 24 V DC of the auxiliary power supply system must be supplied externally.		
		(→ See Chapter "Options" in the section "K70, fan power supply")		
32	K76, auxiliary power generation in the Line	In order to supply the auxiliary voltage supply system with the appropriate voltages, the phase must be connected to the corresponding transformer tap.		
	Connection Module	Make sure that the correct voltage is applied!		
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "K76, auxiliary voltage generating unit in the Line Connection Module")		
33	K82, terminal module for	Connect according to "Cable routing for the "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1" functions".		
	activating safety functions "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1"	(→ See the chapter titled "Electrical installation", in the section "Cable routing for the "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1" functions")		
		(→ See the Chapter titled "Options", in Section "K82, terminal module for activating safety functions "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1"")		

Item	Activity		Applicable?/Completed?	
34	K87, Terminal Module TM54F	Establish the connection according to "Cable routing for the functions TM54F".		
		(→ See the chapter titled "Electrical installation" in section "Cable routing for the Terminal Module TM54F")		
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", in section "K87, Terminal Module TM54F")		
35	K88, Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC	To control the brake, a connection must be established between -X14 on the Safe Brake Adapter and the holding brake.		
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "K88, Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC")		
36	L21, Operation in an IT system	The monitoring of the surge arresters and the upstream fuses must be connected to terminal- X700.		
		(→ See Chapter "Options" in the section "L21, operating in an IT system")		
37	L25,	Wire up the checkback contact.		
	circuit breaker in withdrawable unit design	(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "L25, circuit breaker in withdrawable unit design")		
38	L34,	Parameterizing the control.		
	output-side circuit breaker	(→ See the section "Options", section "L34, output-side circuit breaker")		
39	L41, current transformer upstream of main switch	Wire the measuring connections of the current transformer.		
		(→ See the section "Options", section "L41, current transformer upstream of main switch")		
40	L45,	Include the option in the EMERGENCY OFF chain.		
	EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the cabinet door	(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "L45, EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the cabinet door")		
41	L46, grounding switch upstream of circuit breaker	The interlock for the upstream, plant-side main breaker must be ensured.		
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "L46/L47, grounding switch upstream/downstream of circuit breaker")		
42	L47, grounding switch downstream of circuit breaker	The main breaker cannot be closed when the grounding switch is closed.		
		(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "L46/L47, grounding switch upstream/downstream of circuit breaker")		
43	L50,	Connect the power supply.		
	cabinet lighting with service socket	(→ See the section "Options", section "L50, cabinet lighting with service socket")		
44	L55,	Connect the power supply.		
	cabinet anti-condensation heating	(→ See the section "Options", section "L55, cabinet anti- condensation heating")		
45	L87 insulation monitoring	Integrate the option into the plant-side fault and alarm circuit.		
		(→ See the section "Options", section "L87, insulation monitoring")		

4.3 Insulation test

Insulation test

In accordance with EN 60204-1, an insulation test must be performed on the machine/system.

The test may be done with one of the following tests:

- Insulation resistance test
- Voltage test



Disconnect from power supply

Disconnect the machine/system from the line supply prior to testing.

Insulation resistance testing

Insulation resistance testing should be preferably carried out. The insulation resistance when carrying out the test must not be less than 1 M Ω . Testing is carried out with 500 V DC between the main-circuit conductors ¹⁾ and the protective conductor system. Testing may be carried out on individual sections of the system.

Exception: A lower resistance value is permissible for certain components of the electrical equipment; however, the value must not be lower than 50 k Ω .

SINAMICS cabinet units are covered by this exception. They must therefore be disconnected during testing and tested separately.

1) Main circuits are circuits that are electrically connected to the line voltage.

Voltage test



Test equipment

Test equipment to EN 61180-2 should be used for voltage testing.

The rated frequency for the test voltage must be 50 Hz or 60 Hz.

The maximum test voltage must be either twice the rated voltage value for the equipment power supply or 1000 V. The higher of the two values should be used. The maximum test voltage must be applied between the conductors of the main circuits ¹⁾ and the protective conductor system for approx. 1 s.

Components and devices that are not rated to withstand this test voltage must be disconnected prior to testing.

4.4 EMC-compliant design

Components and devices that have been voltage tested according to their product standard may be disconnected during testing.

The SINAMICS cabinet units are voltage tested in accordance with EN 61800-5-1 and must be disconnected during this test.

If they cannot be disconnected, input and output terminals must be short-circuited and a bypass installed. In this case, a DC voltage that is 1.5 times the AC test voltage should be used for testing.

1) Main circuits are circuits that are electrically connected to the line voltage.

4.4 EMC-compliant design

For detailed configuration instructions regarding the EMC-compliant design of drives and control cabinet configuration, refer to the "SINAMICS Low Voltage Configuration Manual" provided on the customer DVD supplied with the unit.

4.5 Connecting shielded three-phase cables

A good shield connection is achieved by connecting the shields in the converter cabinet through a large surface area to the EMC shield rail using EMC shield clamps (PUK shield clamps). EMC shield clamps (PUK shield clamps) are provided in the accessories pack to connect to the shield rail.

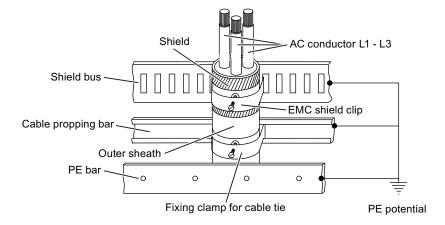


Figure 4-1 Connecting shields in the converter at the EMC shield rail using EMC shield clamps (PUK shield clamps)

Note

References

Detailed engineering information for connected shielded three-phase cables with concentrically arranged shields is provided in the "SINAMICS Low Voltage Configuration Manual" on the customer DVD supplied with the equipment.

4.6.1 Cable lugs

Cable lugs

The cable connections on the devices are designed for cable lugs according to DIN 46234 or DIN 46235.

For connection of alternative cable lugs, the maximum dimensions are listed in the table below.

These cable lugs are not to exceed these dimensions, as mechanical fastening and adherence to the voltage distances is not guaranteed otherwise.

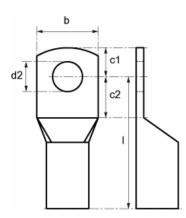


Figure 4-2 Dimensions of the cable lugs

Table 4- 2 Dimensions of the cable lugs

Screw / bolts	Connection cross-section [mm²]	d2 [mm]	b [mm]	l [mm]	c1 [mm]	c2 [mm]
M8	70	8.4	24	55	13	10
M10	185	10.5	37	82	15	12
M10	240	13	42	92	16	13
M12	95	13	28	65	16	13
M12	185	13	37	82	16	13
M12	240	13	42	92	16	13
M16	240	17	42	92	19	16

4.6.2 Connection overview

Connection overview

The following table shows the connections between the individual Cabinet Modules and their connections. When supplied as transport unit (Option Y11, transport units assembled in the factory), these connections only have to be established between the individual transport units as configured. The connections are established within transport units in the factory.

Note

System circuit diagram and layout plan

The table only shows the maximum possible number of connections to be established.

The individual connections that have to be established are defined in the system planning and configuring phases. See the system circuit diagram and layout plan.

Table 4-3 Connection overview for Cabinet Modules

Connection		Required connections for Cabinet Modules							
	Line Connection Module	Basic Line Module	Smart Line Module	Active Line Module	Booksize Base Cabinet	Booksize Cabinet Kit	Motor Module Chassis format	Central Braking Module	Auxiliary Power Supply Module
PE busbar	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
DC busbars between the Cabinet Modules	*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	*
Auxiliary power supply system	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Line connection	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes
Motor cables	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
Braking resistor	No	*	*	*	No	No	*	Yes	No

^{*} optional

4.6.3 PE busbar

4.6.3.1 General information

Availability

PE busbars are included in the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- · Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules in chassis format
- · Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

Each Cabinet Module contains a PE busbar for grounding the components installed in the cabinet. For all cabinet units, the busbar is a 60 x 10 mm nickel-plated bar. It is located at the bottom of the cabinet and is secured on the left and right to the ground straps in the cabinet.

Note

Close the cabinet doors

When connecting the ground connections to the PE busbar, make sure that the cabinet doors will still close.

4.6.3.2 Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units

A connection jumper for the PE busbar is supplied with every cabinet.

Note

Connect only after the installation and the mechanical connection of the transport units

Installing the transport units as well as connecting the transport units with one another (see Chapter "Mechanical installation", Section "Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units"), must have been completed!

Preparatory steps

- Install and secure the cabinet units properly.
- Disconnect the cabinet units from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the PE busbar of the cabinet units (if necessary, remove the protective covers during installation work).

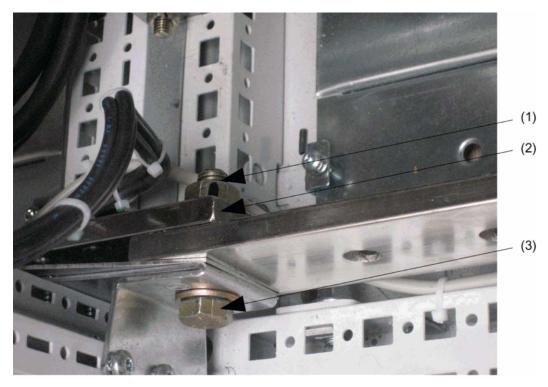


Figure 4-3 Connecting the PE busbar when cabinet units are installed side-by-side

Establishing the connection

- 1. Loosen the 1 x M12 nut (1) of the PE busbar at the 1st cabinet.
- 2. Remove the nut (1), washer and screw (3).
- 3. Loosen the 1 x M12 nut of the PE busbar on the 2nd cabinet.
- 4. Remove the nut, washer, and screw.
- 5. Place the connection jumper (2) at the back on the PE busbar of the cabinet units to be connected.
- 6. Insert the screws in the ground straps of the PE busbar from the front.
- 7. Reattach the washers and nuts.
- 8. Tighten the nuts (tightening torque: 50 Nm).

4.6.3.3 Connection according to the system-side grounding concept



Danger to life when live parts are touched

If there is no connection to the central grounding of the complete plant, the cabinet unit may be subjected to dangerous voltage in a fault situation.

Once you have established the connections to the PE busbar in the cabinet and/or established the connections to the PE busbar across more than one cabinet unit, you must establish a connection to the central ground of the entire system.

4.6.3.4 Connecting external cables to the PE busbar

NOTICE

It must be ensured that the cabinet doors are closed

When external cables that are to be connected to the PE busbar have been laid, make sure that the cabinet doors close properly!

Preparatory steps

- Install and secure the cabinet units properly.
- Make sure that all the necessary safety measures have been taken at the installation location.
- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Allow unimpeded access to the PE busbar of the cabinet units (if necessary, remove the
 protective covers during installation work).

Establishing the connection

- 1. Insert the screw from the front.
- 2. Attach the cable lug from behind.
- 3. Attach the nuts and, if necessary, the washers and tighten (torque: 50 Nm).

4.6.4 DC busbar

4.6.4.1 General information

Availability

The DC busbar is always integrated in the following S120 Cabinet Modules and must be ordered as option M80 to M87:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Chassis format Motor Modules
- Central Braking Modules

Description

The DC busbar is used to connect Line Modules with Motor Modules; the connection is made using prefabricated busbar sets with different current-conducting capacities.

The DC busbar can be optionally included in the following Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Module
- Auxiliary Power Supply Module

4.6.4.2 Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units

Note

DC busbar

The procedure described below uses a DC busbar 1 x $60 \times 10 \text{ mm}$ (option M80) as an example, but applies to all other DC busbar versions as well.

For the other available versions, the number of jumpers used on each busbar for connecting the DC busbar is as follows:

- 1 jumper for each DC busbar for 1 x nn x 10 busbars (options M80 to M82)
- 2 jumpers for a DC busbar comprising 2 x nn x 10 busbars (options M83 to M85)
- 3 jumpers for a DC busbar comprising 3 x nn x 10 busbars (options M86 and M87)

A connection jumper (1) in the diagram below) on the right side of the DC busbar in the cabinet is used to connect the DC busbar across several Cabinet Modules. This connection jumper is already integrated in every DC busbar of the Cabinet Modules.

Preparatory steps

- Verify that the cabinet units to be connected have been isolated from the supply.
- Install and secure the cabinet units properly.
- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Allow unimpeded access to the DC busbar (if necessary, remove the protective covers during installation work).

Note

Better accessibility from the top

In some cases, it is far simpler to connect the DC busbar from the top (with the hood or top cover removed) than from the front.

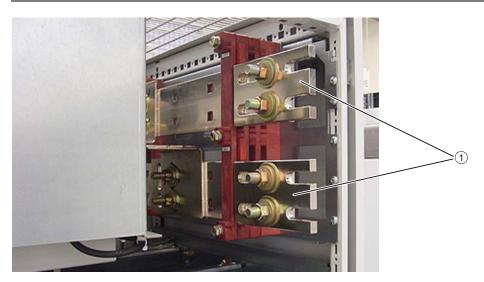


Figure 4-4 Delivery state of the DC busbar



Figure 4-5 Connecting the DC busbar when cabinet units are installed side-by-side

Establishing the connection

- 1. Loosen the 2 x M12 nuts on the upper DC busbar (DC P) on the right side ① at the first cabinet.
- Loosen the 2 x M12 nuts on the DC busbar on the left side of the cabinet to be connected.
- 3. Withdraw jumper ① of the DC busbar from the first cabinet and insert into the DC busbar of the second cabinet up to its end stop ②.

NOTICE

Push in jumper for the DC busbar sufficiently far

Jumper ① of the first cabinet must be inserted into the cabinet to be connected until the washers ② are completely located on the jumper.

- 4. Re-tighten the nuts on the DC busbar in both cabinet units (torque: 50 Nm)
- 5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 for the lower DC busbar (DC N).

NOTICE

Mounting specifications

The screws must only be loosened rather than removed because otherwise the nuts could fall into the device.

The torque (50 Nm) must be observed to avoid excessive heating of the terminal contacts during operation!

For the busbar systems, all jumpers of the DC busbar must always be connected!

For each cabinet row installed, you must mount one side panel on the right (option M26) and one on the left (option M27)!

Before mounting the side panels on an installed cabinet row, you must remove any jumpers present in the DC busbars of the cabinet on the right!

Note

DC busbars for the transport units

In the case of transport units with standard integrated DC busbars within the cabinet group, you only need to connect the ends of the busbars of the transport units.

4.6.5 Auxiliary power supply system

4.6.5.1 General information

Availability

To facilitate the auxiliary voltage supply to S120 Cabinet Modules, the individual modules are fitted with a special, standardized auxiliary voltage supply system. This system is delivered pre-installed. The cabling required from the auxiliary power module into the relevant Cabinet Module are factory-installed.

In the following S120 Cabinet Modules, two further voltage taps are available to the customer on the auxiliary power module for each voltage level:

- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules in chassis format
- Central Braking Modules

Description

The auxiliary power supply system installed in the Cabinet Module is used to distribute the voltages provided by an auxiliary power supply.

Ideally, these voltages are generated by an Auxiliary Power Supply Module. Other ways to supply power is to use option K76 "Auxiliary voltage generating unit in the Line Connection Module" or to feed the auxiliary voltages to the auxiliary power supply system from an external source.

The maximum load capability of the auxiliary power supply system is 80 A. If the total power requirement of the cabinet line-up exceeds the maximum load capability, the auxiliary power supply system must be divided into segments and several infeed points selected.

The following diagram shows the mechanical design of the auxiliary power supply system. The standard assignment with the three auxiliary voltages is shown in the tables below.

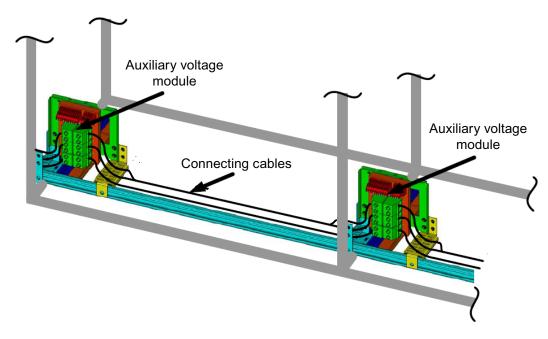


Figure 4-6 Auxiliary power supply system for voltage distribution

The auxiliary power supply system for an individual cabinet unit consists of an auxiliary power module and the connecting cables.

The auxiliary power module comprises two terminal blocks (-X100, -X101) and one fuse (-F24) for the 24 V DC supply. The auxiliary power module is used to tap the necessary auxiliary voltages at terminal block -X100 and to forward auxiliary voltages to terminal block -X101 in the adjacent cabinet unit.

The connections are made using two special cables. One 4-phase cable for the power supply (1, 2) and for 230 V AC (3, 4), and an additional screened 2-phase cable for 24 V DC (1, 2).

The auxiliary power supply system is ready-to-operate as supplied. The cabling required from the terminal block into the relevant Cabinet Module are factory-installed. Only the connection to the adjacent Cabinet Module must be established on site by fastening the cables to the next terminal block. These connections are already established within transport units. Only the transport units need to be interconnected.

Auxiliary power module

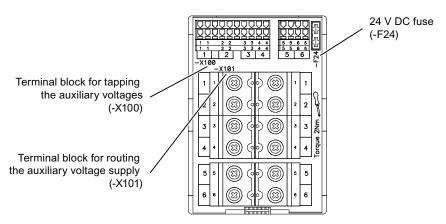


Figure 4-7 Auxiliary power module with terminal blocks -X100, -X101 and 24 V DC fuse

At least two terminals are always available to the customer at terminal block -X100 for tapping the auxiliary voltages.

Table 4- 4 X100, terminal block for tapping the auxiliary voltages

	Terminal	Designation	Voltage tap	Rated current
	1	L1	Line voltage (for fan supply via transformer):	max. 16 A ¹⁾
	2	L2	• 380 to 480 V 2 AC or	
			• 500 to 690 V 2 AC (max. 759 V AC)	
	3	L1	230 V 1 AC (max. 265 V AC)	max. 16 A ¹⁾
3 3 0 0 0	4	N		
	5	P24	24 V DC for the electronics power supply (max. 30	max. 10 A ¹⁾
	6	М	V DC)	
5 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0				

The maximum load capability of the auxiliary power supply system is 80 A. Max. connectable cross-section: $2.5\ \text{mm}^2$

¹⁾ Max. total current of all tapping terminals available

Table 4-5 X101, terminal block for routing the auxiliary voltage connecting cables

	Terminal	Designation	Assigned voltages	Rated current
1, 8 6 8 1	1	L1	Line voltage (for fan supply via transformer):	Max. 80 A
	2	L2	• 380 to 480 V 2 AC or	
3 3 8 6 8 3 3			• 500 to 690 V 2 AC (max. 759 V AC)	
4 1 8 4 4	3	L1	230 V 1 AC (max. 265 V AC)	Max. 80 A
5 5 8 6 8 5	4	N		
	5	P24	24 V DC for the electronics power supply (max. 30	Max. 80 A
	6	M	V DC)	

The maximum load capability of the auxiliary power supply system is 80 A.

Max. connectable cross-section: 35 mm²

Tightening torque: 2 Nm

Auxiliary power module in the Line Connection Module

The auxiliary power module in the Line Connection Module consists of the -X100 terminal block for feeding in and routing the auxiliary voltages in both directions. No voltage taps are available to the customer.

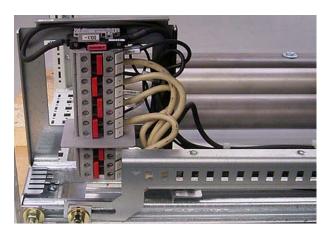


Figure 4-8 Auxiliary power module in the Line Connection Module

Table 4-6 X100, terminal block in the Line Connection Module for routing the auxiliary voltages

	Terminal	Voltage tap	Rated current
0 1 0	1	Line voltage:	Max. 80 A
0 1 0	1	• 380 to 480 V 2 AC or	
0 2 0	2	• 500 to 690 V 2 AC (max. 759 V AC)	
0 2 0	2	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
0 3 0	3	230 V 1 AC (max. 265 V AC)	Max. 80 A
0 4 0	3		
0 4 0	4		
0 5 0	4		
0 5 0	5	24 V DC for the electronics power supply (max. 30 V DC)	Max. 80 A
0 6 0	5		
O -F24 O	6		
	6		
	-F24	24 V DC fuse	Max. 10 A

The maximum load capability of the auxiliary power supply system is 80 A.

Max. connectable cross-section: 16 mm²

Tightening torque: 2 Nm

Note

External infeed

An external customer infeed to the auxiliary power supply system can be connected at terminal block -X100 of the Line Connection Module.

Fuse

A 10 A-fuse is incorporated in the auxiliary power modules to protect the 24 V DC-auxiliary voltage. The order number for this fuse as a spare part is 6SL3760-0BG00-0AA0. Fuse type: TAC ATO flat plug-in fuse according to DIN 72581-3, UL 248 Special Purpose Fuses, 10 A, 58 V, manufacturer: Littlefuse

Connecting cables

Table 4-7 Voltage assignment for connecting cables

Cable	Phase	Assigned voltages
4-phase	1	Line voltage:
	2	• 380 to 480 V 2 AC or
		• 500 to 690 V 2 AC (max. 759 V AC)
	3	230 V 1 AC (max. 265 V AC)
	4	
2-phase	1	24 V DC for the electronics power supply (max. 30 V DC)
	2	The cable marked "1" must be connected to terminal 5 on the terminal block. The cable marked "2" must be connected to terminal 6 on the terminal block.





Hazardous electrical voltage caused by incorrect voltage assignment

When establishing connections to the auxiliary power supply system, you must ensure that you do not interchange the power supplies! Errors or carelessness can result in serious injury or damage to the components or system.

4.6.5.2 Connection overview

The following connections must be established for the auxiliary power supply system:

- · Connection of auxiliary power module when cabinet units are installed side-by-side
- · Connecting to the infeed

Preparatory steps for all work carried out on the auxiliary power supply system

- · Install and secure the cabinet units properly.
- Disconnect the cabinet units from the power supply.
- Disconnect the auxiliary power supply system from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the auxiliary power supply system of the cabinet units (if necessary, remove the protective covers during installation work)

4.6.5.3 Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units

Description

Prefabricated cables for connecting the auxiliary power modules are attached to the -X101 terminal block of the module in each cabinet. If the cabinets are delivered as single units, these must be routed to the next module and attached to the appropriate terminals of the -X101 terminal block. The procedure is described below.

Note

Connecting the auxiliary voltage modules for transport units.

These connections are already established within transport units. Only the transport units need to be interconnected.



Figure 4-9 Connecting cables in the delivered state (e.g. transport units)



Figure 4-10 Connected connecting cables

Establishing the connection



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Sharp edges in the cabinet unit can cause injury when connecting the auxiliary power supply system.

- 1. Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply.
- 2. Observe the "five safety rules".
- 3. Fasten the cables to terminal block -X101 of the next module:
 - 4-phase cable (1-2): for line voltage at terminals 1 and 2
 - 4-phase cable (3-4): for 230 V AC at terminals 3 and 4
 - 2-phase cable (1-2): for 24 V DC to terminals 5 and 6

Note

Establishing the connection for Basic Line Modules

Basic Line Modules do not contain auxiliary power modules. The 24 V DC voltage supply is provided by connecting the 2-phase cable included in the Basic Line Module to the auxiliary power module of the adjacent cabinet unit.



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage caused by incorrect voltage assignment

When establishing connections to the auxiliary power supply system, you must ensure that you do not interchange the power supplies! Errors or carelessness can result in serious injury or damage to the components or system.

4.6.5.4 Connecting to the infeed

Description

The voltages provided on the auxiliary power supply system must be produced by an auxiliary power supply (e.g. by an Auxiliary Power Supply Module or by Option K76 "Auxiliary voltage generating unit in the Line Connection Module").

If an Auxiliary Power Supply Module is not available to supply power to the auxiliary power supply system or if the Auxiliary Power Supply Module and the Cabinet Modules to be supplied are installed in different parts of the cabinet line-up, an auxiliary power module in the Line Connection Module can be used to feed power to the auxiliary power supply system. Further alternatives for feeding power are in the first or last auxiliary power module of the drive line-up. The maximum current-carrying capacity of the auxiliary power supply system is 80 A. In the case of the external power supply, this must be fuse protected on the line side.

4.6.6 Connecting the motor cables

Preparatory steps

- Install and secure the cabinet units properly.
- Disconnect the cabinet units from the power supply.
- Make sure that all the necessary safety measures have been taken at the installation location.
- Observe the "five safety rules".



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

When connecting permanently excited synchronous machines, you must ensure that the motor has been shut down or is electrically isolated; otherwise, the voltage generated can be lethal.

Motor Modules Booksize Cabinet Kit

Table 4-8 Motor connection, Motor Modules

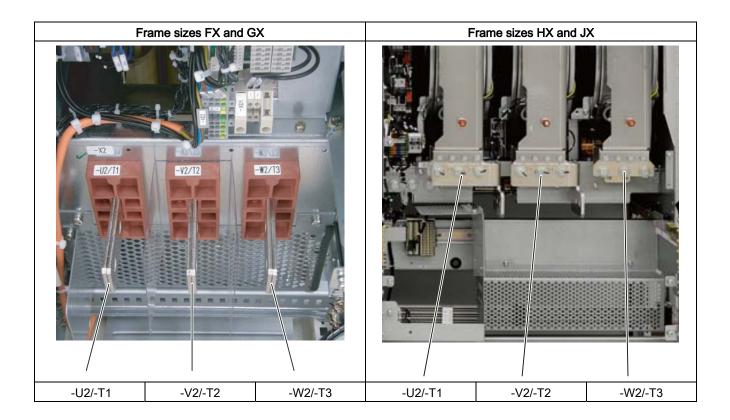
Terminals	Technical data
DCP, DCN	Voltage:
DC power input	510 750 V DC
U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3	Voltage:
3 AC power output	0 V 3 AC to 0.72 x DC link voltage
	Terminals: 6 95 mm² (→ see technical data)

Motor Modules in chassis format

Table 4-9 Motor connection, Motor Modules

Terminals	Technical data
DCP, DCN DC power input	Voltage: 510 750 V DC 675 1080 V DC
U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3 3 AC power output	Voltage: 0 V 3 AC to 0.72 x DC link voltage
	Connection: M12 / 50 Nm for cable lugs in accordance with DIN 46234 or DIN 46235

Dimensions for connecting alternative cable lugs, see Section "Cable lugs" in the section "Electrical installation".



Connecting the motor cables

- 1. Open the cabinet and remove the covers in front of the connection panel for motor cables (terminals U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3; X2).
- 2. Move or remove the base plate below the connection panel through which the motor cables are fed.
- 3. Screw the protective earth (PE) onto the PE busbar at the specified points in the cabinet (50 Nm with M12).
- Screw the motor cables onto the terminals.
 Make sure that the conductors have been connected in the correct sequence (U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3)!

NOTICE

Tighten screws with the appropriate torque

Tighten the screws with the appropriate torque (50 Nm for M12), otherwise the terminal contacts could heat up excessively during operation.

- 5. Secure the motor cables on the cable propping bar to avoid placing mechanical strain on the terminals.
- 6. When shielded motor cables are used, the shields must be secured to the EMC shield bus (option M70) in an EMC-compliant manner.

Note

Position of the connections

For the position of the connections for motor cables, see the layout diagrams included on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

The motor ground should be fed back directly to the cabinet (PE busbar) and connected.

Connection cross sections

Refer to the "Technical data" for the Motor Modules, "Cabinet Modules" chapter for the maximum connection cross sections.

Direction of motor rotation

EN 60034-7 defines the two ends of an electric motor as follows:

- D (Drive End): Usually the drive end of the motor
- N (Non-Drive End): Usually the non-drive end of the motor

An electric motor rotates clockwise if the shaft rotates in the clockwise direction when viewing the D end.

For electric motors with 2 shaft ends, the direction of rotation must be determined based on the shaft end specified as the drive end.

For clockwise rotation, the electric motor must be connected according to the following table.

Table 4- 10 Cabinet and motor connection terminals

Cabinet (motor connection terminals)	Motor (connection terminals)
U2/T1	U
V2/T2	V
W2/T3	W

In contrast to the connection for the clockwise phase sequence, two phases have to be reversed for a counter-clockwise phase sequence (looking at the drive shaft).

Note

Direction of motor rotation

If the motor was connected with an incorrect direction of phase rotation, it can be corrected without replacement of the phase sequence via p1821 (phase rotation direction reversal).

The correct phase sequence must be observed in both sub-cabinets when connecting cabinet units in parallel, since it is not possible to use converter functions to correct different phase sequences in the two sub-cabinets at a later stage.

For motors that can be star-connected or delta-connected, it must be ensured that the windings are interconnected consistent with the operating voltage indicated on the type plate or in the motor documentation. Make sure that the winding insulation of the connected motor has sufficient insulation strength to meet the requirements for converter operation.

4.6.7 Line supply connections

Line Connection Modules

The line supply is connected in the Line Connection Module at terminal -X1.

Table 4- 11 Line supply connection, Line Connection Modules

Terminals	Technical data
U1/L1, V1/L2, W1/L3 3 AC power input	Voltage: 3 AC 380 V -10 % to 3 AC 480 V +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 3 AC 500 V -10 % to 3 AC 690 V +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)
	Connection thread: M12 / 50 Nm for cable lugs in accordance with DIN 46234 or DIN 46235

Dimensions for connecting alternative cable lugs, see Section "Cable lugs" in the section "Electrical installation".

4.6.8 Adjusting the fan voltage

A transformer is incorporated in the Motor Module in the chassis format (-T1-T10) and/or Basic Line Module/Smart Line Module/Active Line Module (-T2-T10) for setting the correct operating voltage for the 230 V fans. The mounting positions of the transformers are indicated in the layout diagrams supplied.

The transformer is fitted with line-side taps so that it can be fine-tuned to the line voltage. When delivered, the taps are always set to the highest level. When connected to a lower line supply voltage, the appropriate transformer tap must be used. The neutral conductor is left on terminal "0" and the phase is clamped to the existing line voltage.

The fans are designed for 50/60 Hz operation.

Note

Positions of the setting terminals

The position of the setting terminals for the fan transformers is provided in chapter "Cabinet Modules in the design descriptions of the appropriate modules.

Note

Two transformers for frame sizes HX and JX

In the case of Smart Line Modules, Active Line Modules, and Motor Modules with "HX" and "JX" frame sizes, two transformers are incorporated (-T10/-T11). The two line-side terminals on each of these devices must be adjusted together.



Figure 4-11 Connecting terminals for the fan transformers (2-ph. 380 to 480 V AC)

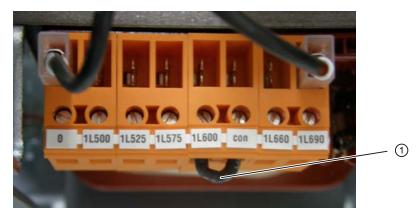


Figure 4-12 Connecting terminals for the fan transformers (2-ph. 500 to 690 V AC)

The line-voltage assignments for making the appropriate setting on the fan transformer are indicated in the following table.

NOTICE

Consequences of incorrect voltage setting

If the terminals are not reconnected to the actual line voltage:

- The required cooling capacity cannot be provided because the fan rotates too slowly;
- · The fan fuses may blow due to an overcurrent.

Note

For the fan transformer (2-ph. 500 to 690 V AC), a jumper is inserted between terminal "600 V" and "CON" terminal - ① in the diagram above). Terminal "CON" is for internal use.

The order numbers for fan fuses that have blown can be found in the spare parts list.

Table 4- 12 Line voltage assignments for setting the fan transformer (380 to 480 V 2 AC)

Line voltage	Fan transformer tap (-T1/-T2 –T10, -T20)
380 V ± 10%	380 V
400 V ± 10%	400 V
440 V ± 10%	440 V
480 V ± 10%	480 V

Table 4- 13 Line voltage assignments for setting the fan transformer (500 to 690 V 2 AC)

Line voltage	Fan transformer tap (-T1/-T2 -T10, -T20)
500 V ± 10%	500 V
525 V ± 10%	525 V
575 V ± 10%	575 V
600 V ± 10%	600 V
660 V ± 10%	660 V
690 V ± 10%	690 V

4.6.9 Connecting Cabinet Modules to non-grounded line supplies (IT systems)

If the Cabinet Modules are operated on an ungrounded line supply (IT system), the integrated basic interference suppression modules must be deactivated by unscrewing the connection clip in the following Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules (the connection clip is located behind the fan for frame sizes HX and JX)
- Active Line Modules (connection clip in the Active Interface Module)

/ WARNING

Removing the connection clip for an ungrounded line supply

Failing to remove the connection clip for the basic interference suppression module on an ungrounded / IT system can cause significant damage to the device.

Note

Warning label on the connection clip

A yellow warning label is attached to each connection clip so that it is easier to find.

- The warning label must removed from the connection clip (by pulling it off) if the connection clip is to remain in the unit (operation on a grounded line supply).
- The warning label must be removed together with the connection clip if the unit is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system).



Figure 4-13 Warning label on the connection clip

Basic Line Modules

When a Basic Line Module is operated on an ungrounded / IT system, the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module must be removed.

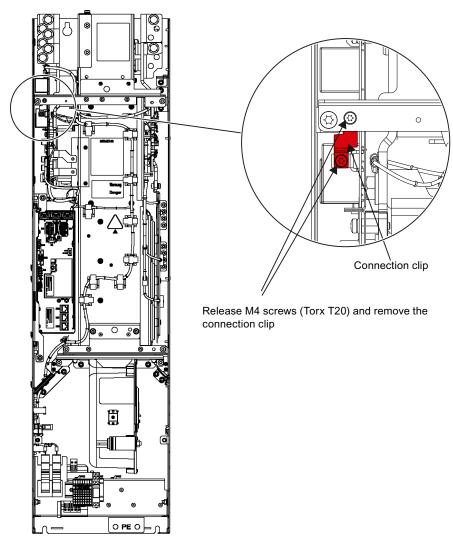


Figure 4-14 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Basic Line Module, frame size FB

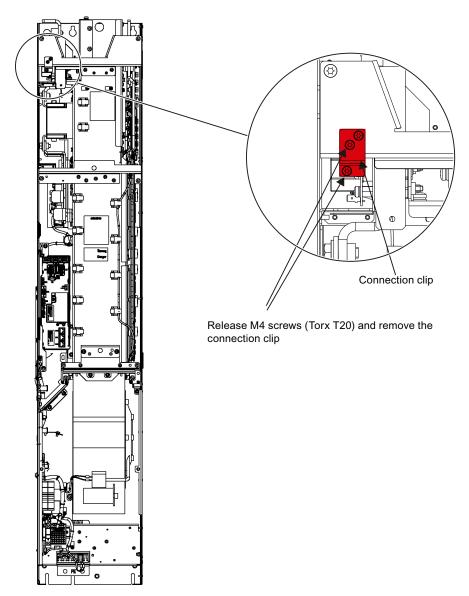


Figure 4-15 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Basic Line Module, frame size GB

Smart Line Modules

If the device is operated on an ungrounded / IT system, the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module must be removed.

With frame sizes HX and JX, you must remove the left-hand fan before removing the connection bar (see chapter "Replacing components").

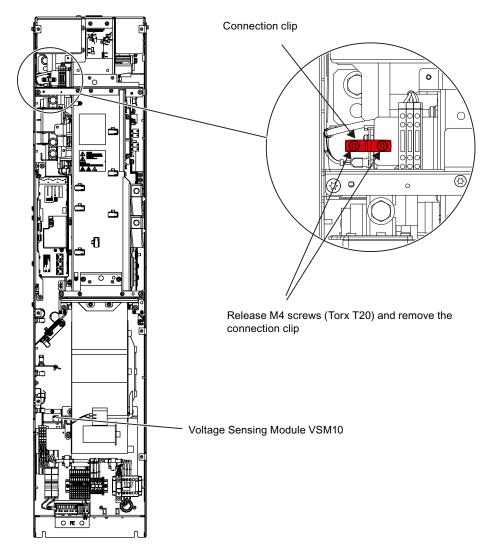


Figure 4-16 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Smart Line Module for frame size GX

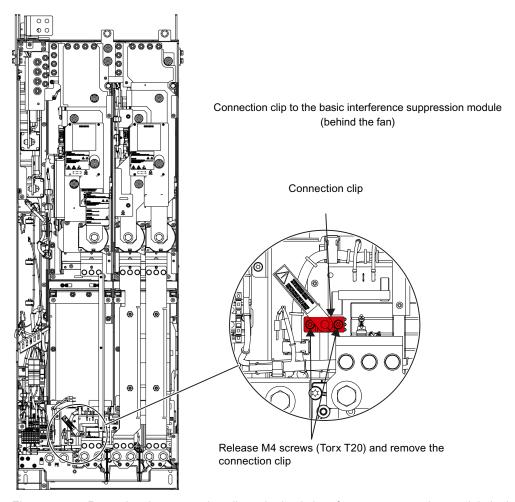


Figure 4-17 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Smart Line Module for frame size HX

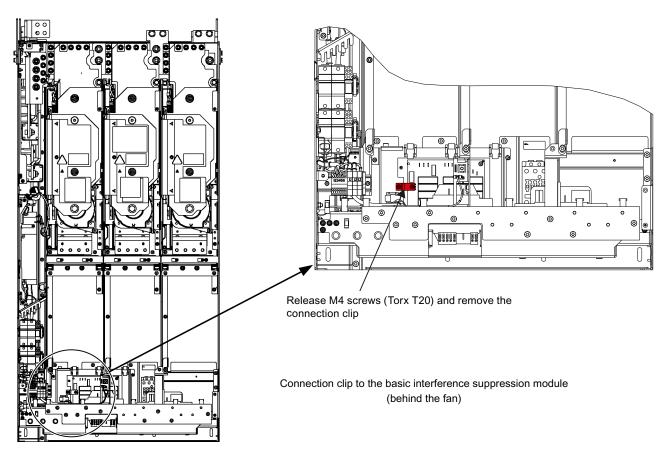


Figure 4-18 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Smart Line Module for frame size JX

Active Line Modules

If the device is operated on an ungrounded / IT system, the connection clip for the basic interference suppression module of the Active Interface Modules (-A2) must be removed.

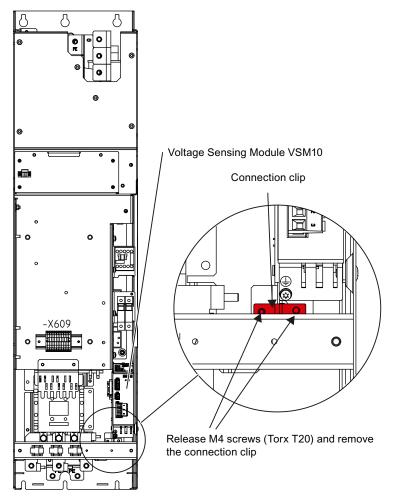


Figure 4-19 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Active Interface Module, frame size FX

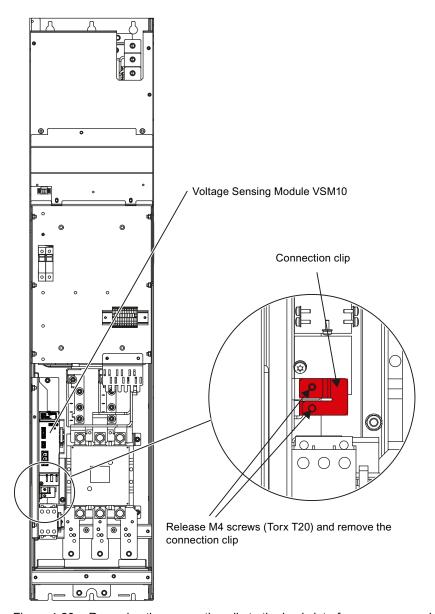


Figure 4-20 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Active Interface Module, frame size GX

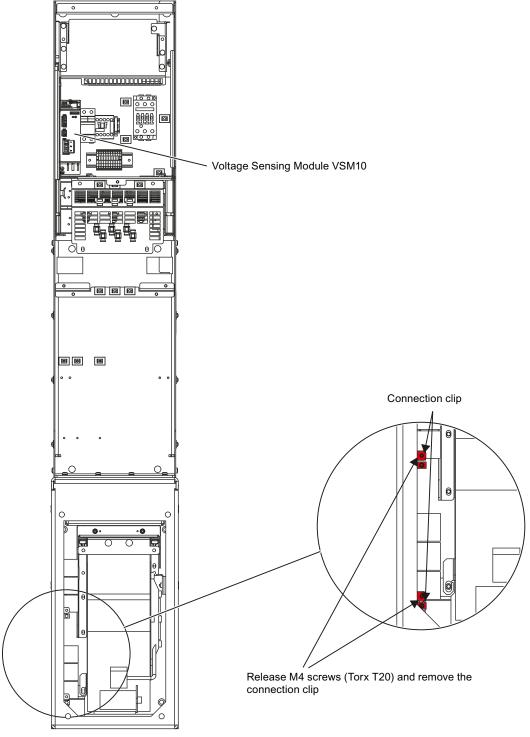


Figure 4-21 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Active Interface Module, frame size HX

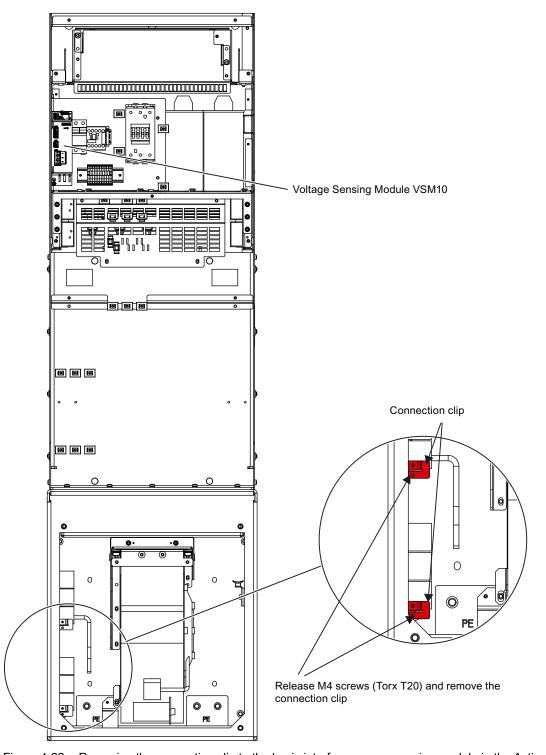


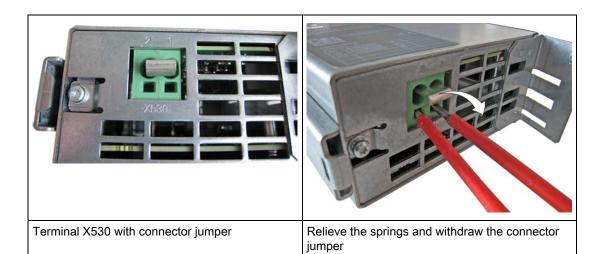
Figure 4-22 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module in the Active Interface Module, frame size JX

Removing the connector jumper in the VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module

If a Smart Line Module or Active Line Module is operated on an ungrounded / IT system, the connector jumper in terminal X530 on the lower side of the component must be removed from the Voltage Sensing Module (VSM10).

The position of the Voltage Sensing Module must be obtained from the previous drawings.

Use two screwdrivers or a suitable tool in order to relieve the holding springs in the terminal and then withdraw the connector jumper.



4.6.10 Signal connections

Note

Pre-assignment and position of the customer terminal block

The factory setting and description of the customer terminal blocks are documented in the circuit diagrams.

The location of the customer terminal blocks of the individual Cabinet Modules is documented in the layout diagrams.

The interfaces or customer terminal blocks are documented for the respective Cabinet Modules.

DRIVE-CLiQ cables must be locally routed according to the customer-specific engineering specifications for the entire system.

4.6.11 Other connections

Depending on the range of options installed, further connections may have to be made.

For more information about the interfaces of available options, refer to the relevant sections in this manual.

4.6.12 Cable routing

4.6.12.1 General information



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

The work described in this section is carried out in cabinets that are operated in industrial high-voltage installations. During operation, this cabinet contains rotating and live parts. For this reason, there is a risk of severe injury or significant material damage if the required covers are removed without authorization, if it is used or operated incorrectly, or if it has not been properly maintained.

You must read the safety information and application notes.

Basic rules for cable routing

The Cabinet Modules are delivered pre-wired.

The following basic rules must always be observed for all Cabinet Modules should any additional cabling and wiring or connection work be necessary.

- Observe EMC guidelines.
- Use existing routing for cable assemblies.
- Always use the shield plates provided (do not bypass them).
- Use existing cable propping bars as required.
- Attach the cable ties at suitable points on metal frames and cabinet frame profiles.
- Use a cabinet upright to route cables into adjacent cabinets.
- Refit any covers removed during cable routing before completing the work and commissioning!

Preparatory steps

Before starting any cabling or connection work in the Cabinet Modules, ensure that the following measures are performed:

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Allow unimpeded access to the necessary components in the Cabinet Module (if necessary, remove the covers).

Safety and EMC



Hazardous electrical voltage

Live parts can be touched if covers are not remounted.

All covers removed while the cables were being routed must be replaced before the Cabinet Module is commissioned!

Note

Internal cabinet wiring

When routing cables, utmost care must be taken not to change the internal cabinet wiring!

Note

EMC-compliant shielding

The shield plates must be replaced before the cabinet is commissioned in order to ensure that shielding is EMC-compliant!

The motor cable shields must be secured to the EMC shield bus (option M70) and the PE cables to the PE busbar!

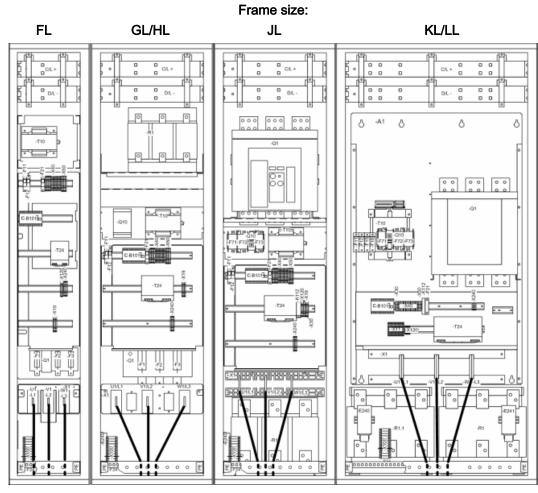
4.6.12.2 Cable routing for Line Connection Modules

For the Line Connection Modules, the customer must carry out the following cabling or connection work:

Table 4- 14 Checklist for cabling or connection work for Line Connection Modules

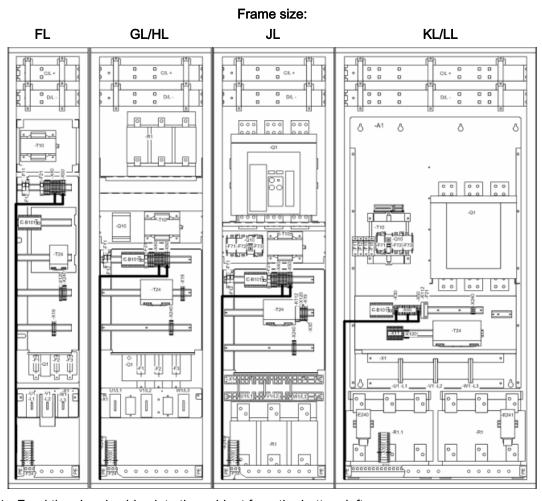
Cable routing	Completed?
Cable for the line supply connection (L1, L2, L3, PE)	
Signal cables	
Notice: The "Basic rules for cable routing" and "Preparatory steps" described above must be observed whenever any cabling or connection work is performed!	

Cable routing for connecting to the supply infeed



- 1. Feed the infeed cable into the cabinet from the bottom.
- 2. Connect the PE cable to the grounding bar.
- 3. Feed the cable up through the cabinet to terminal block -X1.
- 4. Secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect the cable to the terminal block.

Signal cables



- 1. Feed the signal cables into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Feed the signal cables up through the cabinet to terminal blocks -X30, -X40, and -X50.
- 3. Fasten the signal cables at suitable points.
- 4. Connect the signal cables to the terminal blocks.

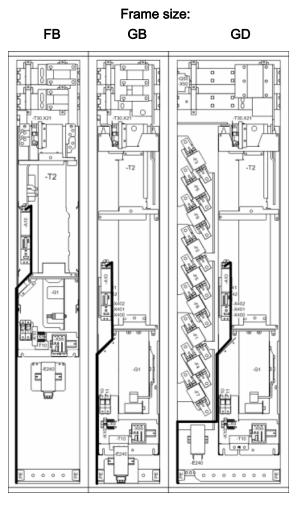
4.6.12.3 Cable routing for Basic Line Modules

For the Basic Line Modules, the customer must carry out the following cabling or connection work:

Table 4- 15 Checklist for cabling or connection work for Basic Line Modules

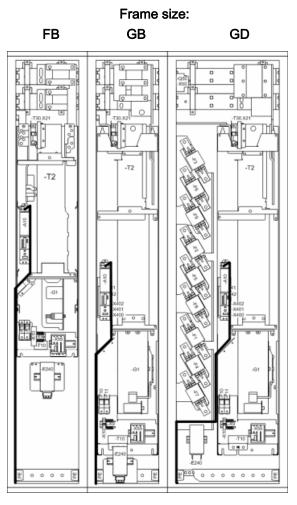
Cable routing	Completed?
PROFIBUS cable or PROFINET cable to the Control Unit	
DRIVE-CLiQ connections / signal cables to the Control Unit	
Signal cables to the customer terminal block –X55	
Notice: The "Basic rules for cable routing" and "Preparatory steps" described above must be observed whenever any cabling or connection work is performed!	

Cable routing for PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Control Unit



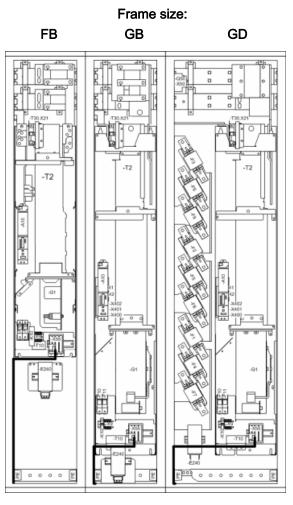
- 1. Feed the cable for the Control Unit into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Remove approx. 3 cm of the cable insulation at the level of the shield plate in the lower part of the cabinet and attach the cable there.
- 3. To secure the cable in accordance with EMC requirements, snap the clip onto the shield plate.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 6. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- Connect the cable to the Control Unit.
 (→See SINAMICS S120 Manual GH1 Control Units)

Cable routing for DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables



- 1. Feed the DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cable into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cable to the Control Unit.

Cable routing to the customer terminal block -X55



- 1. Feed the cable for the customer terminal block into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Remove approx. 3 cm of the cable insulation at the level of the shield plate in the lower part of the cabinet and attach the cable there.
- 3. To secure the cable in accordance with EMC requirements, snap the clip onto the shield plate.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Guide the cable further up into the cabinet and, when it reaches customer terminal block X55, guide it to the left or right to -X55. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 6. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 7. Connect the cables to the customer terminal block -X55.

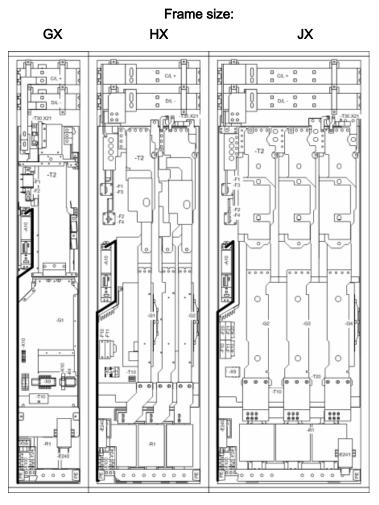
4.6.12.4 Cable routing for Smart Line Modules

For the Smart Line Modules, the customer must carry out the following cabling or connection work:

Table 4- 16 Checklist for cabling or connection work for Smart Line Modules

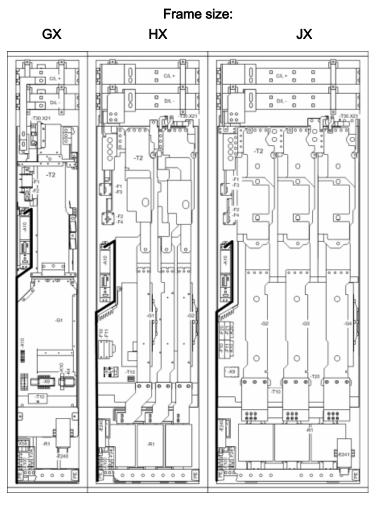
Cable routing	Completed?
PROFIBUS cable or PROFINET cable to the Control Unit	
DRIVE-CLiQ connections / signal cables to the Control Unit	
Signal cables to the customer terminal block –X55	
Notice: The "Basic rules for cable routing" and "Preparatory steps" described above must be observed whenever any cabling or connection work is performed!	

Cable routing for PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Control Unit



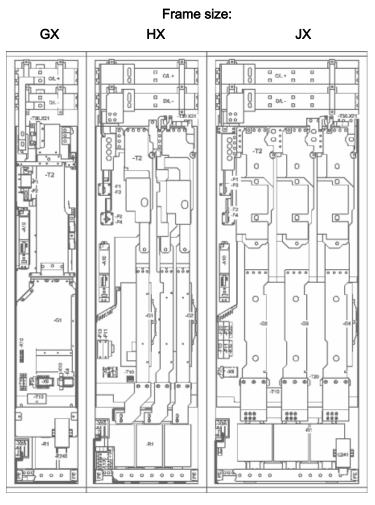
- 1. Feed the cable for the Control Unit into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Remove approx. 3 cm of the insulation at the level of the shield plate in the lower part of the cabinet and attach the cable there.
- 3. To secure the cable in accordance with EMC requirements, snap the clip onto the shield plate.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 6. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 7. Connect the cable to the Control Unit (→See SINAMICS S120 Manual GH1 Control Units)

Cable routing for DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables to the Control Unit



- 1. Feed the DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cable into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cable to the Control Unit.

Cable routing to the customer terminal block -X55



- 1. Feed the cable for the customer terminal block into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Guide the cable further up into the cabinet and, when it reaches customer terminal block X55, guide it to the left or right to -X55. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect the cables to the customer terminal block -X55.

4.6.12.5 Cable routing for Active Line Modules

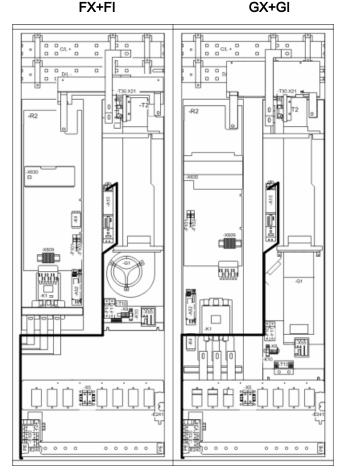
For the Active Line Modules, the customer must carry out the following cabling or connection work:

Table 4- 17 Checklist for cabling or connection work for Active Line Modules

Cable routing	Completed?
PROFIBUS cable or PROFINET cable to the Control Unit	
DRIVE-CLiQ connections / signal cables to the Control Unit	
Signal cables to the customer terminal block –X55	
Notice: The "Basic rules for cable routing" and "Preparatory steps" described above must be observed whenever any cabling or connection work is performed!	

Cable routing for PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Control Unit, frame sizes FX+FI and GX+GI

Frame size: GX+GI



- 1. Feed the cable for the Control Unit into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Remove approx. 3 cm of the insulation at the level of the shield plate in the lower part of the cabinet and attach the cable there.
- 3. To secure the cable in accordance with EMC requirements, snap the clip onto the shield plate.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 6. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 7. Connect the cable to the Control Unit (→See SINAMICS S120 Manual GH1 Control Units)

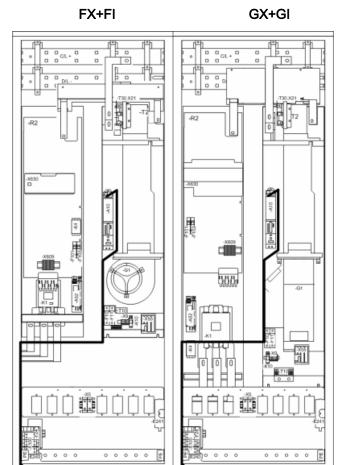
Cable routing for PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Control Unit, frame sizes HX+HI and JX+JI

HX+HI JX+JI

- 1. Feed the cable for the Control Unit into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Remove approx. 3 cm of the insulation at the level of the shield plate in the lower part of the cabinet and attach the cable there.
- 3. To secure the cable in accordance with EMC requirements, snap the clip onto the shield plate.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 6. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 7. Connect the cable to the Control Unit (→See SINAMICS S120 Manual GH1 Control Units)

Cable routing for DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables, frame sizes FX+FI and GX+GI

Frame size:



- 1. Feed the cable for the DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cables into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect DRIVE-CLiQ or signal cable to the Control Unit.

Cable routing for DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables, frame sizes HX+HI and JX+JI

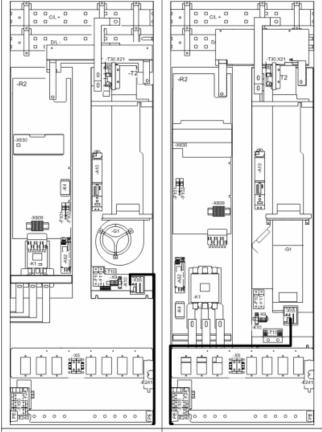
HX+HI JX+JI

- 1. Feed the cable for the DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cables into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect DRIVE-CLiQ or signal cable to the Control Unit.

Cable routing to customer terminal block -X55, frame sizes FX+FI and GX+GI

Frame size:

FX+FI **GX+GI**

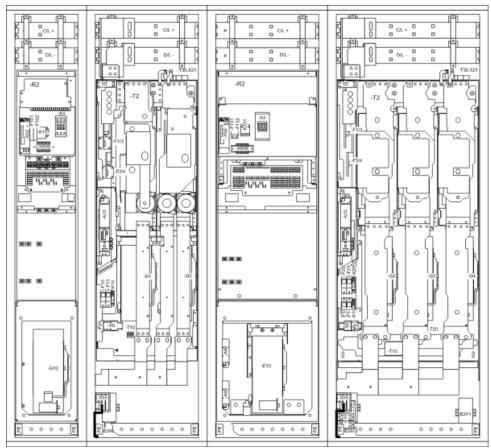


- 1. Feed the cable for the customer terminal block into the cabinet from the bottom right (frame size FX+FI) or bottom left (frame size GX+GI).
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Guide the cable further up into the cabinet and, when it reaches customer terminal block -X55, guide it to the left or right to -X55. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect the cables to the customer terminal block -X55.

Cable routing for customer terminal block –X55, frame sizes HX+HI and JX+JI

Frame size:

HX+HI JX+JI



- 1. Feed the cable for the customer terminal block into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Guide the cable further up into the cabinet and, when it reaches customer terminal block X55, guide it to the left or right to -X55. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect the cables to the customer terminal block -X55.

4.6.12.6 Cable routing for Booksize Base Cabinets and Booksize Cabinet Kit

Note

Cable routing

The procedure is the same as that for the Cabinet Modules Motor Module in chassis format. (→ See the Section titled "Cable routing for Motor Modules in chassis format")

Cable routing of motor cable

Note

Connecting the motor cables

The motor cables are easy to connect to terminals in the lower part of the customer connection area.

4.6.12.7 Cable routing for Motor Modules in the chassis format

For the Motor Modules in chassis format, the customer must carry out the following cabling or connection work:

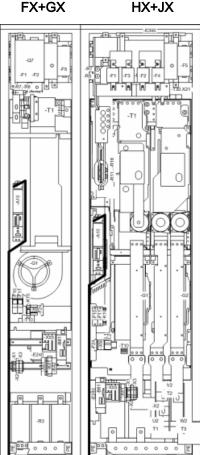
Table 4- 18 Checklist for cabling or connection work for Motor Modules in the chassis format

Cable routing	Completed?
PROFIBUS cable or PROFINET cable to the Control Unit	
DRIVE-CLiQ connections / signal cables to the Control Unit	
Signal cables to the customer terminal block –X55	
Option K82, terminal module for controlling safety functions "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1"	
Option K87, Terminal Module TM54F	
Option K88, Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC	
Option K89, Safe Brake Adapter SBA 24 V DC	
Signal cables to Sensor Module SMC10/20/30 (-B81/-B82/-B83)	
Cable connection between motor and Motor Module	
Notice: The "Basic rules for cable routing" and "Preparatory steps" described above must be observed whenever any cabling or connection work is performed!	

Cable routing for PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Control Unit

Frame size:

FX+GX

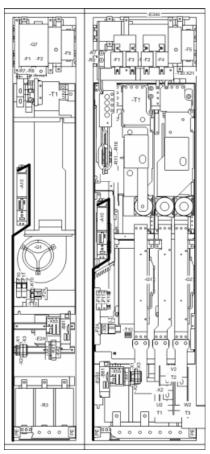


- 1. Feed the cable for the Control Unit into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Remove approx. 3 cm of the insulation at the level of the shield plate in the lower part of the cabinet and attach the cable there.
- 3. To secure the cable in accordance with EMC requirements, snap the clip onto the shield
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 6. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 7. Connect the cable to the Control Unit. (→See SINAMICS S120 Manual GH1 Control Units)

Cable routing for DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables to the Control Unit

Frame size:

FX+GX HX+JX

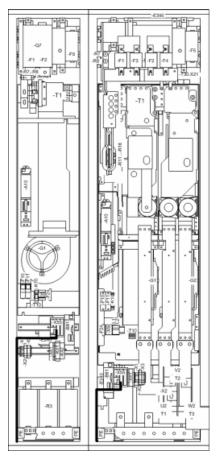


- 1. Feed the DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cable into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Feed the cable up through the cabinet and, when it reaches the Control Unit, guide it up and to the right towards the Control Unit. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect DRIVE-CLiQ/signal cable to the Control Unit.

Cable routing of signal cables to the customer terminal block –X55

Frame size:

FX+GX HX+JX



- 1. Feed the cable for the customer terminal block into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 3. Guide the cable further up into the cabinet and, when it reaches customer terminal block X55, guide it to the left or right to -X55. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Connect the cables to the customer terminal block -X55.

Cable routing for the "Safe Torque off" and "Safe Stop 1" functions

Note

Cable routing

The procedure is the same as that for the customer terminal block.

Connect the cable to the terminals to control the functions.

(→ See the chapter titled "Options", section "K82, terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1"")

Cable routing for the Terminal Module TM54F

Note

Cable routing

The procedure is the same as that for the customer terminal block.

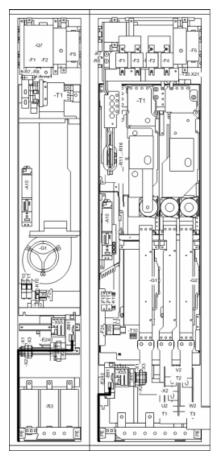
Connect the cable to the terminals to control the functions.

(→ See the chapter titled "Options" in section "K87, Terminal Module TM54F")

Cable routing for signal cables to SMC10/20/30 Sensor Module

Frame size:

FX+GX HX+JX

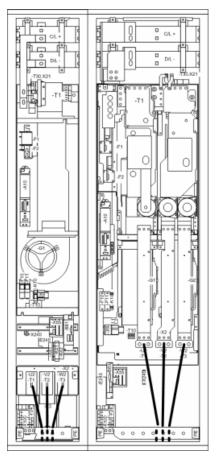


- 1. Feed the cable for the customer terminal block into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Remove approx. 3 cm of the insulation at the level of the shield plate in the lower part of the cabinet and attach the cable there.
- 3. To secure the cable in accordance with EMC requirements, snap the clip onto the shield plate.
- 4. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- 5. Guide the cable further up into the cabinet and, when it reaches the SMC10/20/30 Sensor Module (-B81/-B82/-B83), guide it to the right to the Sensor Module. When doing so, route the cable in a similar manner to the standard cables that have already been installed in the cabinet.
- 6. Use cable ties to secure the cable at suitable points.
- Connect the cable to the SMC10/20/30 Sensor Module (-B81/-B82/-B83).
 (→ See the chapter titled "Options", K46, K48 and K50 (Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC 10, 20 and 30)

Cable routing for motor connection

Frame size:

FX+GX HX+JX

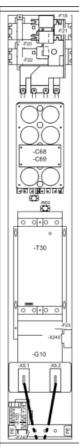


- 1. Feed the cable into the cabinet from below.
- 2. Feed the cable up through the cabinet to the motor connections -U2/-T1, -V2/-T2, -W2/-T3.
- 3. Connect the cable to the connections.

4.6.12.8 Cable routing for Central Braking Modules

Cable routing to the braking resistor

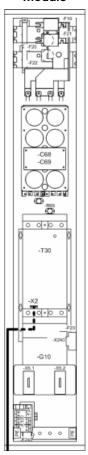
Central Braking Module



- 1. Feed the cable into the cabinet from below.
- 2. Feed the cable up and behind the PE busbar to the braking resistor terminals.
- 3. Connect the cable to terminals -X5.1 and -X5.2.

Cable routing to terminal block -X2

Central Braking Module

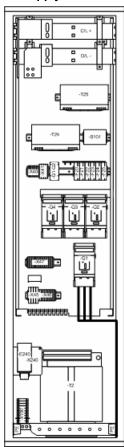


- 1. Feed the cable into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Guide the cable up and, when it reaches the level of terminal -X2, guide it to the right.
- 3. Continue to feed the cable upwards, securing it at suitable points using cable ties.
- 4. Connect the cable to terminals -X2.

4.6.12.9 Cable routing for Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Cable routing for connecting to the supply infeed

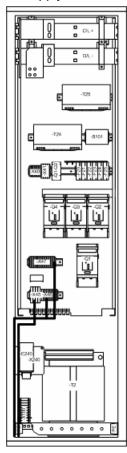
Auxiliary Power Supply Module



- 1. Feed the cable into the cabinet from the bottom right.
- 2. Guide the cable up and, when it reaches the level of the line connection, guide it to the left.
- 3. Secure the cable at suitable points.
- 4. Connect the cable to the line terminals.

Cable routing for signal cables to terminal blocks -X45, -X46, -X47

Auxiliary Power Supply Module



- 1. Feed the cable into the cabinet from the bottom left.
- 2. Guide the cable up and, when it reaches the terminal blocks, to the right.
- 3. Secure the cable at suitable points.
- 4. Connect the cable to terminals -X45, -X46, and -X47.

Cabinet Modules 5

5.1 Line Connection Modules

5.1.1 General information



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

5.1.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams and circuit diagrams provided on the customer DVD supplied with the device for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

Power is fed to the drive line-up via Line Modules, which generate a DC voltage from the line voltage and, therefore, supply energy to the Motor Modules connected to the DC link. They are suitable for connection to systems grounded at the neutral point (TN, TT) and non-grounded (IT) systems. The Line Modules are connected to the incoming supply via Line Connection Modules and are equipped with a radio interference suppression filter in accordance with EN 61800-3, Category C3 as a standard feature.

Line Connection Modules contain the line-side infeed with main breaker and fuse switch disconnector or circuit breaker and provide the connection between the plant power system and the Line Modules.

Line Connection Modules are available for the following voltages and currents:

Input voltage	Input current
380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	250 3200 A
500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	280 3200 A

Table 5-1 X1 terminals for the supply infeed

Terminals	Technical data
U1/L1, V1/L2, W1/L3 3 AC power input	Voltage: 380 V AC, 3-phase –10% to 480 V AC, 3-phase +10% (-15% < 1 min) 500 V AC, 3-phase –10% to 690 V AC, 3-phase +10% (-15% < 1 min)
	Frequency: 47 63 Hz

Depending on the input current, the following designs are used:

- ≤ 800 A: Main breaker with fuse switch disconnector
- > 800 A: Circuit breaker, type 3WL, with option L25 as draw-out circuit breaker

Configuration

Note

Additional information

The configuration examples of the individual Line Connection Modules are used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

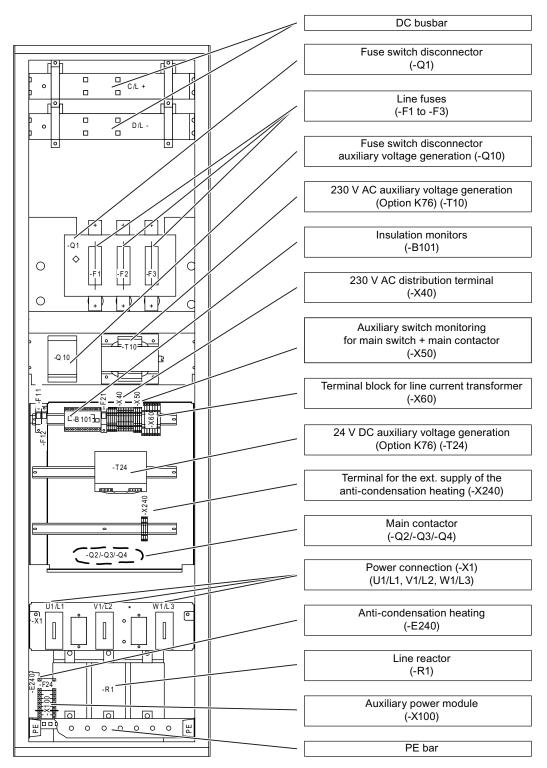


Figure 5-1 Configuration example for Line Connection Modules (frame size HL)

5.1 Line Connection Modules

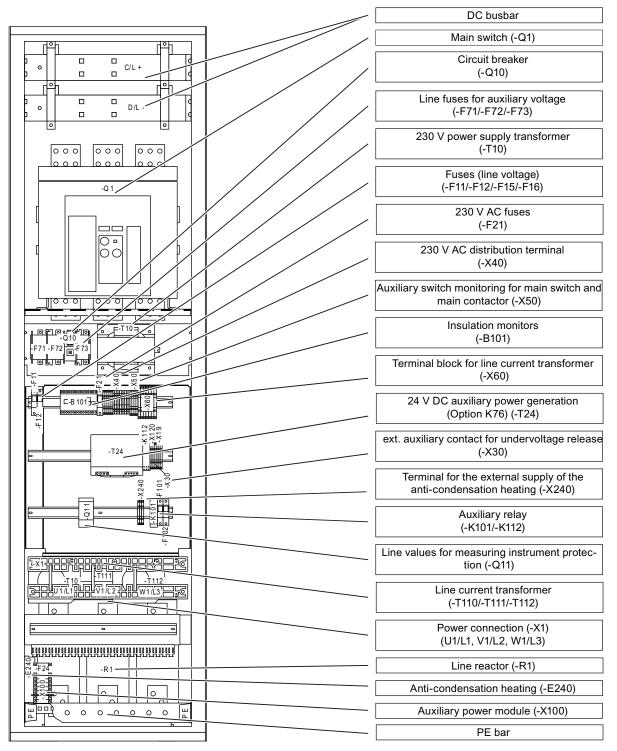


Figure 5-2 Configuration example for Line Connection Modules (frame size JL)

5.1.2.1 Fuse switch disconnector (input current ≤ 800 A)

Up to 800 A, a switch disconnector with integrated fuses is incorporated.

X50 "Fuse switch disconnector" checkback contact

Table 5- 2 Terminal block X50 "Fuse switch disconnector" checkback contact

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data				
1	NO	"Fuse switch disconnector" checkback contacts				
2	NC	Max. load current: 3 A				
3	СОМ	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC				
Max. conne	Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm ²					

¹⁾ NC: normally-closed contact, NO: normally-open contact, COM: Center contact

5.1.2.2 Circuit breaker (input current > 800 A)

At currents greater than 800 A, the circuit breaker, which is located in the center of the cabinet, takes on the function of isolating the system from the supply and the overload and short-circuit protection. The circuit breaker is internally activated and has its own internal power supply.

The tripping current on the line-side must be set according to the conditions of the system.

The tripping current is set as follows in the default factory setting:

Table 5-3 Factory setting of the overcurrent release on Line Connection Modules for Basic Line Modules

Order number Line Connection Module	Order number Basic Line Module	Input current Line Module	Overload trip (L)	Short-time delayed short- circuit release (S)	Short-circuit release delay (tsd)
6SL3700-0LE41-3AA3	6SL3730-1TE41-2AA3	1010 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LE41-6AA3	6SL3730-1TE41-5AA3	1265 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LE42-0AA3	6SL3730-1TE41-8AA3	1630 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LE42-0BA3	6SL3730-1TE41-2Bx3	2x 935 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE42-5BA3	6SL3730-1TE41-5Bx3	2x 1170 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE43-2BA3	6SL3730-1TE41-8Bx3	2x 1508 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LG41-0AA3	6SL3730-1TG41-1AA3	925 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LG41-3AA3	6SL3730-1TG41-4AA3	1180 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LG41-6AA3	6SL3730-1TG41-8AA3	1580 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LG42-0BA3	6SL3730-1TG41-1Bx3	2 x 855 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LG42-5BA3	6SL3730-1TG41-4Bx3	2 x 1092 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LG43-2BA3	6SL3730-1TG41-8Bx3	2 x 1462 A	1.0	2	0

5.1 Line Connection Modules

Table 5-4 Factory setting of the overcurrent release on Line Connection Modules for Smart Line Modules

Order number Line Connection Module	Order number Smart Line Module	Input current Line Module	Overload trip (L)	Short-time delayed short- circuit release (S)	Short-circuit release delay (tsd)
6SL3700-0LE41-0AA3	6SL3730-6TE41-1AA3	883 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE41-3AA3	6SL3730-6TE41-3AA3	1093 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE41-6AA3	6SL3730-6TE41-7AA3	1430 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE42-0BA3	6SL3730-6TE41-1Bx3	2 x 817 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LE42-5BA3	6SL3730-6TE41-3Bx3	2 x 1011 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LE43-2BA3	6SL3730-6TE41-7Bx3	2 x 1323 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LG41-3AA3	6SL3730-6TG41-2AA3	1009 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LG41-6AA3	6SL3730-6TG41-7AA3	1430 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LG42-0BA3	6SL3730-6TG38-8Bx3	2 x 700 A	0.8	2	0
6SL3700-0LG42-0BA3	6SL3730-6TG41-2Bx3	2 x 934 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LG43-2BA3	6SL3730-6TG41-7Bx3	2 x 1323 A	0.9	2	0

Table 5-5 Factory setting of the overcurrent release on Line Connection Modules for Active Line Modules

Order number Line Connection Module	Order number Active Line Module	Input current Line Module	Overload trip (L)	Short-time delayed short- circuit release (S)	Short-circuit release delay (tsd)
6SL3700-0LE41-0AA3	6SL3730-7TE38-4BA3	840 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE41-3AA3	6SL3730-7TE41-0BA3	985 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LE41-6AA3	6SL3730-7TE41-4BA3	1405 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE42-0BA3	6SL3730-7TE41-0Bx3	2 x 936 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LE43-2BA3	6SL3730-7TE41-4Bx3	2 x 1335 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LG41-3AA3	6SL3730-7TG41-0BA3	1025 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LG41-6AA3	6SL3730-7TG41-3BA3	1270 A	0.9	2	0
6SL3700-0LG42-0BA3	6SL3730-7TG37-4Bx3	2 x 698 A	0.7	2	0
6SL3700-0LG42-0BA3	6SL3730-7TG41-0Bx3	2 x 974 A	1.0	2	0
6SL3700-0LG42-5BA3	6SL3730-7TG41-3Bx3	2 x 1206 A	1.0	2	0

NOTICE

Check the settings

The settings specified above should be checked. Incorrect settings can cause unwanted or delayed tripping of the circuit breaker and result in excessive damage to the cabinet unit.

Note

Additional information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the circuit breaker as well as the standard and additional options can be found in the accompanying operating instructions, These operating instructions are available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

X50 "circuit breaker" checkback contact

Table 5- 6 Terminal block X50 "Circuit-breaker" checkback contact

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data			
1	NO	"Fuse switch disconnector" checkback contacts			
2	NC	Max. load current: 3 A			
3	СОМ	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC			
Max. conne	Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm ²				

¹⁾ NC: Normally-closed contact, NO: Normally-open contact, COM: Center contact

X30 looping in an external EMERGENCY OFF

Terminal block -X30 provides you with the option of connecting an external EMERGENCY OFF (normally-closed contact) for switching off the circuit breaker.

Table 5-7 Terminal block X30 "Fuse switch disconnector" checkback contact

Terminal	Technical data
1	Factory-installed jumper between terminal 1 and terminal 2; this jumper must be
2	removed if a normally-closed contact is looped in externally.
Max. connec	ctable cross-section: 2.5 mm ²

5.1.2.3 Terminal block -X40 external 230 V AC auxiliary infeed

Terminal block -X40 provides you with the option of connecting an external auxiliary infeed (such as an uninterruptible power supply) that is independent of the main infeed. The connection may be protected with up to a 16 A fuse.

Table 5-8 Terminal block X40 external 230 V AC auxiliary infeed

Terminal	Designation	Technical data				
1	L1	Factory-installed jumper to terminal 2; this jumper must be removed if an external infeed is used.				
2	L1	Connection of external 230 V AC auxiliary infeed: L1				
5	N	Factory-installed jumper to terminal 6; this jumper must be removed if an external infeed is used.				
6	N	Connection of external 230 V AC auxiliary infeed: N				
Max. connecta	Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm ²					

5.1.3 Versions of Line Connection Modules

Different versions to suit specific input currents are available:

- Units ≤ 800 A are equipped with a main breaker with fuse switch disconnector
- Units > 800 A are equipped with a fixed-mounted circuit breaker (draw-out circuit breaker is available as option)

Line Connection Modules come in the following versions (specified by an option code) according to the type of the Line Module that is being fed:

• for Active Line Modules: Order code L42

• for Basic Line Modules: Order code L43

for Smart Line Modules: Order code L44

5.1.3.1 Version L42 for Active Line Modules

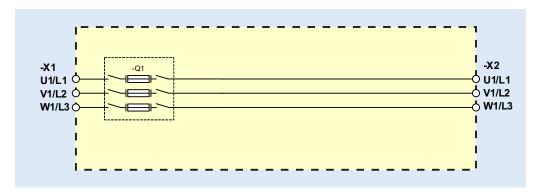


Figure 5-3 Connection example: Line Connection Module ≤800 A for connection to Active Line Modules, option L42

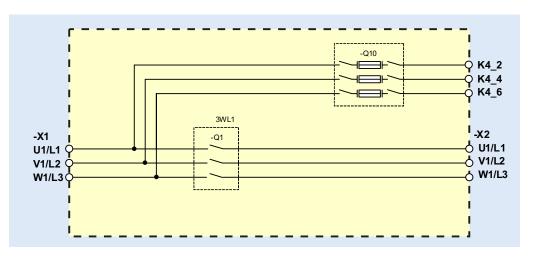


Figure 5-4 Connection example: Line Connection Module >800 A for connection to Active Line Modules, option L42

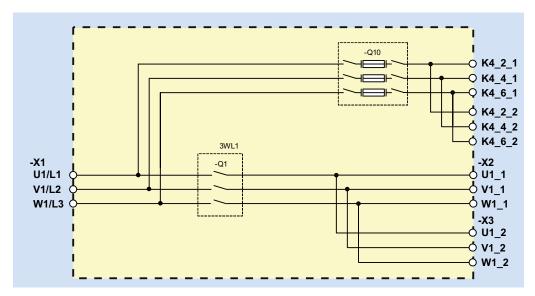


Figure 5-5 Connection example: Line Connection Module ≥2000 A for connection to Active Line Modules in parallel connection, option L42

5.1.3.2 Version L43 for Basic Line Modules

When Basic Line Modules are used, a line reactor is incorporated as a standard feature.

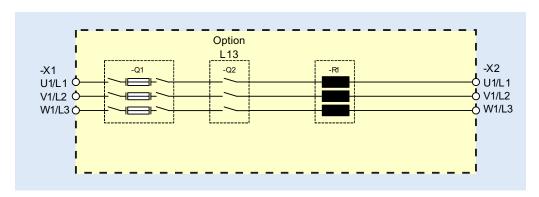


Figure 5-6 Connection example: Line Connection Module ≤ 800 A for connection to Basic Line Modules, options: L43, L13

5.1 Line Connection Modules

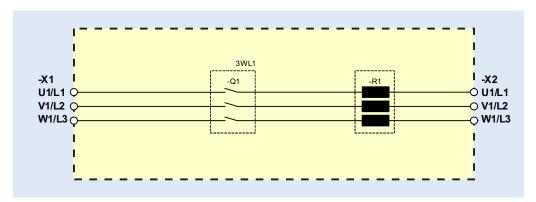


Figure 5-7 Connection example: Line Connection Module >800 A, <1800 A for connection to Basic Line Modules, option L43

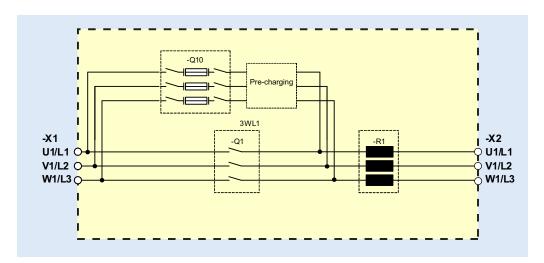


Figure 5-8 Connection example: Line Connection Module >1800 A, <2000 A for connection to Basic Line Modules, option L43

If Basic Line Modules that are fed via a common Line Connection Module are connected in parallel, line reactors are generally incorporated in the Line Connection Module.

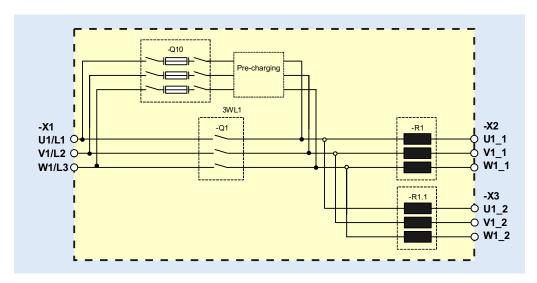


Figure 5-9 Connection example: Line Connection Module ≥2000 A for connection to Basic Line Modules, option L43

Note

Establishing connections according to the circuit diagram

The 24 V DC and 230 V AC connections to the auxiliary power supply must be established in accordance with the circuit diagram.

A fan is incorporated in the Line Connection Module for degree of protection IP23, IP43, and IP54. The power is supplied using a connecting cable that must be connected to the auxiliary power module on the plant side.

5.1.3.3 Version L44 for Smart Line Modules

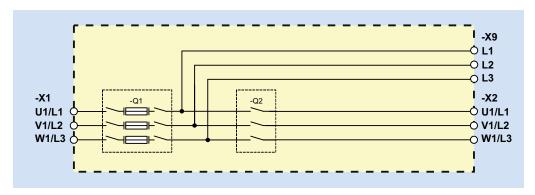


Figure 5-10 Connection example: Line Connection Module ≤800 A for connection to Smart Line Modules, option L44

5.1 Line Connection Modules

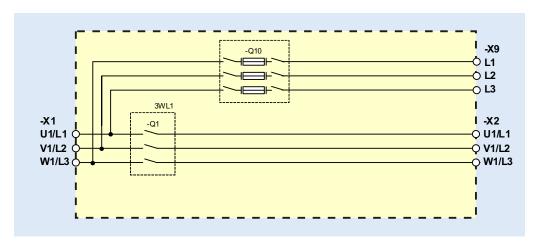


Figure 5-11 Connection example: Line Connection Module >800 A for connection to Smart Line Modules, option L44

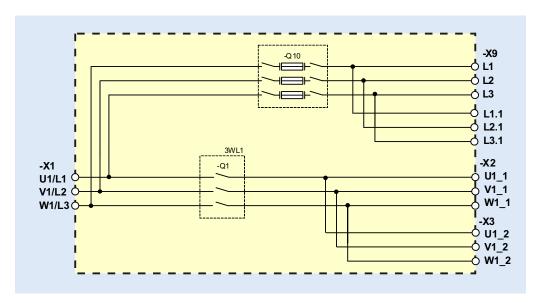


Figure 5-12 Connection example: Line Connection Module >1600 A for connection to Smart Line Modules, option L44

5.1.4 Options

Note

Additional information

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options

Component	Option
1 temperature sensor module TM150	G51
2 temperature sensor modules TM150	G52
3 temperature sensor modules TM150	G53
4 temperature sensor modules TM150	G54
Fan power supply	K70
Auxiliary power generation in the Line Connection Module	K76
Main contactor (for Line Connection Modules ≤ 800 A)	L13
Operation in an IT system	L21
No line reactor for Basic Line Modules	L22
Draw-out circuit breaker (for Line Connection Modules > 800 A)	L25
Line current transformer	L41
Line Connection Module for Active Line Modules	L42
Line Connection Module for Basic Line Modules	L43
Line Connection Module for Smart Line Modules	L44
EMERGENCY STOP pushbutton in cabinet door	L45
Grounding switch upstream of circuit breaker	L46
Grounding switch downstream of circuit breaker	L47
Cabinet lighting with service socket	L50
Holder for ARC detector	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55
Insulation monitoring	L87
Measuring instrument for line values (installed in the cabinet door)	P10
Measuring instrument for line variables with PROFIBUS connection, installed in the cabinet door	P11

Mechanical options

Component	Option
Base 100 mm high, RAL 7035	M06
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07
IP21 degree of protection	M21
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54
Side panels (left)	M27
Closed cabinet door	M59
Additional shock protection	M60
EMC shield bus	M70
DC busbar	M80 M87
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90

5.1 Line Connection Modules

5.1.5 Technical data

Table 5-9 Technical data for Line Connection Modules, 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, part I

Order no.	6SL3700-	0LE32- 5AA3	0LE34- 0AA3	0LE36- 3AA3	0LE38- 0AA3	0LE41- 0AA3
Infeed/regenerative feedback current - Rated current INE	A	250	380	600	770	1000
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency	V _{ACrms} Hz	3 A0	C 380 -10 % .	3 AC 480 + 47 63 Hz		< 1 min)
230 V AC current consumption ¹⁾ - inrush current - holding current	A A	3.6 0.04	3.6 0.04	3.6 0.04	10.8 0.12	0.5 0.06
Power loss, max. ²⁾ with 50 Hz 400 V - Option L42/L44 - Option L43 with 60 Hz 460 V - Option L42/L44 - Option L43	kW kW kW	0.115 0.115	0.19 0.19	0.31 0.675 0.31 0.675	0.39 0.74 0.39 0.74	0.18 0.18
Fan - Current consumption 230 V AC - Cooling air requirement ³⁾ - Sound pressure level L _{PA} (1 m) with 50/60 Hz	A m³/s dB(A)			 	 	1.07 0.36 68/70
Line connection L1, L2, L3 - Connection cross section, max (IEC)	mm²	2/M12 2 x 150	2/M12 2 x 150	2/M12 4 x 240	2/M12 8 x 240	5/M12 + 4/M16 8 x 240
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²			PE busbar 600 240	-	
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height 4) - depth	mm mm mm	400 x 2200 x 600	400 x 2200 x 600	600 x 2200 x 600	600 x 2200 x 600	600 x 2200 x 600
Weight - Option L42, L44 - Option L43	kg kg	210	230	310 360	340 420	450
Frame size		FL	FL	GL	HL	JL
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	50	50	50	50	100
Minimum short-circuit current 5)	Α	3000	3000	8000	12000	2000

¹⁾ Current consumption of contactors/circuit breakers and fans with IP23, IP43, IP54 degree of protection (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

²⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.

³⁾ For IP23, IP43 or IP54 degree of protection only (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

⁴⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

⁵⁾ Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

Table 5- 10 Technical data for Line Connection Modules, 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, part II

Order no.	6SL3700-	0LE41- 3AA3	0LE41- 6AA3	0LE42- 0AA3	0LE42- 0BA3 ⁵⁾	0LE42- 5BA3 ⁵⁾	0LE43- 2BA3 ⁵⁾
Infeed/regenerative feedback current - Rated current INE	A	1250	1600	2000	2000	2500	3200
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency	V _{ACrms} Hz	3 AC 380 -10 % 3 AC 480 +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 47 63 Hz					min)
230 V AC current consumption ¹⁾ - inrush current - holding current	A A	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.04
Power loss, max. ²⁾ with 50 Hz 400 V - Option L42/L44 - Option L43 with 60 Hz 460 V - Option L42/L44 - Option L43	kW kW kW	0.29 0.787 0.29 0.787	0.41 1.186 0.41 1.186	0.6 1.366 0.6 1.366	0.6 1.594 0.6 1.594	0.95 2.502 0.95 2.502	0.95 2.482 0.95 2.482
Fan - Current consumption 230 V AC - Cooling air requirement ³⁾ - Sound pressure level L _{PA} (1 m) with 50/60 Hz	A m³/s dB(A)	1.07 0.36 68/70	1.07 0.36 68/70	2.14 0.72 70/72	2.14 0.72 70/72	2.14 0.72 70/72	2.14 0.72 70/72
Line connection L1, L2, L3		0 0 40	40 04		+ 4/M16	40 040	40 200
- Conductor cross section, max. (IEC) PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm² mm²	8 x 240 10 x 24 10 x 240 10 x 240 10 x 240 10 x 300 PE busbar 600 240					
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height 4) - depth	mm mm mm	600 x 2200 x 600	600 x 2200 x 600	1000 x 2200 x 600	1000 x 2200 x 600	1000 x 2200 x 600	1000 x 2200 x 600
Weight - Option L42, L44 - Option L43	kg kg	470 570	490 650	600 760	620 820	620 900	720 1000
Frame size		JL	JL	KL	KL	KL	LL
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	100	100	100	100	100	100
Minimum short-circuit current 6)	А	2500	3200	4000	4000	5000	6400

¹⁾ Current consumption of contactors/circuit breakers and fans with IP23, IP43, IP54 degree of protection (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

²⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.

³⁾ For IP23, IP43 or IP54 degree of protection only (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

⁴⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

⁵⁾ Ready to connect to parallel Line Modules.

⁶⁾ Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

5.1 Line Connection Modules

Table 5- 11 Technical data for Line Connection Modules, 3 AC 500 ... 690 V, part I

Order no.	6SL3700-	0LG32- 8AA3	0LG34- 0AA3	0LG36- 3AA3	0LG38- 0AA3	0LG41- 0AA3
Infeed/regenerative feedback current	_	200	200	600	700	4000
- Rated current I _{NE}	Α	280	380	600	780	1000
Supply voltages		2.40	E00 40 0/	2 4 0 000 14	0.0/ / 4.5.0/ -	4
- Line voltage - Line frequency	V _{ACrms} Hz	3 AC	500 -10 %	47 63 Hz		1 111111)
230 V AC current consumption¹)	112			1 00 112		
- inrush current	Α	3.6	3.6	3.6	10.8	0.5
- holding current	A	0.04	0.04	0.04	0.12	0.06
Power loss, max. 2)						
with 50 Hz 500/690 V						
- Option L42/L44	kW	0.125	0.19	0.31	0.39	0.18
- Option L43	kW	0.402	0.668	0.794		0.963
with 60 Hz 575 V		0.405				
- Option L42/L44	kW	0.125	0.19 0.668	0.31	0.39	0.18
- Option L43	kW	0.402	0.008	0.794		0.963
Fan						4.07
- Current consumption 230 V AC - Cooling air requirement ³⁾	A m³/s					1.07 0.36
- Sound pressure level L _{PA}	dB(A)					68/70
(1 m) with 50/60 Hz	ab(rt)					00/10
Line connection L1, L2, L3		2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	5/M12 +
- Connection cross section,						4/M16
max (IEC)	mm ²	2 x 150	2 x 150	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
PE/GND connection				PE busbar		
- Busbar cross section	mm ²			600		
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²		_	240		_
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20)						
- width	mm	400	600	600	600	600
- height ⁴⁾	mm	2200	2200	2200	2200	2200
- depth	mm	600	600	600	600	600
Weight	1.			0.40		150
- Option L42, L44	kg	220	230	310	340	450
- Option L43	kg	260	310	400		650
Frame size		FL	FL	GL	HL	JL
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	50	50	50	50	85
Minimum short-circuit current 5)	Α	3000	3500	9000	15000	2000

¹⁾ Current consumption of contactors/circuit breakers and fans with IP23, IP43, IP54 degree of protection (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.

For IP23, IP43 or IP54 degree of protection only (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

⁵⁾ Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

Table 5- 12 Technical data for Line Connection Modules, 3 AC 500 ... 690 V, part II

Order no.	6SL3700-	0LG41- 3AA3	0LG41- 6AA3	0LG42- 0BA3 ⁵⁾	0LG42- 5BA3 ⁵⁾	0LG43- 2BA3 ⁵⁾
Infeed/regenerative feedback current - Rated current INE	А	1250	1600	2000	2500	3200
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency	V _{ACrms}	3 A	C 500 -10 % .	3 AC 690 + 47 63 H		< 1 min)
230 V AC current consumption ¹⁾ - inrush current - holding current	A A	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06	0.5 0.06
Power loss, max. ²⁾ with 50 Hz 500/690 V - Option L42/L44 - Option L43 with 60 Hz 575 V - Option L42/L44 - Option L43	kW kW kW	0.29 1.073	0.41 1.387 	0.6 2.166 	0.6 2.166	0.95 2.894
Fan - Current consumption 230 V AC - Cooling air requirement ³⁾ - Sound pressure level L _{PA} (1 m) with 50/60 Hz	A m³/s dB(A)	1.07 0.36 68/70	1.07 0.36 68/70	2.14 0.72 70/72	2.14 0.72 70/72	2.14 0.72 70/72
Line connection L1, L2, L3				5/M12 + 4/M	116	
- Conductor cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	8 x 240	8 x 240	10 x 240	10 x 240	10 x 240
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240				
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ⁴⁾ - depth	mm mm mm	600 2200 600	600 2200 600	1000 2200 600	1000 2200 600	1000 2200 600
Weight - Option L42, L44 - Option L43	kg kg	470 670	490 680	600 980	620 1000	720 1080
Frame size		JL	JL	KL	KL	LL
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	85	85	85	85	85
Minimum short-circuit current 6)	Α	2500	3200	4000	5000	6400

¹⁾ Current consumption of contactors/circuit breakers and fans with IP23, IP43, IP54 degree of protection (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

²⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.

³⁾ For IP23, IP43 or IP54 degree of protection only (in combination with Basic Line Modules).

⁴⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

⁵⁾ Ready to connect to parallel Line Modules.

⁶⁾ Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

5.2.1 General information



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

5.2.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) and circuit diagrams (SP) provided on the customer DVD supplied with the device for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

Basic Line Modules are compact supply infeeds for 2-quadrant operation (i.e. no regenerative feedback).

Under full load, the DC-link voltage is higher than the rms value of the rated line voltage by a factor of 1.32, and under partial load by a factor of 1.35.

They are used in applications where energy does not have to be fed back into the line.

If regenerative conditions occur in the drive line-up, Braking Modules must be used because they convert the excess energy in braking resistors into heat.

Basic Line Modules are suitable for connection to supply systems grounded at the neutral point (TN, TT) and non-grounded (IT) supply systems. The following voltages and power ratings are available:

Line voltage	Rated power
380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	200 900 kW
500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	250 1500 kW

The power rating can be increased by connecting Basic Line Modules in parallel.

Integration

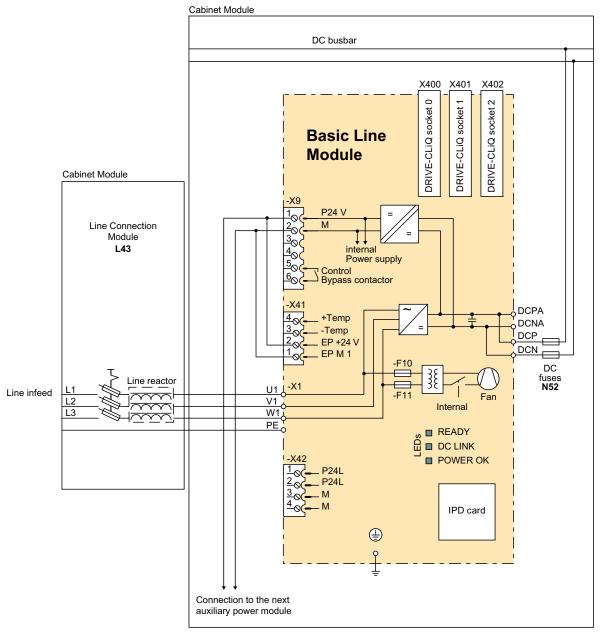


Figure 5-13 Connection example for Basic Line Modules (frame size FB and GB)

Note

X9 terminal assignment for the Basic Line Module (frame size GD)

For the Basic Line Modules, frame size GD, equipped with diode bridge

- the bypass contactor is controlled at terminals -X9:3 and -X9:4
- pre-charging is controlled at terminals -X9:5 and -X9:6

Configuration

In Basic Line Modules of frame sizes FB and GB, a fully-controlled thyristor bridge is used to pre-charge the Basic Line Module and the connected DC link. The thyristors normally operate with a trigger delay angle of 0 °.

Basic Line Modules of type GD for 900 kW (400 V) or 1500 kW (690 V) feature a diode bridge. On these units, the DC link is precharged via a separate, line-side precharging device.

Note

Additional information

The configuration examples of the individual Basic Line Modules are used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

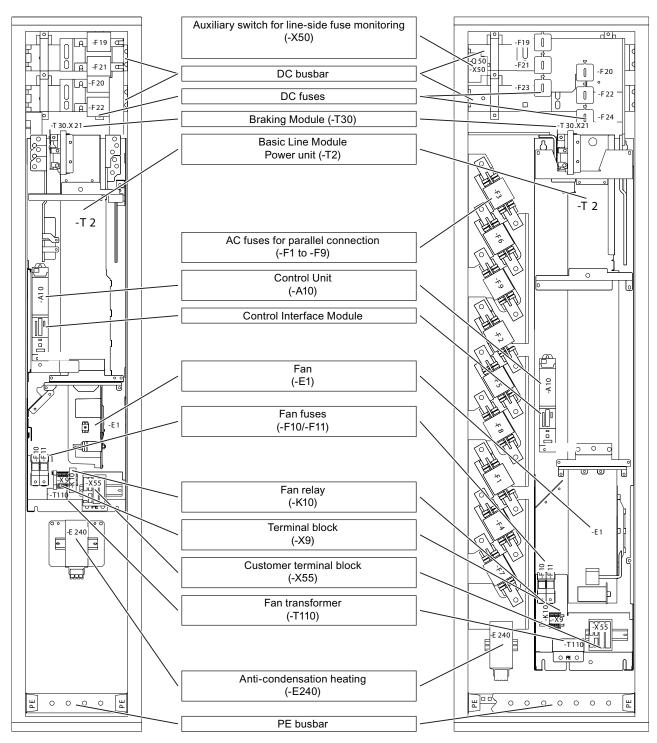


Figure 5-14 Configuration example for Basic Line Modules (frame size FB and GD)

Parallel connection of Basic Line Modules to increase power rating

A pair of Basic Line Modules is available for creating drive line-ups with more power. These modules can be operated on a common Line Connection Module and are arranged to the right and left of the Line Connection Module. The power connections on the Basic Line Module on the left of the Line Connection Module are a mirror image (order number with C in the next-to-last position, example: 6SL3730-1Tx41-xBC3), which produces a very compact design for the line supply infeed.

The following rules must be observed when connecting Basic Line Modules in parallel:

- Up to 4 identical Basic Line Modules can be connected in parallel.
- A common Control Unit is required whenever the modules are connected in parallel.
- Special Line Connection Modules are available for connecting the modules in parallel.
- With multiple infeeds, power must be supplied to the systems from a common infeed point (i.e. the modules cannot be operated on different supplies).
- A derating factor of 7.5% must be taken into consideration, regardless of the number of modules connected in parallel.

When Basic Line Modules are connected in parallel, each having its own Line Connection Module, the main contactors or circuit breakers of the respective Line Connection Modules must switch on together and simultaneously.

The monitoring is realized via terminals -X50 of the particular Line Connection Module.

5.2.3 Interface description

5.2.3.1 General information

This chapter describes only those interfaces in the cabinet unit that require additional connection work by the customer. All other interfaces are pre-wired at the factory and are not designed for customer connections.

Note

Additional information

All connections to be established on the plant side as well as the interfaces for integration into the plant control system are described in the circuit diagrams and terminal diagrams on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

5.2.3.2 Control Interface Module

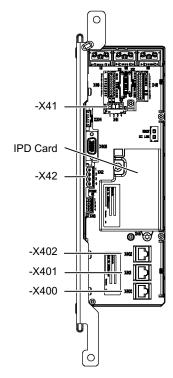


Figure 5-15 Control Interface Module

5.2.3.3 X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection

Table 5- 13 Terminal strip X41 EP terminals / temperature sensor connection

	Terminal	Function	Technical data		
1234	1	EP M1 (Enable Pulses)	Supply voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 28.8 V)		
0000	2	EP +24 V (Enable Pulses)	Current consumption: 10 mA		
الازالازالاز	3 - Temp		Temperature sensor connection:		
	4	+ Temp	KTY84-1C130 / PTC		
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm ²					

Note

Connection at terminals 1 and 2

24 V DC must be present at terminal 2 and ground at terminal 1 for operation. Pulse suppression is activated when removed.



Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp". If safe electrical separation cannot be guaranteed (for linear motors or third-party motors, for example), a Sensor Module External (SME120 or SME125) must be used.

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection: KTY84-1C130 / PTC.

NOTICE

Use shielded cables

The temperature sensor connection must be shielded. The shielding must be attached to the shield support of the module.

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

5.2.3.4 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

Table 5- 14 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

	PIN	Signal name	Technical specifications
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
В	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	Α	+ (24 V)	24 V power supply
	В	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Blanking plate	for DRIV	/E-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) order numbe	r: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0

5.2.4 Options

Note

Additional information

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options

Component	Option
CBC10 Communication Board	G20
CBE20 Communication Board	G33
Contactor monitoring	G56
AOP30 operator panel	K08
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFIBUS	K90
Performance extension for CU320-2	K94
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFINET	K95
Use in the first environment according to EN 61800-3, Category C2 (TN/TT systems)	L00
Holder for ARC detector	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55
25/125 kW braking unit	L61/L64
50/250 kW braking unit	L62/L65
DC fuses	N52

Mechanical options

Component	Option
Base 100 mm high	M06
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07
IP21 degree of protection	M21
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54
Side panels (right/left)	M26, M27
Closed cabinet door	M59
Additional shock protection	M60
DC busbar	M80 M87
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90

5.2.5 Technical data

Table 5- 15 Technical data for Basic Line Modules, 3 AC 380 ... 480 V

Order no.	6SL3730-	1TE34- 2AA3	1TE35- 3AA3	1TE38- 2AA3	1TE41- 2AA3	1TE41- 5AA3	1TE41- 8AA3
for parallel connection, - Attached to Line Connection Module on right side - Attached to Line Connection Module on left side					2BA3 2BC3	5BA3 5BC3	8BA3 8BC3
Rated power - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{H DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{N DC} (60 Hz 460 V) - for I _{H DC} (60 Hz 460 V)	kW kW hp hp	200 160 305 275	250 200 380 310	400 315 585 475	560 450 855 695	710 560 1070 870	900 705 1340 1090
DC link current - Rated current I _{N DC} - Base load current I _{H DC} ¹⁾ - Maximum current I _{max DC}	A A A	420 328 630	530 413 795	820 640 1230	1200 936 1800	1500 1170 2250	1880 1467 2820
Input current - Rated current IN E - Maximum current I _{max E}	A A	365 547	460 690	710 1065	1010 1515	1265 1897	1630 2380
Current consumption - Auxiliary supply 24 V DC - 400 V AC ²⁾	A A	1.1 internal					
DC link capacitance - Basic Line Module - Drive line-up, max.	μF μF	7200 57600	9600 76800	14600 116800	23200 185600	29000 232000	34800 139200
Power loss, max. 3) - At 50 Hz 400 V - At 60 Hz 460 V	kW kW	1.9 1.9	2.1 2.1	3.2 3.2	4.6 4.6	5.5 5.5	6.9 6.9
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.36	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	66/68	66/68	66/68	71/73	71/73	71/73
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240					
Cable length, max. 4) - shielded - unshielded	m m	2600 3900	2600 3900	2600 3900	4000 6000	4000 6000	4000 7200
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ⁵⁾ - depth	mm mm mm	400 2200 600	200 2200 2200 2200			0	
Weight (standard version)	kg	166	166	166	(320/440/48	0
Frame size		FB	FB	FB	GB	GB	GD

Order no.	6SL3730-	1TE34- 2AA3	1TE35- 3AA3	1TE38- 2AA3	1TE41- 2AA3	1TE41- 5AA3	1TE41- 8AA3
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	84	100	100
Minimum short-circuit current 6) - For a parallel connection	А	4400	5200	10000	2500 4000	3200 5000	4000 6400

- The base load current $I_{H\ DC}$ is based on a duty cycle of 150 % for 60 s or $I_{max\ DC}$ for 5 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- ²⁾ The power required for the 400 V AC auxiliary supply is provided by the line input voltage.
- 3) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁴⁾ Total of all motor cables and DC link. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request.
- The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.
- 6) Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

Table 5- 16 Technical data for Basic Line Modules, 3 AC 500 ... 690 V

Order no.	6SL3730-	1TG33- 0AA3	1TG34- 3AA3	1TG36- 8AA3	1TG41- 1AA3	1TG41- 4AA3	1TG41- 8AA3
for parallel connection, - Attached to Line Connection Module on right side - Attached to Line Connection Module on left side					2BA3 2BC3	4BA3 4BC3	8BA3 8BC3
Rated power - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 690 V) - for I _{H DC} (50 Hz 690 V) - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 500 V) - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 500 V) - for I _{N DC} (60 Hz 575 V) - for I _{H DC} (60 Hz 575 V)	kW kW kW kW hp	250 195 175 165 250 200	355 280 250 235 350 300	560 440 390 365 600 450	900 710 635 595 900 800	1100 910 810 755 1250 1000	1500 1220 1085 1015 1500 1250
DC link current - Rated current I _{N DC} - Base load current I _{H DC} ¹⁾ - Maximum current I _{max DC}	A A A	300 234 450	430 335 645	680 530 1020	1100 858 1650	1400 1092 2100	1880 1467 2820
Input current - Rated current I _{N E} - Maximum current I _{max E}	A A	260 390	375 563	575 863	925 1388	1180 1770	1580 2370
Current consumption - Auxiliary supply 24 V DC - 500/690 V AC ²⁾	A A				.1 rnal		
DC link capacitance - Basic Line Module - Drive line-up, max.	μF μF	3200 25600	4800 38400	7300 58400	11600 92800	15470 123760	19500 78000
Power loss, max. ³⁾ - At 50 Hz 690 V - At 60 Hz 575 V	kW kW	1.5 1.5	2.1 2.1	3.0 3.0	5.4 5.4	5.8 5.8	7.3 7.3
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.36	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	66/68	66/68	66/68	71/73	71/73	71/73
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240					
Cable length, max. 4) - shielded - unshielded	m m	1500 2250	1500 2250	1500 2250	2250 3375	2250 3375	2250 3375
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ⁵⁾ - depth	mm mm mm	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400/600/600 2200 600		
Weight (standard version)	kg	166	166	166	3	320/440/48	0
Frame size		FB	FB	FB	GB	GB	GD

Order no.	6SL3730-	1TG33- 0AA3	1TG34- 3AA3	1TG36- 8AA3	1TG41- 1AA3	1TG41- 4AA3	1TG41- 8AA3
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	84	100	100	100
Minimum short-circuit current 6) - For a parallel connection	А	3000	4400	8000	2000 4000	2500 5000	3200 6400

- The base load current $I_{H\ DC}$ is based on a duty cycle of 150 % for 60 s or $I_{max\ DC}$ for 5 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- ²⁾ The power required for the 500/690 V AC auxiliary supply is provided by the supply input voltage.
- 3) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁴⁾ Total of all motor cables and DC link. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request.
- The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.
- 6) Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

5.3 Smart Line Modules

5.3.1 General information



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

5.3.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) and circuit diagrams (SP) provided on the customer DVD supplied with the device for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

Smart Line Modules are infeed/regenerative feedback units. Like the Basic Line Module, they supply energy to the connected Motor Modules, but unlike the Basic Line Module, they can feed back regenerative energy. The infeed occurs over a diode jumper, while stable, line-commutated regenerative feedback takes place via IGBTs with 100% continuous energy regeneration.

Under full load, the DC link voltage is higher than the rms value of the rated line voltage by a factor of 1.30, and under partial load by a factor of 1.32.

Smart Line Modules are suitable for connection to supply systems grounded at the neutral point (TN, TT) and non-grounded (IT) supply systems. The following voltages and power ratings are available:

Line voltage	Rated power
380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	250 800 kW
500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	450 1400 kW

The power rating can be increased by connecting Smart Line Modules in parallel.

Integration

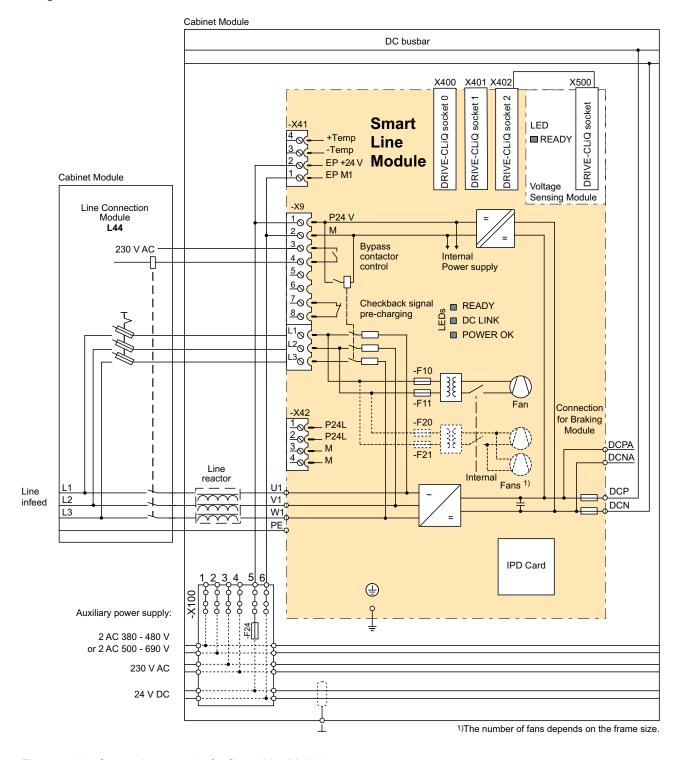


Figure 5-16 Connection example for Smart Line Modules

5.3 Smart Line Modules

Configuration

IGBTs (fundamental frequency-switched) are used as power semiconductors of the Smart Line Modules. Because this reduces switching losses, high current utilization of the power units can be achieved.

The current flows in the direction of the infeed via the freewheeling diodes of the IGBTs. While a diode is conducting, the anti-parallel IGBT is also activated. If the DC link voltage increases due to regenerative operation of the drives, the IGBTs conduct electricity, thus feeding the energy back into the supply system.

Smart Line Modules do not require a line-side filter. A line reactor (4% uk) is included in the standard package. The unit has a built-in pre-charging input circuit for the DC link capacitors. For this purpose, a main contactor or a motor-operated circuit breaker is included in the Line Connection Module on the line side.

It should be noted that the capacity of the pre-charging input circuit for charging the DC link capacitors depends on the unit being used. It is limited to no more than 4 to 7.8 times the value of the DC link capacitance installed in the device.

Note

Additional information

The configuration examples of the individual Smart Line Modules are used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

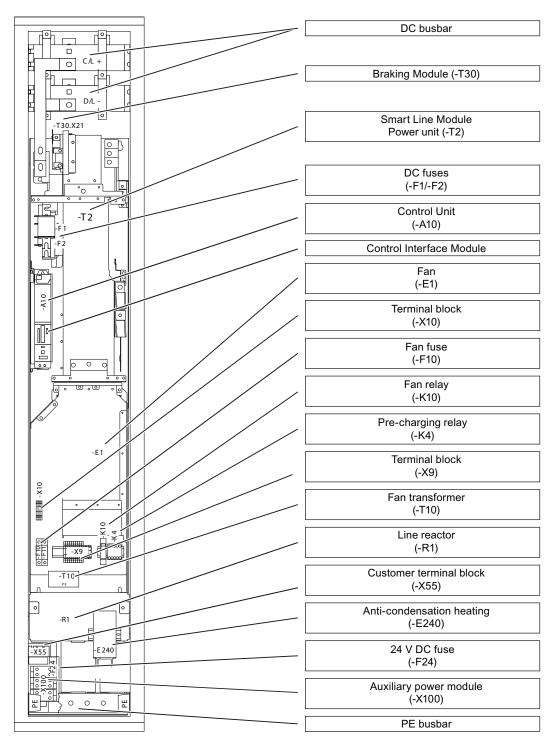


Figure 5-17 Configuration example for Smart Line Modules (frame size GX)

5.3 Smart Line Modules

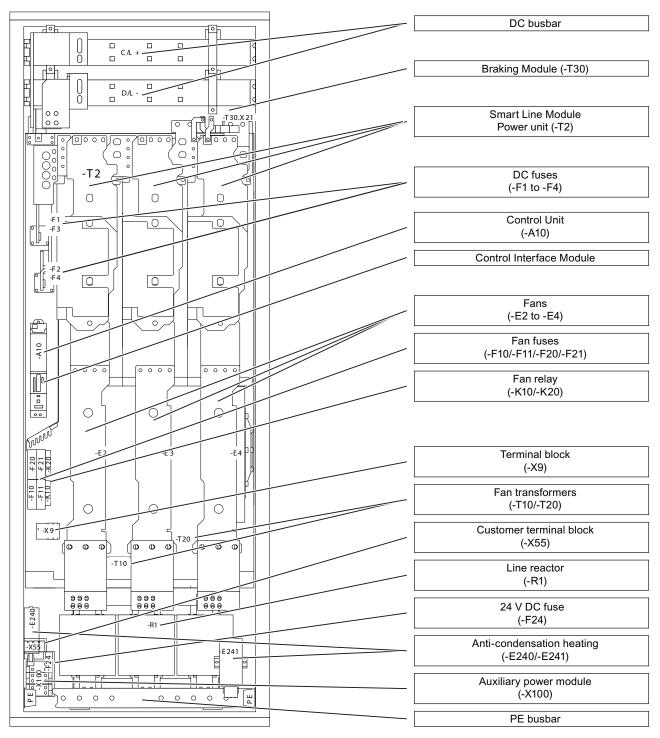


Figure 5-18 Configuration example for Smart Line Modules (frame size JX)

Parallel connection of Smart Line Modules to increase power rating

Up to four Smart Line Modules with the same power rating can be connected in parallel in order to increase power.

Smart Line Modules with "mirror-image" power connections enable the parallel connection of these modules in a compact configuration. Order numbers for devices that are arranged to the left of the Line Connection Module have a "C" in the next-to-last position, example: 6SL3730-6TE41-1BC3.

The following rules must be observed when connecting Smart Line Modules in parallel:

- Up to 4 identical Smart Line Modules can be connected in parallel.
- The parallel connection must be implemented using a Control Unit.
- A 4% reactor is always required upstream of each Smart Line Module for the purpose of current balancing.
- Special Line Connection Modules are available for connecting the modules in parallel.
- With multiple infeeds, power must be supplied to the systems from a common infeed point (i.e. the modules cannot be operated on different supplies).
- A derating factor of 7.5% must be taken into consideration, regardless of the number of modules connected in parallel.

5.3.3 Interface description

5.3.3.1 General information

This chapter describes only those interfaces in the cabinet unit that require additional connection work by the customer. All other interfaces are pre-wired at the factory and are not designed for customer connections.

Note

Additional information

All connections to be established on the plant side as well as the interfaces for integration into the plant control system are described in the circuit diagrams and terminal diagrams on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

5.3.3.2 Control Interface Module

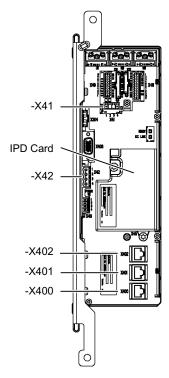


Figure 5-19 Control Interface Module

5.3.3.3 X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection

Table 5- 17 Terminal strip X41 EP terminals / temperature sensor connection

	Terminal	Function	Technical data		
1234	1	EP M1 (Enable Pulses)	Supply voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 28.8 V)		
0000	2	EP +24 V (Enable Pulses)	Current consumption: 10 mA		
الازالازالاز	3 - Temp		Temperature sensor connection:		
	4	+ Temp	KTY84-1C130 / PTC		
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm ²					

Note

Connection at terminals 1 and 2

24 V DC must be present at terminal 2 and ground at terminal 1 for operation. Pulse suppression is activated when removed.



Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp". If safe electrical separation cannot be guaranteed (for linear motors or third-party motors, for example), a Sensor Module External (SME120 or SME125) must be used.

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection: KTY84-1C130 / PTC.

NOTICE

Use shielded cables

The temperature sensor connection must be shielded. The shielding must be attached to the shield support of the module.

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

5.3.3.4 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

Table 5- 18 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

	PIN	Signal name	Technical specifications		
	1	TXP	Transmit data +		
	2	TXN	Transmit data -		
	3	RXP	Receive data +		
	4	Reserved, do not use			
	5	Reserved, do not use			
	6	RXN	Receive data -		
	7	Reserved, do not use			
	8	Reserved, do not use			
	Α	+ (24 V)	24 V power supply		
	В	M (0 V)	Electronics ground		
Blanking plate for DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) order number: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0					

5.3 Smart Line Modules

5.3.4 Options

Note

Additional information

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options

Component	Option
CBC10 Communication Board	G20
CBE20 Communication Board	G33
Contactor monitoring	G56
AOP30 operator panel	K08
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFIBUS	K90
Performance extension for CU320-2	K94
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFINET	K95
Use in the first environment according to EN 61800-3, Category C2 (TN/TT systems)	L00
Without line reactor	L22
Holder for ARC detector	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55
50/250 kW braking unit	L62/L65

Mechanical options

Component	Option		
Base 100 mm high	M06		
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07		
IP21 degree of protection	M21		
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54		
Side panels (right/left)	M26, M27		
Closed cabinet door	M59		
Additional shock protection	M60		
EMC shield bus	M70		
DC busbar	M80 M87		
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90		

5.3.5 Technical data

Table 5- 19 Technical data for Smart Line Modules, 3 AC 380 ... 480 V

Order no.	6SL3730-	6TE35- 5AA3	6TE37- 3AA3	6TE41- 1AA3	6TE41- 3AA3	6TE41- 7AA3	
for parallel connection, - Attached to Line Connection Module on right side - Attached to Line Connection Module on left side				1BA3 1BC3	3BA3 3BC3	7BA3 7BC3	
Rated power - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{H DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{N DC} (60 Hz 460 V) - for I _{H DC} (60 Hz 460 V)	kW	250	355	500	630	800	
	kW	235	315	450	555	730	
	hp	395	545	770	970	1230	
	hp	360	485	695	860	1120	
DC link current - Rated current I _{N DC} - Base load current I _{H DC} ¹⁾ - Maximum current I _{max DC}	A	550	730	1050	1300	1700	
	A	490	650	934	1157	1513	
	A	825	1095	1575	1950	2550	
Input current - Rated current INE - Maximum current I _{max E}	A	463	614	883	1093	1430	
	A	694	921	1324	1639	2145	
Current consumption - Auxiliary supply 24 V DC - 400 V AC ²⁾	A	1.35	1.35	1.4	1.5	1.7	
	A	1.8	1.8	3.6	5.4	5.4	
DC link capacitance - Smart Line Module - Drive line-up, max.	μF	8400	12000	16800	18900	28800	
	μF	42000	60000	67200	75600	115200	
Power loss, max. 3) - At 50 Hz 400 V - At 60 Hz 460 V	kW	3.7	4.7	7.1	11.0	11.5	
	kW	3.7	4.7	7.1	11.0	11.5	
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.36	0.36	0.78	1.08	1.08	
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	70/73	70/73	70/73	
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240					
Cable length, max. 4) - shielded - unshielded	m	4000	4000	4800	4800	4800	
	m	6000	6000	7200	7200	7200	
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ⁵⁾ - depth	mm	400	400	600	800	800	
	mm	2200	2200	2200	2200	2200	
	mm	600	600	600	600	600	
Weight (standard version)	kg	270	270	490	775	775	
Frame size		GX	GX	HX	JX	JX	

5.3 Smart Line Modules

Order no.	6SL3730-	6TE35- 5AA3	6TE37- 3AA3	6TE41- 1AA3	6TE41- 3AA3	6TE41- 7AA3
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	84	84	100
Minimum short-circuit current 6)	Α	6200	9200	2000	2500	3200

- The base load current I_{H DC} is based on a duty cycle of 150 % for 60 s or I_{max DC} for 5 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- ²⁾ The power required for the 400 V AC auxiliary supply is provided by the line input voltage.
- 3) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁴⁾ Total of all motor cables and DC link. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.
- 6) Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

Table 5- 20 Technical data for Smart Line Modules, 3 AC 500 ... 690 V

Order no.	6SL3730-	6TG35- 5AA3	6TG38- 8AA3	6TG41- 2AA3	6TG41- 7AA3		
for parallel connection, - Attached to Line Connection Module on right side - Attached to Line Connection Module on left side			8BA3 8BC3	2BA3 2BC3	7BA3 7BC3		
Rated power - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 690 V) - for I _{H DC} (50 Hz 690 V) - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 500 V) - for I _{H DC} (50 Hz 500 V) - for I _{N DC} (60 Hz 575 V) - for I _{H DC} (60 Hz 575 V)	kW kW kW kW hp	450 405 320 295 500 450	710 665 525 480 790 740	1000 885 705 640 1115 990	1400 1255 995 910 1465 1400		
DC link current - Rated current I _{N DC} - Base load current I _{H DC} ¹⁾ - Maximum current I _{max DC}	A A A	550 490 825	900 800 1350	1200 1068 1800	1700 1513 2550		
Input current - Rated current I _{N E} - Maximum current I _{max E}	A A	463 694	757 1135	1009 1513	1430 2145		
Current consumption - Auxiliary supply 24 V DC - 500/690 V AC ²⁾	A A	1.35 1.4/1.0	1.4 2.9/2.1	1.5 4.3/3.1	1.7 4.3/3.1		
DC link capacitance - Smart Line Module - Drive line-up, max.	μF μF	5600 28000	7400 29600	11100 44400	14400 57600		
Power loss, max. ³⁾ - At 50 Hz 690 V - At 60 Hz 575 V	kW kW	4.3 4.3	6.5 6.5	12 12	13.8 13.8		
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.36	0.78	1.08	1.08		
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	dB(A) mm² mm²	69//3	9/73 70/73 70/73 70/73 PE busbar 600 240				
Cable length, max. 4) - shielded - unshielded	m m	2250 3375	2750 4125	2750 4125	2750 4125		
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20		
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ⁵⁾ - depth	mm mm mm	400 2200 600	600 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600		
Weight (standard version)	kg	340	550	795	795		
Frame size		GX	HX	JX	JX		

5.3 Smart Line Modules

Order no.	6SL3730-	6TG35- 5AA3	6TG38- 8AA3	6TG41- 2AA3	6TG41- 7AA3
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	100	100	100
Minimum short-circuit current 6)	Α	6200	10500	2500	3200

- The base load current IHDC is based on a duty cycle of 150 % for 60 s or I_{max DC} for 5 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- ²⁾ The power required for the 500/690 V AC auxiliary supply is provided by the supply input voltage.
- ³⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁴⁾ Total of all motor cables and DC link. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.
- 6) Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

5.4.1 General information



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

5.4.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) and circuit diagrams (SP) provided on the customer DVD supplied with the device for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

Active Line Modules can supply motoring energy and return regenerative energy to the supply system.

Active Line Modules generate a regulated DC voltage that is kept consistent regardless of fluctuations in the line voltage (the line voltage must range within the permissible tolerances).

In the factory setting, the DC voltage is controlled to 1.5 times the rms value of the rated line voltage.

Active Line Modules draw a virtually sinusoidal current from the supply system and cause virtually no line harmonic distortions.

Active Line Modules are suitable for connection to supply systems grounded at the neutral point (TN, TT) and non-grounded (IT) supply systems. The following voltages and power ratings are available:

Line voltage	Rated power
380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	132 900 kW
500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	560 1400 kW

The power rating can be increased by connecting Active Line Modules in parallel.

Integration

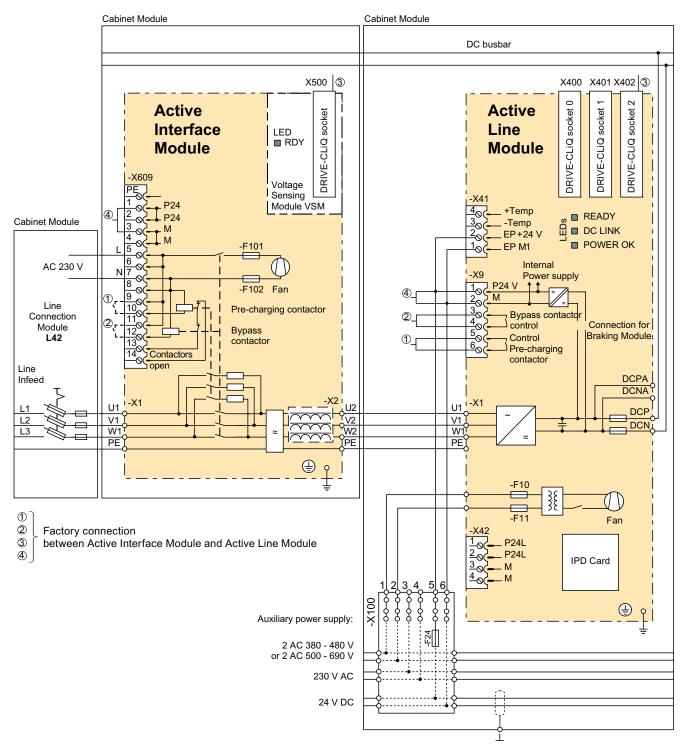


Figure 5-20 Connection example for Active Line Modules (frame size FI/FX and GI/GX)

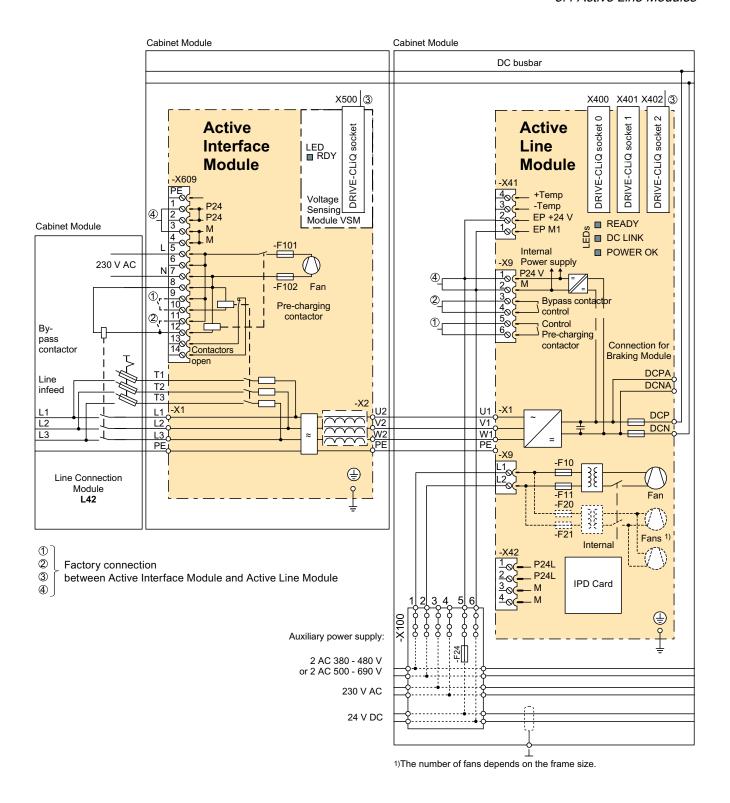


Figure 5-21 Connection example for Active Line Modules (frame size HI/HX and JI/JX)

Configuration

Active Line Modules are always operated together with an Active Interface Module, which contains the associated Clean Power Filter and pre-charging circuit. The included line filter enables compliance with the EMC requirements for the "second environment".

Note

Additional information

The configuration examples of the individual Active Line Modules are used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

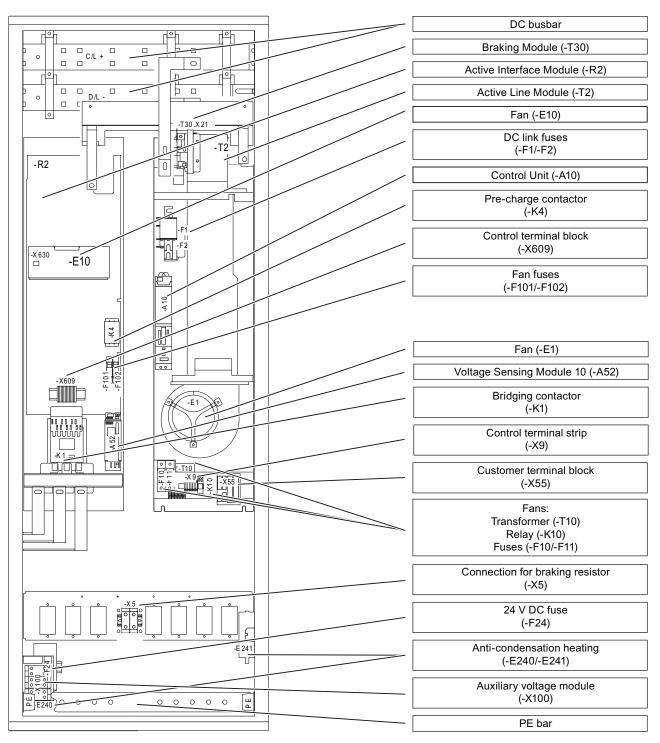


Figure 5-22 Configuration examples for Active Line Modules (frame size FX+FI)

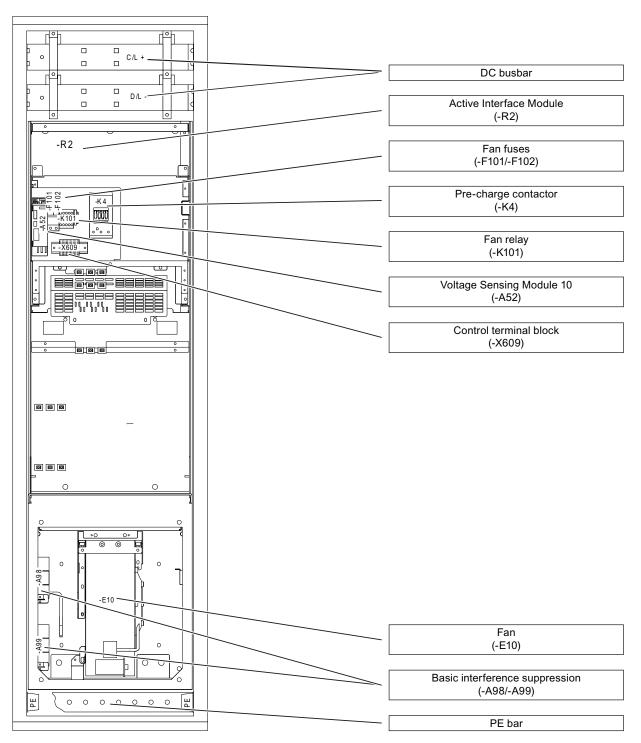


Figure 5-23 Configuration examples for Active Interface Modules (frame size JI)

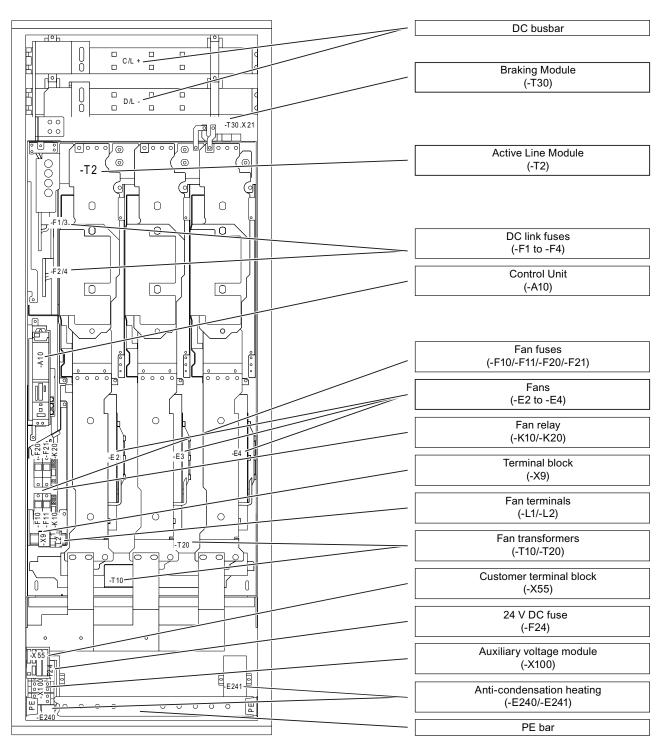


Figure 5-24 Configuration examples for Active Line Modules (frame size JX)

Parallel connection of Active Line Modules to increase power rating

Active Line Modules are available for creating drive line-ups with more power. These modules can be operated in parallel on a common Line Connection Module and are arranged to the right and left of the Line Connection Module. The power connections on the Active Line Module on the left of the Line Connection Module are a mirror image (device order number with C in the next-to-last position, example: 6SL3730-7Tx41x-xBC3a), which produces a very compact design for the supply infeed.

The following rules must be observed when connecting Active Line Modules in parallel:

- Up to 4 identical Active Line Modules can be connected in parallel.
- A common Control Unit is required whenever the modules are connected in parallel.
- Special Line Connection Modules are available for connecting the modules in parallel.
- With multiple infeeds, power must be supplied to the systems from a common infeed point (i.e. the modules cannot be operated on different supplies).
- A derating factor of 5% must be taken into consideration, regardless of the number of modules connected in parallel.

5.4.3 Interface description

5.4.3.1 General information

This chapter describes only those interfaces in the cabinet unit that require additional connection work by the customer. All other interfaces are pre-wired at the factory and are not designed for customer connections.

Note

Additional information

All connections to be established on the plant side as well as the interfaces for integration into the plant control system are described in the circuit diagrams and terminal diagrams on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

5.4.3.2 Control Interface Module

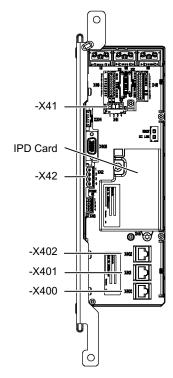


Figure 5-25 Control Interface Module

5.4.3.3 X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection

Table 5- 21 Terminal strip X41 EP terminals / temperature sensor connection

	Terminal	Function	Technical data
1234	1	EP M1 (Enable Pulses)	Supply voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 28.8 V)
2		EP +24 V (Enable Pulses)	Current consumption: 10 mA
3 - Temp 4 + Temp		- Temp	Temperature sensor connection:
		+ Temp	KTY84-1C130 / PTC
Max. connectat	ole cross-section	: 1.5 mm ²	

Note

Connection at terminals 1 and 2

24 V DC must be present at terminal 2 and ground at terminal 1 for operation. Pulse suppression is activated when removed.



Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp". If safe electrical separation cannot be guaranteed (for linear motors or third-party motors, for example), a Sensor Module External (SME120 or SME125) must be used.

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection: KTY84-1C130 / PTC.

NOTICE

Use shielded cables

The temperature sensor connection must be shielded. The shielding must be attached to the shield support of the module.

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

5.4.3.4 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

Table 5- 22 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

	PIN	Signal name	Technical specifications
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
В	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
السلام المسادر	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	Α	+ (24 V)	24 V power supply
	В	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Blanking plate	for DRIV	/E-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) order numbe	r: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0

5.4.4 Options

Note

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options

Component	Option
CBC10 Communication Board	G20
CBE20 Communication Board	G33
Contactor monitoring	G56
AOP30 operator panel	K08
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFIBUS	K90
Performance extension for CU320-2	K94
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFINET	K95
Use in the first environment to EN 61800-3, category C2 (TN/TT line supplies)	L00
Holder for ARC detector	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55
25/125 kW braking unit	L61/L64
50/250 kW braking unit	L62/L65

Mechanical options

Component	Option
Base 100 mm high	M06
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07
IP21 degree of protection	M21
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54
Side panels (right/left)	M26, M27
Closed cabinet door	M59
Additional shock protection	M60
DC busbar	M80 M87
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90

5.4.5 Technical data

Table 5- 23 Technical data for Active Line Modules (including Active Interface Module), 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, part I

Order no.	6SL3730-	7TE32- 1BA3	7TE32- 6BA3	7TE33- 8BA3	7TE35- 0BA3	
for parallel connection,						
- Attached to Line Connection Module on left side				 		
Rated power - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{H DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{N DC} (60 Hz 460 V) - for I _{H DC} (60 Hz 460 V)	kW kW hp	132 115 200 150	160 145 250 200	235 210 400 300	300 270 500 400	
DC link current - Rated current I _{N DC} - Base load current I _{H DC} 1) - Maximum current I _{max DC}	A A A	235 209 352	291 259 436	425 378 637	549 489 823	
Input current - Rated current I _{NE} - Maximum current I _{max E}	A A	210 315	260 390	380 570	490 735	
Current demand - auxiliary supply 24 V DC - 400 V AC at 50 / 60 Hz ²⁾ - 230 V AC ²⁾	A A A	1.27 0.63 / 0.95 0.6	1.27 1.13 / 1.7 0.6	1.52 1.8 / 2.7 1.2	1.52 1.8 / 2.7 1.2	
DC link capacitance - Active Line Module - Drive line-up, max.	μF μF	4200 41600	5200 41600	7800 76800	9600 76800	
Power loss, max. ³⁾ - At 50 Hz 400 V - At 60 Hz 460 V	kW kW	4.3 4.4	4.9 5.1	6.9 7.2	8.7 9.0	
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.47	0.47	0.83	0.83	
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz ⁴⁾	dB(A)	74/76	75/77	76/78	76/78	
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240				
Cable length, max. ⁵⁾ - shielded - unshielded	m m	2700 4050	2700 4050	2700 4050	2700 4050	
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ⁶⁾ - depth	mm mm mm	800 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600	
Weight (standard version)	kg	380	380	530	530	
Frame size		FX + FI	FX + FI	GX + GI	GX + GI	

Order no.	6SL3730-	7TE32- 1BA3	7TE32- 6BA3	7TE33- 8BA3	7TE35- 0BA3
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current 7)	Α	6200	10500	10500	10500

- The base load current $I_{H\,DC}$ is based on a duty cycle of 150 % for 60 s or $I_{max\,DC}$ for 5 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- ²⁾ The power required for the 400 V AC and 230 V AC auxiliary supplies is provided by the line supply input voltage.
- 3) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁴⁾ Total sound pressure level of Active Interface Module and Active Line Module.
- ⁵⁾ Total of all motor cables and DC link. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- ⁶⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.
- 7) Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

Table 5- 24 Technical data for Active Line Modules (including Active Interface Module), 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, part II

Order no.	6SL3730-	7TE36- 1BA3	7TE38- 4BA3	7TE41- 0BA3	7TE41- 4BA3	
for parallel connection,						
- Attached to Line Connection Module on left side				0BC3	4BC3	
Rated power - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{H DC} (50 Hz 400 V) - for I _{N DC} (60 Hz 460 V) - for I _{H DC} (60 Hz 460 V)	kW kW hp	380 335 600 500	500 465 700 700	630 545 900 800	900 780 1250 1000	
DC link current - Rated current I _{N DC} - Base load current I _{H DC} 1) - Maximum current I _{max DC}	A A A	678 603 1017	940 837 1410	1103 982 1654	1574 1401 2361	
Input current - Rated current INE - Maximum current I _{max E}	A A	605 907	840 1260	985 1260	1405 2107	
Current demand - auxiliary supply 24 V DC - 400 V AC at 50 / 60 Hz ²⁾ - 230 V AC ²⁾	A A A	1.57 3.6 / 5.4 4.6	1.57 3.6 / 5.4 4.6	1.67 5.4 / 8.1 4.9	1.67 5.4 / 8.1 4.9	
DC link capacitance - Active Line Module - Drive line-up, max.	μF μF	12600 134400	16800 134400	18900 230400	28800 230400	
Power loss, max. ³⁾ - At 50 Hz 400 V - At 60 Hz 460 V	kW kW	11.7 12.1	13.8 14.3	17.6 18.3	21.8 22.7	
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	1.18	1.18	1.48	1.48	
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz ⁴⁾	dB(A)	78/80	78/80	78/80	78/80	
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240				
Cable length, max. ⁵⁾ - shielded - unshielded	m m	3900 5850	3900 5850	3900 5850	3900 5850	
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ⁶⁾ - depth	mm mm mm	1000 2200 600	1000 2200 600	1400 2200 600	1400 2200 600	
Weight (standard version)	kg	930	930	1360	1360	
Frame size		HX + HI	HX + HI	JX + JI	JX + JI	

Order no.	6SL3730-	7TE36- 1BA3	7TE38- 4BA3	7TE41- 0BA3	7TE41- 4BA3
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	84	84	100
Minimum short-circuit current 7)	Α	12000	2000	4000	6400

- The base load current $I_{H\,DC}$ is based on a duty cycle of 150 % for 60 s or $I_{max\,DC}$ for 5 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- ²⁾ The power required for the 400 V AC and 230 V AC auxiliary supplies is provided by the line supply input voltage.
- 3) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁴⁾ Total sound pressure level of Active Interface Module and Active Line Module.
- ⁵⁾ Total of all motor cables and DC link. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- ⁶⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.
- 7) Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

Table 5- 25 Technical data for Active Line Modules (including Active Interface Module), 3 AC 500 ... 690 V

Order no.	6SL3730-	7TG35- 8BA3	7TG37- 4BA3	7TG41- 0BA3	7TG41- 3BA3
for parallel connection, - Attached to Line Connection Module on left side			4BC3	0BC3	3BC3
			4500	0500	0500
Rated power - for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 690 V)	kW	560	800	1100	1400
- for IHDC (50 Hz 690 V)	kW	550	705	980	1215
- for I _{N DC} (50 Hz 500 V)	kW	435	560	780	965
- for IHDC (50 Hz 500 V)	kW	400	510	710	880
- for INDC (60 Hz 575 V)	hp	600	900	1250	1500
- for IHDC (60 Hz 575 V)	hp	450	600	1000	1250
DC link current					
- Rated current I _{N DC}	Α	644	823	1148	1422
- Base load current I _{H DC} 1)	Α	573	732	1022	1266
- Maximum current I _{max DC}	Α	966	1234	1722	2133
Input current					
- Rated current INE	Α	575	735	1025	1270
- Maximum current I _{max E}	Α	862	1102	1537	1905
Current demand					
- auxiliary supply 24 V DC	Α	1.57	1.67	1.87	1.87
- 500 V AC at 50 / 60 Hz ²⁾	Α	3 / 4.5	4.4 / 6.6	4.4 / 6.6	4.4 / 6.6
- 690 V AC at 50 / 60 Hz ²⁾	Α	2.1 / 3.1	3.1 / 4.6	3.1 / 4.6	3.1 / 4.6
- 230 V AC ²⁾	Α	4.6	4.9	4.9	4.9
DC link capacitance					
- Active Line Module	μF	7400	11100	14400	19200
- Drive line-up, max.	μF	59200	153600	153600	153600
Power loss, max. 3)					
- at 50 Hz 500/690 V	kW	13.6	19.2	22.8	26.1
- at 60 Hz 575 V	kW	13.0	18.6	22.1	24.9
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	1.18	1.48	1.48	1.48
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz ⁴⁾	dB(A)	78/80	78/80	78/80	78/80
PE/GND connection			PE I	busbar	
- Busbar cross section	mm ²			600	
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²			240	
Cable length, max. 5)					
- shielded	m	2250	2250	2250	2250
- unshielded	m	3375	3375	3375	3375
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20)					
- width	mm	1000	1400	1400	1400
- height ⁶⁾	mm	2200	2200	2200	2200
- depth	mm	600	600	600	600
Weight (standard version)	kg	930	1360	1360	1360
Frame size		HX + HI	JX + JI	JX + JI	JX + JI

Order no.	6SL3730-	7TG35- 8BA3	7TG37- 4BA3	7TG41- 0BA3	7TG41- 3BA3
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	84	100	100
Minimum short-circuit current 7) - For a parallel connection	A	9000	15000 4000	2500 4000	3200 5000

- The base load current $I_{H\ DC}$ is based on a duty cycle of 150 % for 60 s or $I_{max\ DC}$ for 5 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- ²⁾ The power required for the 500/690 V AC auxiliary supply is provided by the supply input voltage.
- ³⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁴⁾ Total sound pressure level of Active Interface Module and Active Line Module.
- Total of all motor cables and DC link. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.
- 7) Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

5.5.1 General information



/ DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

/ WARNING

Device damage due to mishandling of the fuse switch disconnector!

Do not switch off the fuse switch disconnector under load!

Switching on the fuse switch disconnector again when the DC busbar is live can cause damage to the device. You can only restart the fuse switch disconnector with the option L37 (DC interface)!

5.5.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) and circuit diagrams (SP) provided on the customer DVD supplied with the device for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

Motor Modules are also available in a Booksize Cabinet Kit version for power ratings from 1.6 to 107 kW in voltage class 380 to 480 V (DC link voltage 510 to 720 V).

Single Motor Modules are available for connection of one motor, and Double Motor Modules (in power rating range 1.6 to 9.7 kW) are available for connection of two motors.

Integration

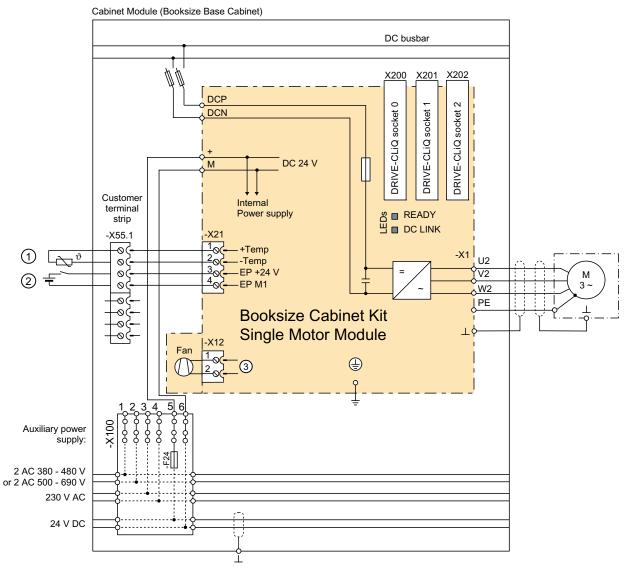


Figure 5-26 Connection example for Single Motor Modules in Booksize Cabinet Kit format

- ① Temperature sensor connection for motors without DRIVE-CLiQ interface
- ② Required for Safety Integrated
- 3 Fan module for rated output currents from 132 A and 200 A

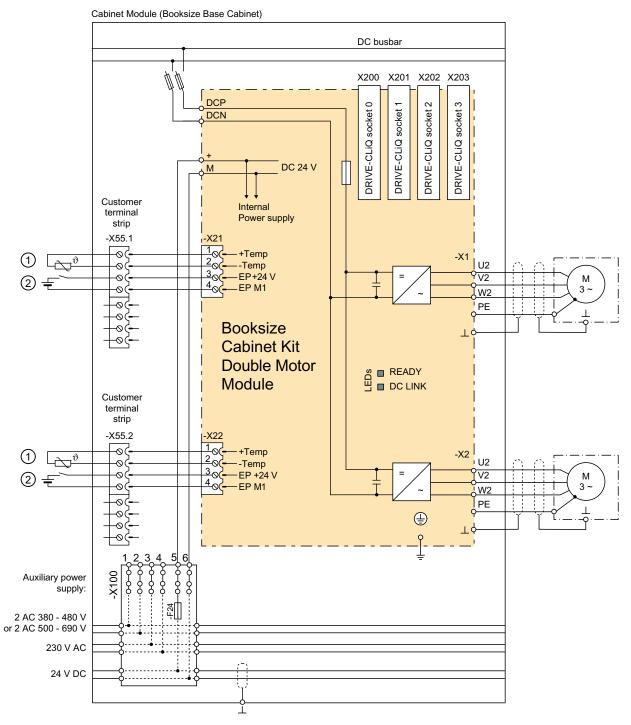


Figure 5-27 Connection example for Double Motor Modules in Booksize Cabinet Kit format

- 1 Temperature sensor connection for motors without a DRIVE-CLiQ interface
- 2 Required for Safety Integrated

Configuration

Motor Modules in booksize format are factory-installed as "Booksize Cabinet Kits" in Booksize Base Cabinets and delivered as a complete unit including cabinet-side connection components.

Several Booksize Cabinet Kits can be installed in one Booksize Base Cabinet, depending on the mounting width requirements, which in turn depend on the power. Each Motor Module is connected separately to the DC busbar of the Cabinet Modules via a separate fuse switch disconnector. The DC link rail integrated in the devices is not used. As a 24 V DC supply buffered by the DC link is not possible for Booksize units, an auxiliary power supply is tapped to provide the 24 V DC required for the Booksize Cabinet Kit. The required 24 V DC supply must be provided by an external source via the auxiliary power supply. With option K73, the 24 V DC supply is provided by a dedicated SITOP device.

Note

Additional information

The configuration examples of the individual Motor Modules are used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

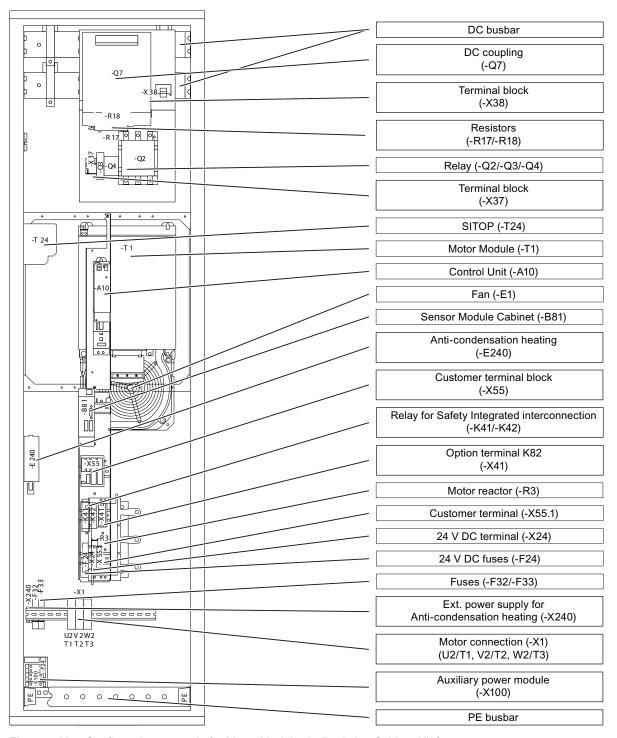


Figure 5-28 Configuration example for Motor Modules in Booksize Cabinet Kit format

Mounting grid arrangement in the cabinet

The area for connecting the Motor Modules in the cabinet is divided into three grid widths:

- 100 mm
- 200 mm
- 300 mm

The table below shows the grid width assigned to the various Motor Modules.

Table 5- 26 The assignment of the Motor Modules according to grid width

Grid width	Assignment of Motor Modules (see the section titled "Technical data")		
100 mm	3 to 30 A Single Motor Modules		
200 mm	45 to 85 A Single Motor Modules, 3 to 18 A Double Motor Modules		
300 mm	132 200 A Single Motor Module		

Note

Available space in the Booksize base cabinets

The space available for the Motor Modules in the Booksize Base Cabinets is determined by taking the actual space and subtracting a clearance of 200 mm.

5.5.3 Interface description

5.5.3.1 General information

This chapter describes only those interfaces in the cabinet unit that require additional connection work by the customer. All other interfaces are pre-wired at the factory and are not designed for customer connections.

Note

Additional information

All connections to be established on the plant side as well as the interfaces for integration into the plant control system are described in the circuit diagrams and terminal diagrams on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

5.5.3.2 Customer terminal block X55.1

Description

The customer terminal block (-X55.1) is mounted as standard in the cabinet for each Booksize Cabinet Kit. It provides the function-related inputs/outputs for temperature monitoring and for the "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" functions.

Note

Additional information

All other cabinet interfaces and connections are explained in the circuit and terminal diagrams on the customer DVD supplied.

X55.1 customer terminal block

Table 5- 27 Customer terminal block -X55.1

Terminal	Designation	Technical data
1	+ Temp	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
2	- Temp	
3	EP +24 V Enable Pulses	Supply voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 28.8 V) Current consumption: 10 mA
4	EP M1 Enable Pulses	Isolated input Signal propagation times: L → H: 100 μs H → L: 1000 μs
		The pulse inhibit function is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.
Max. connecta	able cross-section: 2.5 m	m ²

/!\DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection: KTY84-1C130 / PTC.

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

Note

EP terminals only for Safety Integrated Basic Functions

The function of the EP terminals is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

5.5.4 Options

Note

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options for Booksize Base Cabinets

Component	Option
Holder for ARC detector	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55

Mechanical options for Booksize Base Cabinets

Component	Option
Base 100 mm high	M06
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07
IP21 degree of protection	M21
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54
Side panels (right/left)	M26, M27
Motor reactor terminal connection	M51
Closed cabinet door	M59
EMC shield bus	M70
Version without component support plates and without additional control components	M77
DC busbar	M80 M87
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90

Electrical options for Booksize Cabinet Kits

Component	Option	Note
CBC10 Communication Board	G20	
CBE20 Communication Board	G33	
Safety license for 1 5 axes	K01 K05	
AOP30 operator panel	K08	1 x also for Double Motor Module
SMC 10/20/30 Sensor Modules	K46, K48, K50	2 x for Double Motor Module
Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	K52	2 x for Double Motor Module
Auxiliary power supply 24 V DC	K73	
Terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1"	K82	2 x for Double Motor Module
Terminal Module TM54F	K87	1 x also for Double Motor Module
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFIBUS	K90	1 x also for Double Motor Module
Performance extension for CU320-2	K94	1 x also for Double Motor Module
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFINET	K95	1 x also for Double Motor Module
Motor reactor	L08/L09	2 x for Double Motor Module
DC interface, including pre-charging input circuit	L37	1 x also for Double Motor Module

5.5.5 Technical data

Table 5- 28 Technical data for Booksize Base Cabinet

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TX38-0AA3	1TX41-2AA3
Usable installation width	mm	600	1000
Weight (standard version)	kg	185	270
Dimensions (standard version, IP20)			
- width	mm	800	1200
- height	mm	2200	2200
- depth	mm	600	600

Table 5- 29 Technical data for Motor Modules in Booksize Cabinet Kit format, Single Motor Modules, line voltage 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, DC link voltage 510 ... 720 V DC, part I

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TE13- 0AB3	1TE15- 0AB3	1TE21- 0AB3	1TE21- 8AB3
Unit rating - for I _N (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾ - for I _H (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾ - for I _N (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾ - for I _H (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	kW kW hp	1.6 1.4 1.5	2.7 2.3 3 2	4.8 4.1 5	9.7 8.2 10
Output current - Rated current I _{N A} - Base load current I _H ³⁾ - Maximum current I _{max A}	A A A	3 2.3 6	5 4.3 10	9 7.7 18	18 15.3 36
DC link current I _d ⁴)	Α	3.6	6	11	22
Current consumption - 24 V DC, max.	A	0.85	0.85	0.85	0.85
DC link capacitance	μF	110	110	110	220
Pulse frequency 5 - Rated frequency - Pulse frequency, max. with current derating	kHz kHz	4 16	4 16	4 16	4 16
Power loss, max. ⁶⁾ - At 50 Hz 400 V - At 60 Hz 460 V	kW kW	0.035 0.035	0.055 0.055	0.08 0.08	0.165 0.165
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.008	0.008	0.008	0.008
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	<60	<60	<60	<60
Motor connection U2, V2, W2 - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	Terminal 6			
Cable length, max. 7) - shielded - unshielded	m m	50 75	50 75	50 75	70 100
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240			
Degree of protection		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight, approx.	kg	20.1	20.1	20	20
Mounting width	mm	100	100	100	100
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	65

 $^{^{1)}}$ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_N or I_H at 3-ph. AC 50 Hz 400 V.

 $^{^{2)}}$ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on $I_{N}\,$ or I_{H} at 3-ph. AC 60 Hz 460 V.

³⁾ The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 176 % for 30 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.

⁴⁾ For a DC link voltage of 600 V DC.

⁵⁾ For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS - Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

⁶⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.

Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS -Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Table 5- 30 Technical data for Motor Modules in Booksize Cabinet Kit format, Single Motor Modules, line voltage 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, DC link voltage 510 ... 720 V DC, part II

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TE23- 0AB3	1TE24- 5AB3	1TE26- 0AB3	1TE28- 5AB3	1TE31- 3AB3	1TE32- 0AB3
Unit rating - for I _N (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾ - for I _H (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾ - for I _N (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	kW kW hp	16 13.7 20	24 21 30	32 28 40	46 37 60	71 57 100	107 76 150
- for I _H (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	hp	15	25	40	50	75	100
Output current - Rated current I _{N A} - Base load current I _H ³⁾ - Maximum current I _{max A}	A A A	30 25.5 56	45 38 85	60 52 113	85 65 141	132 105 210	200 141 282
DC link current Id 4)	А	36	54	72	102	158	200
Current consumption - 24 V DC, max.	А	0.9	1.2	1.2	1.5	1.5	1.5
DC link capacitance	μF	710	1175	1410	1880	2820	3995
Pulse frequency 5 - Rated frequency - Pulse frequency, max. with current derating	kHz kHz	4 16	4 16	4	4	4	4 16
Power loss, max. ⁶⁾ - At 50 Hz 400 V - At 60 Hz 460 V	kW kW	0.29 0.29	0.43 0.43	0.59 0.59	0.75 0.75	1.25 1.25	2.05 2.05
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.016	0.031	0.031	0.044	0.144	0.144
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	<60	<60	<60	<60	<60	<60
Motor connection U2, V2, W2				Terr	ninal		
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	6	16	16	35	70	95
Cable length, max. 7) - shielded - unshielded	m m	100 150	100 150	100 150	100 150	100 150	100 150
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²			6	usbar 00 40		
Degree of protection		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight, approx.	kg	21.9	27	27	33	41	41
Mounting width	mm	100	200	200	200	300	300
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	65	65	65

 $^{^{1)}}$ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_N or I_H at 3-ph. AC 50 Hz 400 V.

 $^{^{2)}}$ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_{N} or I_{H} at 3-ph. AC 60 Hz 460 V.

³⁾ The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 176 % for 30 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.

⁴⁾ For a DC link voltage of 600 V DC.

⁵⁾ For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS - Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

⁶⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.

⁷⁾ Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS - Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Table 5- 31 Technical data for Motor Modules in Booksize Cabinet Kit format, Double Motor Modules, line voltage 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, DC link voltage 510 ... 720 V DC

Order no.	6SL3720-	2TE13- 0AB3	2TE15- 0AB3	2TE21- 0AB3	2TE21- 8AB3
Unit rating - for I _N (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾ - for I _H (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾ - for I _N (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	kW kW hp	2 x 1.6 2 x 1.4 2 x 1.5	2 x 2.7 2 x 2.3 2 x 3	2 x 4.8 2 x 4.1 2 x 5	2 x 9.7 2 x 8.2 2 x 10
- for I _H (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾ Output current - Rated current I _{N A}	hp A	2 x 1 2 x 3	2 x 2 2 x 5	2 x 5 2 x 9	2 x 10 2 x 18
- Base load current I _H ³⁾ - Maximum current I _{max A}	A A	2 x 2.6 2 x 6	2 x 4.3 2 x 10	2 x 7.7 2 x 18	2 x 15.3 2 x 36
DC link current I _d ⁴⁾ Current consumption - 24 V DC, max.	A	0.85	0.85	0.85	0.85
DC link capacitance	μF	110	220	220	710
Pulse frequency 5) - Rated frequency - Pulse frequency, max. with current derating	kHz kHz	4 16	4 16	4 16	4 16
Power loss, max. ⁶⁾ - At 50 Hz 400 V - At 60 Hz 460 V	kW kW	0.07 0.07	0.11 0.11	0.16 0.16	0.32 0.32
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.008	0.008	0.008	0.016
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	<60	<60	<60	<60
Motor connection U2, V2, W2 - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm²	Terminal 6			
Cable length, max. 7) - shielded - unshielded	m m	50 75	50 75	50 75	70 100
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240			
Degree of protection		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Weight, approx.	kg	23.3	23.3	23.3	24.8
Mounting width	mm	200	200	200	200
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	65

 $^{^{1)}}$ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_N or I_H at 3-ph. AC 50 Hz 400 V.

 $^{^{2)}}$ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_{N} or I_{H} at 3-ph. AC 60 Hz 460 V.

 $^{^{3)}}$ The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 176 % for 30 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.

⁴⁾ For a DC link voltage of 600 V DC.

For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS - Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

⁶⁾ The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.

Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS -Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

5.5.6 Overload capability

Duty cycle with 30 s and 60 s overload with a duty cycle duration of 300 s

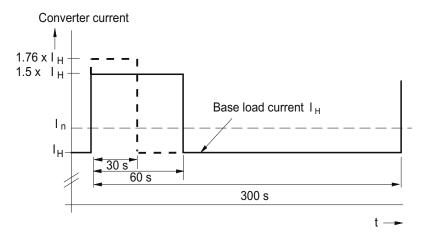


Figure 5-29 Duty cycle with 30 s and 60 s overload with a duty cycle duration of 300 s

5.6 Chassis format Motor Modules

5.6.1 General information



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

5.6.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams and circuit diagrams provided on the customer DVD supplied with the device for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

A Motor Module is a 3-phase inverter (IGBT technology) that supplies energy to the connected motor. Energy is supplied to the Motor Modules via the DC busbar.

Motor Modules in the chassis format are available for the following voltages and power ratings:

Line voltage	DC link voltage	Unit rating
380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	DC 510 750 V	110 800 kW
500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	DC 675 1080 V	75 1200 kW

The available shaft output can be increased by connecting up to 4 Motor Modules in parallel. These modules are operated on one Control Unit and feed one motor.

Note

Parallel connection to a common Control Unit

Note that the Motor Modules connected in parallel are operated on a common Control Unit.

Integration

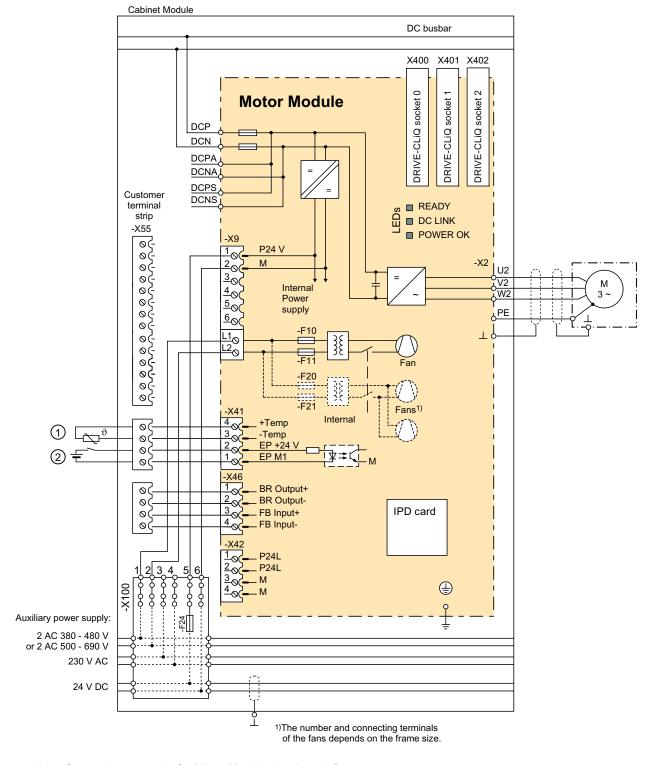


Figure 5-30 Connection example for Motor Modules in chassis format

- ① Temperature sensor connection for motors without a DRIVE-CLiQ interface
- ② Required for Safety Integrated

5.6 Chassis format Motor Modules

Configuration

Motor Modules contain the following components as standard:

- Retaining device for the DC busbar, including the interface to the DC connections of the Motor Module (the necessary DC busbar must be provided separately as option M80 to M87).
- Connection busbar for motor cables for Motor Modules with frame sizes FX and GX; for Motor Modules with frame sizes HX and JX, the motor cables are connected directly to the device.
- Cable propping bar for the electric power cables
- DRIVE-CLiQ interface (3 DRIVE-CLiQ sockets), without Control Unit
- 6-pole auxiliary voltage supply, including auxiliary power module and cables for looping through to the next Cabinet Module.
- PE busbar (60 x 10 mm), including jumper for looping through to the next Cabinet Module.
- EMC-compliant design thanks to additional shielding measures and appropriate laying of cables.

Note

Additional information

The configuration examples of the individual Motor Modules are used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

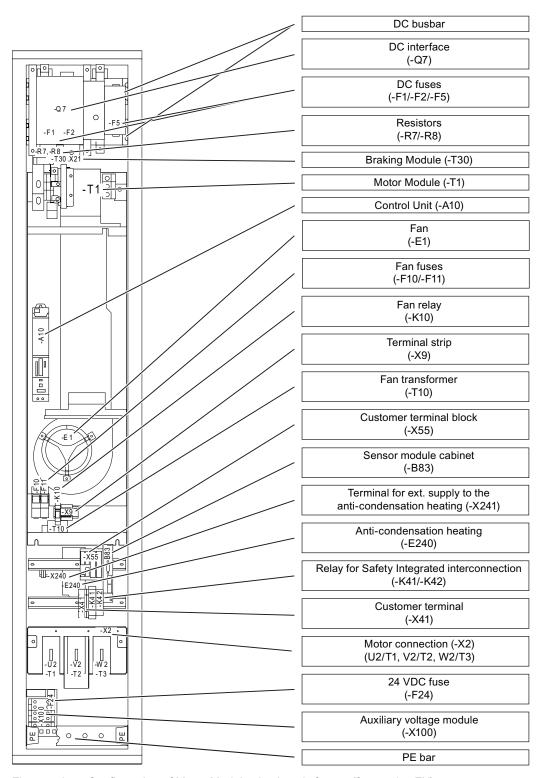


Figure 5-31 Configuration of Motor Modules in chassis format (frame size FX)

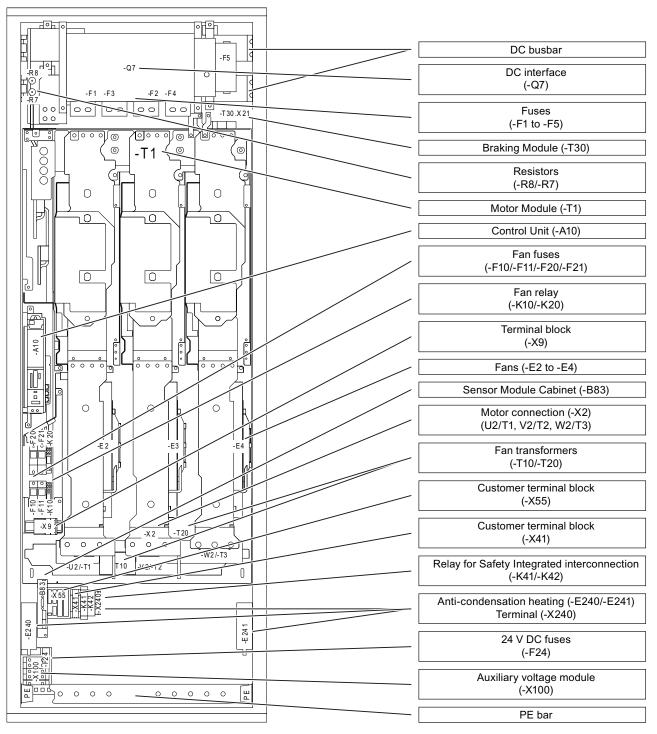


Figure 5-32 Configuration of Motor Modules in chassis format (frame size JX)

Parallel connection of Motor Modules to increase power rating

The following rules must be observed when connecting Motor Modules in parallel:

- Up to 4 identical Motor Modules can be connected in parallel.
- A common Control Unit is required whenever the modules are connected in parallel.
- The motor supply cables must be the same length (symmetrical design).
- Power must be supplied to the Motor Modules from a common DC busbar.
- A derating factor of 5% must be taken into consideration, regardless of the number of modules connected in parallel.
- For motors with a single-winding system, the length of the supply cables must be kept to a minimum. The cables lengths are listed in the following tables.

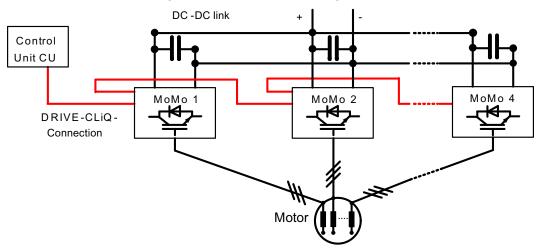


Figure 5-33 Motor with electrically isolated winding systems supplied by a parallel connection of S120 Motor Modules

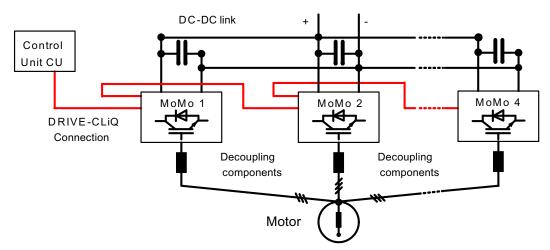


Figure 5-34 Motor with common winding system supplied by a parallel connection of S120 Motor Modules

Note

Mixed operation is not possible

It is only possible to connect identical power units in parallel if both power units have the same hardware version. Mixed operation between a power unit with Control Interface Module and a power unit with Control Interface Board is not possible.

Minimum cable lengths for parallel connection and connection to a motor with a single-winding system

Note

Minimum cable lengths

The minimum cable lengths specified in the table below must be observed when two or more Motor Modules are connected in parallel and there is a connection to a motor with a single-winding system. The motor cables of Motor Modules connected in parallel may only be connected with one another at the motor terminal box.

A motor reactor (option L08) must be used if the required cable length cannot be reached in the application.

Table 5- 32 Motor Modules, 510 ... 750 V DC

Order no.	Frame size	P _{rated} [kW]	Irated rms [A]	Minimum length [m]
6SL3720-1TE32-1AA3	FX	110	210	30
6SL3720-1TE32-6AA3	FX	132	260	27
6SL3720-1TE33-1AA3	GX	160	310	20
6SL3720-1TE33-8AA3	GX	200	380	17
6SL3720-1TE35-0AA3	GX	250	490	15
6SL3720-1TE36-1AA3	HX	315	605	13
6SL3720-1TE37-5AA3	HX	400	745	10
6SL3720-1TE38-4AA3	HX	450	840	9
6SL3720-1TE41-0AA3	JX	560	985	8
6SL3720-1TE41-2AA3	JX	710	1260	6
6SL3720-1TE41-4AA3	JX	800	1405	5

Table 5- 33 Motor Modules, 675 ...1080 V DC

Order no.	Frame size	P _{rated} [kW]	Irated rms [A]	Minimum length [m]
6SL3720-1TG28-5AA3	FX	75	85	100
6SL3720-1TG31-0AA3	FX	90	100	90
6SL3720-1TG31-2AA3	FX	110	120	80
6SL3720-1TG31-5AA3	FX	132	150	70
6SL3720-1TG31-8AA3	GX	160	175	60
6SL3720-1TG32-2AA3	GX	200	215	50
6SL3720-1TG32-6AA3	GX	250	260	40
6SL3720-1TG33-3AA3	GX	315	330	30
6SL3720-1TG34-1AA3	HX	400	410	25
6SL3720-1TG34-7AA3	HX	450	465	25
6SL3720-1TG35-8AA3	HX	560	575	20
6SL3720-1TG37-4AA3	JX	710	735	18
6SL3720-1TG38-1AA3	JX	800	810	15
6SL3720-1TG38-8AA3	JX	900	910	12
6SL3720-1TG41-0AA3	JX	1000	1025	10
6SL3720-1TG41-3AA3	JX	1200	1270	8

5.6.3 X55 customer terminal strip

5.6.3.1 General information

This chapter describes only those interfaces in the cabinet unit that require additional connection work by the customer. All other interfaces are pre-wired at the factory and are not designed for customer connections.

Note

Additional information

All connections to be established on the plant side as well as the interfaces for integration into the plant control system are described in the circuit diagrams and terminal diagrams on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Description

The customer interface -X55 is available in the cabinet irrespective of the CU320-2 Control Unit. Terminal blocks -X41 and -X46 are assigned by default.

With option K90/K95, terminal blocks -X122 and -X132 are also fully assigned. (→ see "Options", section "K90, Control Unit CU320-2 DP" or section "K90, Control Unit CU320-2 PN")

Note

Interfaces -X1, -X2, -X3 and -X4 are wired within the cabinet and are not available for customer connections!

If the customer terminal block is ever replaced, connectors -X1 and -X2 must not be interchanged! Otherwise, the "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" safety functions will malfunction!

5.6.3.2 X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection

Table 5- 34 Terminal strip X41 EP terminals / temperature sensor connection

	Terminal	Function	Technical data			
1234	1	EP M1 (Enable Pulses)	Supply voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 to 28.8 V) Current consumption: 10 mA			
2 EP +24 V (Enable Pulses)			Signal propagation times: L → H: 100 μs; H → L: 1000 μs			
			The pulse inhibit function is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.			
	3	- Temp	Temperature sensor connection for motor temperature measurement:			
4 + Temp			KTY84-1C130, PTC, PT100			
Max. connecta	ble cross-sect	ion: 2.5 mm ²				



Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp". If safe electrical separation cannot be guaranteed (for linear motors or third-party motors, for example), a Sensor Module External (SME120 or SME125) must be used.

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection: KTY84-1C130 / PTC / PT100

NOTICE

Use shielded cables

The temperature sensor connection must be shielded. The shielding must be attached to the shield support of the Motor Module.

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Note

EP terminals only for Safety Integrated Basic Functions

The function of the EP terminals is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.

5.6.3.3 X46 Brake control and monitoring

Table 5- 35 Terminal strip X46 brake control and monitoring

	Terminal	Function	Technical data
1234	1	BR output +	This interface is intended for the connection of the Safe Brake
0000	2	BR output -	Adapter.
الازالازالاز	3	FB input +	
	4	FB input -	
Max. connectat	le cross-section	: 2.5 mm ²	

NOTICE

Cable length

The length of the connecting cable at terminal strip -X46 must not exceed 10 m, and the cable must not be brought out to outside the control cabinet or control cabinet group.

5.6.3.4 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

Table 5- 36 DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces X400, X401, X402

	PIN	Signal name	Technical specifications
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
В	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	Α	+ (24 V)	24 V power supply
	В	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Blanking plate	for DRI\	/E-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) order number	r: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0

5.6.4 Options

Note

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options

Component	Option
CBC10 Communication Board	G20
CBE20 Communication Board	G33
Safety license for 1 to 5 axes	K01 K05
AOP30 operator panel	K08
SMC 10/20/30 Sensor Modules	K46, K48, K50
Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	K52
Terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1"	K82
Terminal Module TM54F	K87
Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC	K88
Safe Brake Adapter SBA 24 V DC	K89
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFIBUS	K90
Performance extension for CU320-2	K94
Control Unit CU320-2 PROFINET	K95
dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter	L07
Motor reactor	L08
dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter	L10
Output-side circuit breaker (motorized)	L34
DC interface, including pre-charging input circuit	L37
Holder for ARC detector	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55
25/125 kW braking unit	L61/L64
50/250 kW braking unit	L62/L65

Mechanical options

Component	Option
Base 100 mm high	M06
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07
IP21 degree of protection	M21
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54
Side panels (right/left)	M26, M27
Closed cabinet door	M59
Additional shock protection	M60
EMC shield bus	M70
DC busbar	M80 M87
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90

5.6.5 Technical data

Table 5- 37 Technical data for Motor Modules in chassis format, line voltage 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, DC link voltage 510 ... 750 V DC, part I

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TE32- 1AA3	1TE32- 6AA3	1TE33- 1AA3	1TE33- 8AA3	1TE35- 0AA3	1TE36- 1AA3
Unit rating							
- for I _L (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾	kW	110	132	160	200	250	315
- for I _H (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾	kW	90	110	132	160	200	250
- for I _L (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	hp	150	200	250	300	400	500
- for I _H (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	hp	150	200	200	250	350	350
Output current							
- Rated current I _{N A}	Α	210	260	310	380	490	605
- Base load current I _L ³⁾	Α	205	250	302	370	477	590
- Base load current I _H ⁴⁾	Α	178	233	277	340	438	460
- Maximum current I _{max A}	Α	307	375	456	555	715	885
DC link current							
- Rated current I _{N DC} when supplied via:							
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	252	312	372	456	588	726
- Active Line Module	Α	227	281	335	411	529	653
- Base load current I _{L DC} ³⁾ when supplied via:							
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	245	304	362	444	573	707
- Active Line Module	Α	221	273	326	400	515	636
- Base load current I _{H DC} ⁴⁾ when supplied via:							
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	224	277	331	405	523	646
- Active Line Module	Α	202	250	298	365	470	581
Supply voltages							
- DC link voltage	V_{DC}			510	. 750 ⁵⁾		
- Electronic power supply	V _{DC}				28.8)		
- Output voltage	V _{ACrms}		0 .	0.72 x D	C link volta	age	
Current consumption							
- Auxiliary supply 24 V DC	Α	0.8	8.0	0.9	0.9	0.9	1.0
- 400 V AC	Α	0.63	1.13	1.8	1.8	1.8	3.6
DC link capacitance	μF	4200	5200	6300	7800	9600	12600
Pulse frequency 6)							
- Rated frequency	kHz	2	2	2	2	2	1.25
- Pulse frequency, max.							
- without current derating	kHz	2	2	2	2	2	1.25
- with current derating	kHz	8	8	8	8	8	7.5
Power loss, max. 7)							
- At 50 Hz 400 V	kW	1.86	2.5	2.96	3.67	4.28	5.84
- At 60 Hz 460 V	kW	1.94	2.65	3.1	3.8	4.5	6.3
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.17	0.23	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67	69	69	69	69	72
Motor connection U2, V2, W2	, ,						
- Screws		2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm²	2 x 185	2 x 185	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240	4 x 240
Cable length, max. 8)							
- shielded	m	300	300	300	300	300	300
- unshielded	m	450	450	450	450	450	450
anomorada		100	.00	.00	.00	.00	.00

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TE32- 1AA3	1TE32- 6AA3	1TE33- 1AA3	1TE33- 8AA3	1TE35- 0AA3	1TE36- 1AA3
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²			6	usbar 00 40		
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - Width ⁹⁾ - Height ¹⁰⁾ - Depth	mm mm mm	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	600 2200 600
Weight, approx. (standard version)	kg	145	145	286	286	286	490
Frame size		FX	FX	GX	GX	GX	HX
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	65	65	65

- 1) Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 50 Hz 400 V.
- ²⁾ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 60 Hz 460 V.
- 3) The base load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 4) The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 5) Including control reserve
- ⁶⁾ For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 7) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁸⁾ Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 9) With option L08 (motor reactor):
 - Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide With option L10 (dv/dt filter plus VPL):
 - Frame size FX/GX/HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide

With option L34 (circuit breaker at output side):

- Frame size FX/GX →Supplementary cabinet 400 mm wide
- Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide.
- ¹⁰⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

Table 5- 38 Technical data for Motor Modules in chassis format, line voltage 3 AC 380 ... 480 V, DC link voltage 510 ... 750 V DC, part II

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TE37- 5AA3	1TE38- 4AA3	1TE41- 0AA3	1TE41- 2AA3	1TE41- 4AA3
Unit rating						
- for I _L (50 Hz 400 V) ¹)	kW	400	450	560	710	800
- for I _H (50 Hz 400 V) ¹⁾	kW	315	400	450	560	710
- for I _L (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	hp	600	700	800	1000	1150
- for Ін (60 Hz 460 V) ²⁾	hp	450	600	700	900	1000
Output current						
- Rated current I _{N A}	Α	745	840	985	1260	1405
- Base load current I _L ³⁾	Α	725	820	960	1230	1370
- Base load current I _H ⁴⁾	Α	570	700	860	1127	1257
- Maximum current I _{max A}	Α	1087	1230	1440	1845	2055
DC link current						
- Rated current I _{N DC} when supplied via:						
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	894	1008	1182	1512	1686
- Active Line Module	Α	805	907	1064	1361	1517
- Base load current I _{L DC³⁾ when supplied via:}						
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	871	982	1152	1474	1643
- Active Line Module	Α	784	884	1037	1326	1479
- Base load current IHDC4) when supplied via:						
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	795	897	1051	1345	1500
- Active Line Module	Α	716	807	946	1211	1350
Supply voltages						
- DC link voltage	V_{DC}			510 750	5)	
- Electronic power supply	V _{DC}		2	24 (20.4 28	3.8)	
- Output voltage	V _{ACrms}			.72 x DC link		
Current consumption						
- Auxiliary supply 24 V DC	Α	1.0	1.0	1.25	1.4	1.4
- 400 V AC	Α	3.6	3.6	5.4	5.4	5.4
DC link capacitance	μF	15600	16800	18900	26100	28800
Pulse frequency 6)						
- Rated frequency	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
- Pulse frequency, max.						
- without current derating	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
- with current derating	kHz	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5
Power loss, max. 7)						
- At 50 Hz 400 V	kW	6.68	7.15	9.5	11.1	12
- At 60 Hz 460 V	kW	7.3	7.8	10.2	12.0	13
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.78	0.78	1.08	1.08	1.08
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72	72	72	72	72
Motor connection U2, V2, W2	\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \				1	
- Screws		2/M12	2/M12	3/M12	3/M12	3/M12
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240
Cable length, max. 8)					1	
- shielded	m	300	300	300	300	300
- unshielded	m	450	450	450	450	450
PE/GND connection	1	1.00	1.00			1.00
- Busbar cross section	mm ²			PE busbar 600		
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²			240		
- Connection Gloss Section, Max. (IEC)	111111-			240		

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TE37- 5AA3	1TE38- 4AA3	1TE41- 0AA3	1TE41- 2AA3	1TE41- 4AA3
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - Width ⁹⁾ - Height ¹⁰⁾ - Depth	mm mm mm	600 2200 600	600 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600
Weight, approx. (standard version)	kg	490	490	700	700	700
Frame size		HX	HX	JX	JX	JX
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	84	84	100	100

- 1) Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 50 Hz 400 V.
- ²⁾ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 60 Hz 460 V.
- 3) The base load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 4) The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 5) Including control reserve
- ⁶⁾ For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 7) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁸⁾ Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 9) With option L08 (motor reactor):
 - Frame size HX/JX \rightarrow Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide
 - With option L10 (dv/dt filter plus VPL):
 - Frame size FX/GX/HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide
 - With option L34 (circuit breaker at output side):
 - Frame size FX/GX →Supplementary cabinet 400 mm wide
 - Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide.
- ¹⁰⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

Table 5- 39 Technical data for Motor Modules in chassis format, line voltage 3 AC 500 ... 690 V, DC link voltage 675 ... 1080 V DC; part I

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TG28- 5AA3	1TG31- 0AA3	1TG31- 2AA3	1TG31- 5AA3	1TG31- 8AA3	1TG32- 2AA3
Unit rating							
- for I _L (50 Hz 690 V) ¹⁾	kW	75	90	110	132	160	200
- for I _H (50 Hz 690 V) 1)	kW	55	75	90	110	132	160
- for I _L (50 Hz 500 V) ¹⁾	kW	55	55	75	90	110	132
- for I _H (50 Hz 500 V) ¹⁾	kW	45	55	75	90	90	110
- for I _L (60 Hz 575 V) ²⁾	hp	75	75	100	150	150	200
- for I _H (60 Hz 575 V) ²⁾	hp	75	75	100	125	150	200
Output current	<u> </u>						
- Rated current IN A	Α	85	100	120	150	175	215
- Base load current I _L ³⁾	A	80	95	115	142	170	208
- Base load current I _H ⁴⁾	A	76	89	107	134	157	192
- Maximum current I _{max A}	A	120	142	172	213	255	312
DC link current	†`	120	1		2.0	200	0.2
- Rated current I _{N DC} when supplied via:							
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	102	120	144	180	210	258
- Active Line Module	Ä	92	108	130	162	189	232
- Base load current I _{L DC} ³⁾ when supplied via:		92	100	130	102	103	232
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	99	117	140	175	204	251
- Active Line Module	Â	89	105	126	157	184	226
	A	09	103	120	137	104	220
- Base load current I _{H DC} ⁴⁾ when supplied via: - Basic/Smart Line Module	_	90	106	100	160	186	229
- Active Line Module	A	81	96	128 115	144	168	206
	A	01	90	115	144	100	200
Supply voltages							
- DC link voltage	V _{DC}				1080 ⁵⁾		
- Electronic power supply	V _{DC}				28.8)		
- Output voltage	V _{ACrms}		0.	0.72 x D	C link volt	age	
Current consumption							
- Auxiliary supply 24 V DC	Α	8.0	8.0	8.0	0.8	0.9	0.9
- 500/690 V AC	Α	0.7/0.4	0.7/0.4	0.7/0.4	0.7/0.4	1.5/1.0	1.5/1.0
DC link capacitance	μF	1200	1200	1600	2800	2800	2800
Pulse frequency 6)							
- Rated frequency	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
- Pulse frequency, max.							
- without current derating	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
- with current derating	kHz	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5
Power loss, max. 7)							
- At 50 Hz 690 V	kW	1.17	1.43	1.89	1.8	2.67	3.09
- At 60 Hz 575 V	kW	1.1	1.3	1.77	1.62	2.5	2.91
Cooling air requirement	m ³ /s	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67	67	67	67	69	69
Motor connection U2, V2, W2	3200	+		1	1		
- Screws		2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	2 x 185	2 x 185	2 x 185	2 x 185	2 x 240	2 x 240
	111111-	Z X 100	Z X 100	Z X 100	Z X 100	2 X 24U	Z X Z4U
Cable length, max. 8)		000					
- shielded	m	300	300	300	300	300	300
- unshielded	m	450	450	450	450	450	450

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TG28- 5AA3	1TG31- 0AA3	1TG31- 2AA3	1TG31- 5AA3	1TG31- 8AA3	1TG32- 2AA3
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²			6	usbar 00 40		
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - Width ⁹⁾ - Height ¹⁰⁾ - Depth	mm mm mm	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600
Weight, approx. (standard version)	kg	145	145	145	145	286	286
Frame size		FX	FX	FX	FX	GX	GX
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	65	65	65

- 1) Rated output of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 50 Hz 500 V or 690 V.
- ²⁾ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 60 Hz 575 V.
- 3) The base load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 4) The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 5) Including control reserve
- ⁶⁾ For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 7) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁸⁾ Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 9) With option L08 (motor reactor):
 - Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide With option L10 (dv/dt filter plus VPL):
 - Frame size FX/GX/HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide

With option L34 (circuit breaker at output side):

- Frame size FX/GX →Supplementary cabinet 400 mm wide
- Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide.
- ¹⁰⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

Table 5- 40 Technical data for Motor Modules in chassis format, line voltage 3 AC 500 ... 690 V, DC link voltage 675 ... 1080 V DC; part II

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TG32- 6AA3	1TG33- 3AA3	1TG34- 1AA3	1TG34- 7AA3	1TG35- 8AA3		
Unit rating								
- for I _L (50 Hz 690 V) ¹)	kW	250	315	400	450	560		
- for I _H (50 Hz 690 V) ¹⁾	kW	200	250	315	400	450		
- for I _L (50 Hz 500 V) 1)	kW	160	200	250	315	400		
- for Iн (50 Hz 500 V) ¹⁾	kW	132	160	200	250	315		
- for I _L (60 Hz 575 V) ²⁾	hp	250	300	400	450	600		
- for I _H (60 Hz 575 V) ²⁾	hp	200	250	350	450	500		
Output current	·							
- Rated current I _{N A}	Α	260	330	410	465	575		
- Base load current I _L ³⁾	A	250	320	400	452	560		
- Base load current I _H ⁴⁾	A	233	280	367	416	514		
- Maximum current I _{max A}	A	375	480	600	678	840		
DC link current								
- Rated current I _{N DC} when supplied via:								
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	312	396	492	558	690		
- Active Line Module	A	281	356	443	502	621		
- Base load current I _{L DC} 3) when supplied via:	' '	201	000	110	002	021		
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	304	386	479	544	672		
- Active Line Module	A	273	347	431	489	605		
- Base load current I _{H DC⁴⁾ when supplied via:}	' '	2,0	017	101	100			
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	277	352	437	496	614		
- Active Line Module	A	250	316	394	446	552		
		200	1010	1001	1110	1002		
Supply voltages - DC link voltage	V _{DC}			675 1080	. 5)			
- Electronic power supply	V _{DC}		24 (20.4 28.8)					
- Difference power supply - Output voltage	VDC			.72 x DC link				
	V ACrms		1 0 0		Voltage			
Current consumption					1			
- Auxiliary supply 24 V DC	A	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.0	1.0		
- 500/690 V AC	Α	1.5/1.0	1.5/1.0	3/2.1	3/2.1	3/2.1		
DC link capacitance	μF	3900	4200	7400	7400	7400		
Pulse frequency 6)								
- Rated frequency	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25		
- Pulse frequency, max.								
- without current derating	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25		
- with current derating	kHz	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5		
Power loss, max. 7)								
- At 50 Hz 690 V	kW	3.62	4.34	6.13	6.8	10.3		
- At 60 Hz 575 V	kW	3.38	3.98	5.71	6.32	9.7		
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	0.36	0.36	0.78	0.78	0.78		
Sound pressure level L _{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	70/73	70/73	70/73		
. , ,	UD(A)	09/13	09/13	70/73	10/13	10/13		
Motor connection U2, V2, W2		0/14/0	0/14/0	0/14/0	0/1440	0/14/0		
- Screws		2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12	2/M12		
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	2 x 240	2 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240		
Cable length, max. 8)								
- shielded	m	300	300	300	300	300		
- unshielded	m	450	450	450	450	450		

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TG32- 6AA3	1TG33- 3AA3	1TG34- 1AA3	1TG34- 7AA3	1TG35- 8AA3
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²			PE busbar 600 240		
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - Width ⁹⁾ - Height ¹⁰⁾ - Depth	mm mm mm	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	600 2200 600	600 2200 600	600 2200 600
Weight, approx. (standard version)	kg	286	286	490	490	490
Frame size		GX	GX	HX	HX	HX
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	84	84

- 1) Rated output of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 50 Hz 500 V or 690 V.
- ²⁾ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 60 Hz 575 V.
- 3) The base load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 4) The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 5) Including control reserve
- ⁶⁾ For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 7) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁸⁾ Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 9) With option L08 (motor reactor):
 - Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide With option L10 (dv/dt filter plus VPL):
 - Frame size FX/GX/HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide

With option L34 (circuit breaker at output side):

- Frame size FX/GX →Supplementary cabinet 400 mm wide
- Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide.
- ¹⁰⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

Table 5- 41 Technical data for Motor Modules in chassis format, line voltage 3 AC 500 ... 690 V, DC link voltage 675 ... 1080 V DC; part III

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TG37- 4AA3	1TG38- 1AA3	1TG38- 8AA3	1TG41- 0AA3	1TG41- 3AA3
Unit rating						
- for I _L (50 Hz 690 V) ¹⁾	kW	710	800	900	1000	1200
- for I _H (50 Hz 690 V) 1)	kW	630	710	800	900	1000
- for I _L (50 Hz 500 V) ¹⁾	kW	500	560	630	710	900
- for I _H (50 Hz 500 V) ¹⁾	kW	450	500	560	630	800
- for I _L (60 Hz 575 V) ²⁾	hp	700	800	900	1000	1250
- for I _H (60 Hz 575 V) ²⁾	hp	700	700	800	900	1000
Output current	1 1	1.00	100		1	1000
- Rated current I _{N A}	Α	735	810	910	1025	1270
- Base load current I _L ³⁾	A	710	790	880	1000	1230
- Base load current I _H ⁴⁾	A	657	724	814	917	1136
		1065		1320	1500	
- Maximum current I _{max A}	A	1005	1185	1320	1500	1845
DC link current						
- Rated current I _{N DC} when supplied via:		000	070	1000	4000	4504
- Basic/Smart Line Module	A	882	972	1092	1230	1524
- Active Line Module	Α	794	875	983	1107	1372
- Base load current I _{L DC³⁾ when supplied via:}			1			
- Basic/Smart Line Module	A	859	947	1064	1199	1485
- Active Line Module	Α	774	853	958	1079	1337
- Base load current I _{H DC} ⁴⁾ when supplied via:						
- Basic/Smart Line Module	Α	784	865	971	1094	1356
- Active Line Module	Α	706	778	874	985	1221
Supply voltages						
- DC link voltage	V _{DC}	675 1080 ⁵⁾				
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 28.8)				
- Output voltage	V _{ACrms}		0 0	.72 x DC link	voltage	
Current consumption						
- Auxiliary supply 24 V DC	Α	1.25	1.25	1.4	1.4	1.4
- 500/690 V AC	Α	4.4/3.1	4.4/3.1	4.4/3.1	4.4/3.1	4.4/3.1
DC link capacitance	μF	11100	11100	14400	14400	19200
Pulse frequency 6)	F	11100			11100	10200
- Rated frequency	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
- Pulse frequency, max.	KI IZ	1.23	1.25	1.23	1.25	1.23
- without current derating	kHz	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
- with current derating	kHz	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5
	KIIZ	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5
Power loss, max. 7)		100	1	1	40.0	1.00
- At 50 Hz 690 V	kW	10.9	11.5	11.7	13.2	16.0
- At 60 Hz 575 V	kW	10	10.5	10.6	12.0	14.2
Cooling air requirement	m³/s	1.08	1.08	1.08	1.08	1.08
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	71/73	71/73	71/73	71/73	71/73
Motor connection U2, V2, W2						
- Screws		3/M12	3/M12	3/M12	3/M12	3/M12
- Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	6 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240
Cable length, max. 8)						
- shielded	m	300	300	300	300	300
- unshielded		450	450	450	450	450
- นาเอาแฮเนฮน	m	400	450	400	450	450

Order no.	6SL3720-	1TG37- 4AA3	1TG38- 1AA3	1TG38- 8AA3	1TG41- 0AA3	1TG41- 3AA3
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²			PE busba 600 240	r	
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - Width ⁹⁾ - Height ¹⁰⁾ - Depth	mm mm mm	800 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600	800 2200 600
Weight, approx. (standard version)	kg	700	700	700	700	700
Frame size		JX	JX	JX	JX	JX
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	100	100	100	100	100

- 1) Rated output of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 50 Hz 500 V or 690 V.
- ²⁾ Rated power of a typ. 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 3 AC 60 Hz 575 V.
- 3) The base load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 4) The base load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s.
- 5) Including control reserve
- ⁶⁾ For the interdependency of pulse frequency and max. output current/output frequency, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 7) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- ⁸⁾ Total of all motor cables. Longer cable lengths for specific configurations are available on request, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.
- 9) With option L08 (motor reactor):
 - Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide With option L10 (dv/dt filter plus VPL):
 - Frame size FX/GX/HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide

With option L34 (circuit breaker at output side):

- Frame size FX/GX →Supplementary cabinet 400 mm wide
- Frame size HX/JX →Supplementary cabinet 600 mm wide.
- ¹⁰⁾ The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

5.6.6 Overload capability

The Motor Modules in the chassis format are equipped with an overload reserve to handle breakaway torques, for example.

In the case of drives with overload requirements, the appropriate base load current must, therefore, be used as a basis for the required load.

For overload, the following precondition applies: The drive is operated with its base load current before and after the overload occurs (a duty cycle duration of 300 s is used as a basis here).

Small overload

The base load current I_{\perp} is based on a duty cycle of 110 % for 60 s or 150 % for 10 s with a duty cycle period of 300 s.

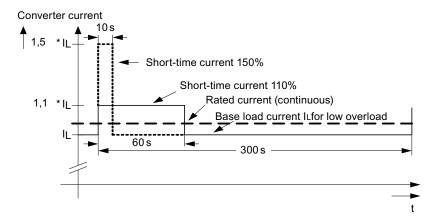


Figure 5-35 Small overload

High overload

The base load current I_H is based on a load cycle of 150 % for 60 s or 160 % for 10 s with a load cycle period of 300 s.

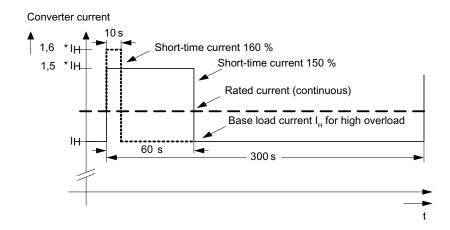


Figure 5-36 High overload

5.7.1 General information



/ DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

5.7.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams and circuit diagrams provided on the enclosed customer DVD for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

Central Braking Modules limit the DC link voltage at a central location in the drive line-up when the motors are operated in regenerative mode and energy recovery to the supply system is not possible. If, in regenerative mode, the voltage of the DC busbar exceeds a limit value, an externally installed braking resistor is switched in, thus restricting the voltage from increasing further. The regenerative energy is converted to heat loss. The braking resistor is switched in by the Braking Module inside the Cabinet Module.

Central Braking Modules are an alternative to the optional Braking Modules (option L61/L62 or L64/L65) and are particularly suitable when high braking power is required in a drive line-up.

Central Braking Modules operate as fully stand-alone modules. They only require a connection to the DC link. An external control voltage is not required.

The capacitor module in the Central Braking Module is an extension of the DC link capacitance for the safe functioning of the Braking Module.

The built-in fan means that Central Braking Modules are also suitable for high continuous power systems.

Braking resistors corresponding to the rated powers are available for the Central Braking Modules.

Braking resistors which are suitable for other applications are available on request.



The fan can start up on its own

The fan is switched on and off by means of a temperature control, which prevents it from running unnecessarily.

The fan can start up on its own!



Dimensioning the braking resistor

The Braking Module incorporated into the Central Braking Module is able to support a higher braking power than standard braking resistors.

The braking resistor is only designed for occasional regenerative operation in accordance with the specified duty cycles.

If the braking resistor does not meet your particular requirements, an appropriate braking resistor must be requested on an order-specific basis.

Central Braking Modules are available for the following voltages and power ratings:

Line voltage	Rated power
380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	500/1000 kW
500 to 600 V AC, 3-phase	550/1100 kW
660 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	630/1200 kW

The braking power can be increased by connecting Central Braking Modules in parallel, refer to Point "Parallel connection of Central Braking Modules" at the end of this section.

Integration

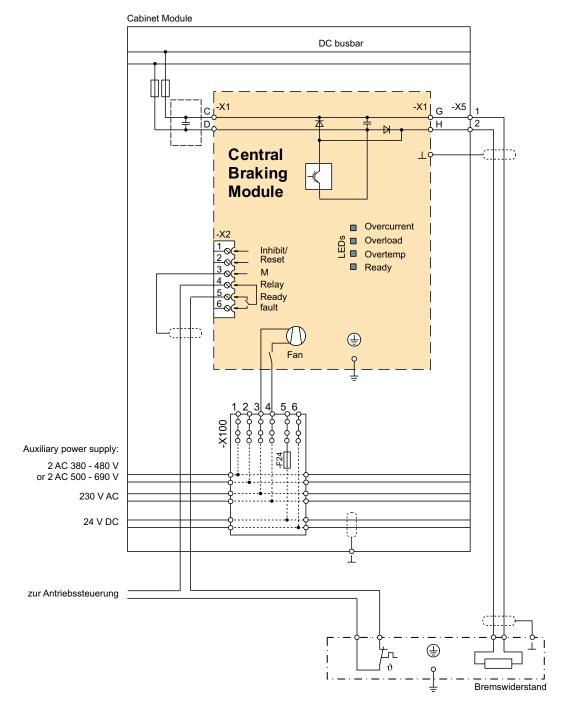


Figure 5-37 Connection example for Central Braking Modules

Configuration

Central Braking Modules are designed in a 400 mm wide Cabinet Module. The Central Braking Modules are connected to the overhead DC busbar using fuses.

The Central Braking Module comprises:

- Braking Module
- Capacitor module
- 230 V AC connection with fuses
- Covers
- Braking resistor connection

Note

Additional information

The configuration example of the Central Braking Module is used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

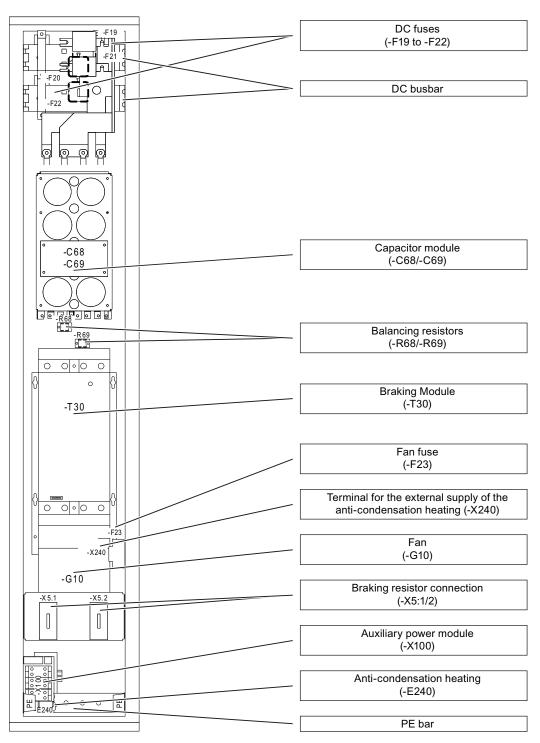


Figure 5-38 Configuration of Central Braking Modules

Parallel connection of Central Braking Modules

To increase the braking power, it is permissible for Central Braking Modules to be connected in parallel under the following conditions:

- Only Central Braking Modules of the same rating may be connected in parallel.
- A separate braking resistor must be connected to each Central Braking Module.
- Asymmetric load distribution (possibly tolerance-related) will result in a drop of 10% in terms of the total braking power provided by the Central Braking Modules that are connected in parallel.
- The maximum number of Central Braking Modules per DC busbar should be limited to four with regard to the power split. Higher numbers are in principle available on request after the boundary conditions have been checked on a case-for-case basis.

5.7.3 Interfaces

Description

The Central Braking Module has the following interfaces:

- · Control terminals (Disable/Reset, Ready, Fault)
- Braking resistor connection
- Reset key
- Threshold switch
- Braking resistor monitoring
- · Switch-on ratio of the braking resistor

Interface overview

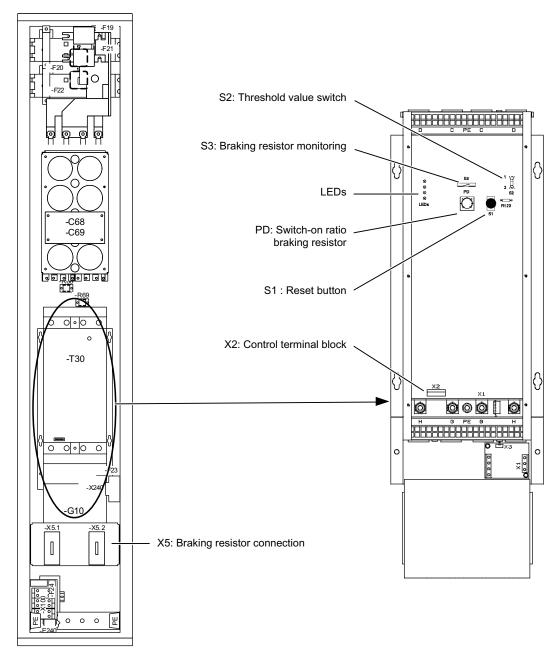


Figure 5-39 Interface overview for the Central Braking Module

X2 control terminals

Table 5- 42 Terminal strip X2 control terminals

	Terminal	Function	Meaning	Technical data	
1 2 3	1 2	DI 24V ground	0 = Normal operation 1 = inhibit, reset	24 V AC/V DC, input load approximately 10 mA (connection not required)	
4	3	Ground	Ground		
5	4	DO.COM 1)	Center contact	Centralized fault indication for:	
	5	DO.NO 1)	0 = Fault 1 = Ready	No DC link voltage, overtemperature, overload, short	
	6	DO.NC ¹⁾	0 = Ready 1 = Fault	circuit/ground fault. Switching capacity: 250 V, 2 A, 250 VA AC voltage	
Max. connecta	ble cross-sec	tion: 2.5 mm ²			

¹⁾ NO: Normally-open contact, NC: Normally-closed contact, COM: Center contact

X5 braking resistor connection

Table 5- 43 Terminal strip X5 braking resistor

Terminal	Function
1	Braking resistor connection
2	Braking resistor connection

S1 reset key

Table 5- 44 Reset key S1

Function	Meaning
Reset key	0 = Normal operation
	1 = Disable, reset

The key performs the same function as control terminal -X2:1/2.

S2 threshold switch

Table 5-45 Threshold switch S2

Item	Function	
1	Upper switching threshold (factory setting)	
2	Lower switching threshold	

The response threshold at which the Braking Module is activated and the resulting activated DC link voltage for braking mode are specified in the following table.

/!\warning

Only actuate the threshold switch when the device is switched off

The threshold switch must only be switched over when the cabinet unit is disconnected from the power supply and the DC link capacitors are discharged.

Table 5-46 Response thresholds of the Braking Module

Rated voltage	Response threshold	Switch position	Comments		
380 480 V	774 V	1	774 V is the default factory setting. With line voltages of between 380 V and		
	673 V	2	400 V, the response threshold can be set to 673 V to reduce the voltage structure on the motor and drive. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (673/774) ² = 0.75.		
			The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 75%.		
500 600 V	967 V	1	967 V is the default factory setting. With a line voltage of 500 V, the respontance threshold can be set to 841 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (841/967) ² = 0.75.		
	841 V	2			
			The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 75%.		
660 690 V	1158 V	1	1158 V is the default factory setting. With a line voltage of 660 V, the respo		
	1070 V	2	threshold can be set to 1070 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (1070/1158) ² = 0.85.		
			The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 85%.		

S3 braking resistor monitoring

Table 5- 47 Braking resistor monitoring S3

Function	Meaning
Braking resistor	0 (open) = Monitoring active
monitoring	1 (closed) = Monitoring disabled

When monitoring is activated, the switch-on ratio (ratio between ON time and OFF time) set for the braking resistor on potentiometer "PD" is evaluated electronically.

If the set switch-on ratio is exceeded, the "MUL - Overload message" LED will be activated and at the same time the centralized fault indication will be triggered at terminal -X2:4/5,6. The fault message can be used by a higher-level controller to ensure timely shutdown, thereby preventing damage to the connected braking resistor.



Monitoring the braking resistor

Monitoring is carried out solely on the basis of the switch-on ratio that has been set on potentiometer PD, which means that the actual temperature of the braking resistor is not monitored.

PD, switch-on ratio of the braking resistor

The braking resistor's switch-on ratio (ratio between ON time and OFF time) is set via potentiometer PD. The setting made is only evaluated when activated via the S3 switch. The adjustable values for the switch-on ratio at potentiometer PD correspond to the graphic below. A value of "40%" is used for the default factory setting.



Figure 5-40 Setting of the switch-on ratio

Brake type	Description	PD setting
P ₁₅	Power that is permissible for 15 s every 600 s	14 % (min.)
P ₁₅₀	Power that is permissible for 150 s every 600 s	23 %
P ₂₇₀	Power that is permissible for 270 s every 600 s	12 %
P _{DB}	Continuous braking power	40 % (max)

5.7.4 Options

Note

Additional information

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options

Component	Option
Holder for ARC detector	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55

Mechanical options

Component	Option
Base 100 mm high	M06
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07
IP21 degree of protection	M21
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54
Side panels (right/left)	M26, M27
Closed cabinet door	M59
DC busbar	M80 M87
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90

5.7.5 Technical data

Table 5- 48 Technical data for Central Braking Modules

Order no.	6SL3700-	1AE35- 0AA3	1AE41- 0AA3	1AF35- 5AA3	1AF41- 1AA3	1AH36- 3AA3	1AH41- 2AA3
Line voltage	V	380 480		500 600		660 690	
Supply voltage	V_{DC}	510 750		675 900		890 1080	
Braking power P ₁₅₀	kW	500	1000	550	1100	630	1200
Continuous braking power PDB	kW	200	370	220	420	240	460
Braking power P ₁₅	kW	730	1380	830	1580	920	1700
Braking power P ₂₇₀	kW	300	580	340	650	380	720
Braking current for P ₁₅₀	А	650	1200	580	1100	520	1000
Braking current for PDB	А	260	480	230	430	210	400
Braking current for P ₁₅	А	950	1800	870	1650	800	1500
Braking current for P ₂₇₀	А	400	750	350	680	330	630
Power demand ¹⁾ 2 AC 230 V	А	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4
Power loss, max. ²⁾ at 50 Hz 400/500/690 V	kW	0.8	1.5	0.8	1.5	0.8	1.5
DC link capacitance	μF	8160	9720	7640	8680	7640	8680
Connectable resistance - for braking power P ₁₅₀ S2:1 S2:2 - for braking power P _{DB} S2:1 S2:2 - for braking power P ₁₅ S2:1 S2:2 - for braking power P ₂₇₀ S2:1 S2:2 - for braking power P ₂₇₀ S2:1 S2:2	Ω Ω Ω Ω Ω	1.2 1.0 3.0 2.6 0.8 0.7 1.9 1.6	0.65 0.56 1.6 1.4 0.43 0.37 1.0	1.65 1.45 4.2 3.65 1.1 1.0 2.7 2.4	0.87 0.77 2.25 2.0 0.58 0.51 1.58 1.2	2.2 2.05 5.5 5.1 1.45 1.35 3.5 3.3	1.15 1.05 2.9 2.7 0.8 0.7 1.8 1.7
Cooling demand	m³/s	0.14	0.14	0.14	0.14	0.14	0.14
Sound pressure level L _{PA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	55	55	55	55	55	55
Braking resistor connection - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm²	M12 2 x 240	M12 2 x 240	M12 2 x 240	M12 2 x 240	M12 2 x 240	M12 2 x 240
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²	PE busbar 600 240					
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height ³⁾ - depth	mm mm mm	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600	400 2200 600
Weight, approx. (standard version)	kg	230	230	230	230	230	230

Order no.	6SL3700-	1AE35- 0AA3	1AE41- 0AA3	1AF35- 5AA3	1AF41- 1AA3	1AH36- 3AA3	1AH41- 2AA3
Frame size	mm	400	400	400	400	400	400
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	65	65	65	65	65	65

- 1) Power demand of fans.
- 2) The specified power loss equals the maximum value at 100 % capacity utilization. The value in normal operation is lower.
- 3) The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP43 and IP54 degrees of protection.

Duty cycle

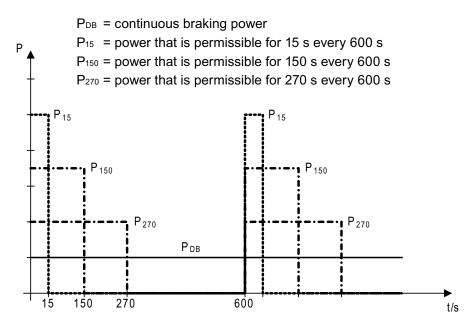


Figure 5-41 Duty cycle of the Central Braking Modules

5.7.6 Derating data

The Central Braking Modules have an integrated temperature monitoring function. A fan included as standard supports the power unit cooling. The fan is switched on and off by means of a temperature control, which prevents it from running unnecessarily. The permissible ambient temperature is from 0 °C to 40 °C. For temperatures between 40 °C and 50 °C, the power must be reduced according to the following formula:

•
$$P = [1 - 0.025 \times (T - 40 ^{\circ}C)] \times P_n$$

The installation altitude above sea level can be up to 2000 m. The power must be reduced for altitudes above 1000 m (derating). In this case, the derating is 1.5 % per 100 m.

5.7.7 Braking resistor

5.7.7.1 Description

The regenerative energy of the drive line-up is dissipated via the braking resistor. The braking resistor is connected to a Braking Module. The braking resistor is positioned outside the cabinet or switchgear room. This enables the resulting heat loss to be dissipated, thereby reducing the amount of air conditioning required.

A thermostat monitors the braking resistor for overheating and, if the limit value is exceeded, it is signaled via a floating contact. The tripping temperature is 120 °C; this corresponds to a surface temperature on the resistor elements of approximately 400 °C.

Only one braking resistor may be connected to a Central Braking Module.

The power of the braking resistors is matched to the rated braking power of the Central Braking Modules; however, operation is restricted to a reduced duty cycle of 15 seconds every 20 minutes.



Connecting-up the thermostat

The thermostat contact must be connected on the plant side so that the signal can be evaluated in the Control Unit or in a higher-level controller; see the section titled "Configuring the overtemperature checkback signal".

5.7.7.2 Safety information





Hot surfaces

The surface temperature of the braking resistors may exceed 80 °C.

NOTICE

Maintain ventilation clearances

A cooling clearance of 200 mm must be maintained on all sides of the component (with ventilation grilles).

/!\WARNING

Risk of fire and damage to equipment due to short-circuit/ground fault

The cables to the braking resistor must be routed so that a ground fault or short circuit can be ruled out. A ground fault can result in fire with the associated smoke.

- Protect the cables from mechanical damage.
- Comply with local installation regulations that enable this fault to be ruled out.

In addition, apply one of the following measures:

- · Use cables with double insulation.
- Maintain adequate clearance, using spacers, for example.
- Route the cables in separate cable ducts or pipes.

Note

Maximum cable length

A maximum cable length of 300 m is permissible between the Central Braking Module and the braking resistor.

Note

Installation notes

Sufficient space must be available for dissipating the energy converted by the braking resistor.

A sufficient distance from flammable objects must be ensured.

The braking resistor must be installed as a free-standing unit.

Objects must not be placed on or anywhere above the braking resistor.

The braking resistor should not be installed underneath fire-detection systems, since these could be triggered by the resulting heat.

For outdoor installation, a hood should be provided to protect the braking resistor from precipitation (in accordance with degree of protection IP21).

5.7.7.3 Duty cycle

The following duty cycle applies only to the braking resistors that are described in this Chapter.

Duty cycle

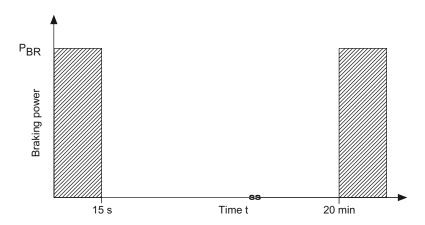


Figure 5-42 Duty cycle for braking resistor

Note

For other duty cycles, the braking resistors must be requested on an order-specific basis.

5.7.7.4 Interfaces on the braking resistor

Power connections on the braking resistor

Table 5- 49 Power connections on the braking resistor

Terminal	Function	
1	Connection to the Central Braking Module: -X5	
2	Connection to the Central Braking Module: -X5	
PE	PE connection	
Max. connectable cross-section: 2 x 240 mm ²		

Cables are always entered from below; a cable propping fixture must be provided by the customer.

X10 thermostatic switch checkback contact

Table 5- 50 Terminal strip X10 thermostatic switch checkback contact

Terminal	Function	
1	Thermostatic switch checkback contact	
2	Normally-closed contact, 250 V AC, max. 1 A	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm ²		

5.7.7.5 Configuring the "Overtemperature" checkback

The checkback contact of the braking resistor thermostatic switch must be wired to a digital input so that the drive is shut down in the event of a malfunction.

- Assumption 1:
 - The thermostatic switch feedback signal contact is wired to digital input 3 (DI3) of CU320-2 (-X122:4)
- Assumption 2:
 - Once the thermostatic switch trips, "External Fault 3" (F7862) is triggered and the drive is shut down with OFF2.
- Setting required: (Drive) p2108 = (CU320-2) 0722.3

Control engineering measures must also be implemented to prevent the drive from starting up again before the braking resistor has had a chance to cool down properly.

5.7 Central Braking Modules

5.7.7.6 Technical data

Table 5- 51 Technical data of the braking resistors

Order no.	6SL3000-	1BE35- 0AA0	1BE41- 0AA0	1BF35- 5AA0	1BF41- 1AA0	1BH36- 3AA0	1BH41- 2AA0
Line voltage	V	380	480	500 .	600	660	690
Supply voltage	V _{DC}	510	720	675 .	900	890	. 1035
Braking power P _{BR} 1)	kW	500	1000	550	1100	630	1200
Continuous braking power PDB	kW	23.8	58.65	34.8	62	42.5	75.6
Resistance value	Ω	0.95	0.49	1.35	0.69	1.8	0.95
I _{max}	Α	766	1518	672	1343	643	1232
Degree of protection		IP21	IP21	IP21	IP21	IP21	IP21
Dimensions - Width - Height - Depth	mm mm mm	960 790 620	960 1430 620	960 1110 620	960 1430 620	960 1110 620	960 1430 620
Weight	kg	82	170	110	180	124	196

¹⁾ Valid for specified duty cycle of 15 s (load) with a duty cycle duration of 20 min.

Table 5- 52 Assignments between braking resistors and dimension drawings below

Braking resistor	Dimension drawing, type				
380 480 V	supply voltage				
6SL3000-1BE35-0AA0	Type 1				
6SL3000-1BE41-0AA0	Type 3				
500 600 V	500 600 V supply voltage				
6SL3000-1BF35-5AA0	Type 2				
6SL3000-1BF41-1AA0	Type 3				
660 690 V supply voltage					
6SL3000-1BH36-3AA0	Type 2				
6SL3000-1BH41-2AA0	Type 3				

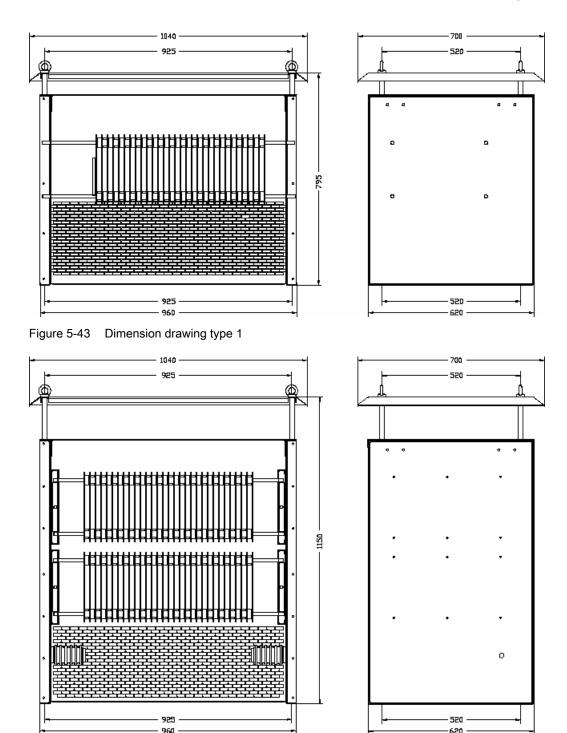


Figure 5-44 Dimension drawing type 2

5.7 Central Braking Modules

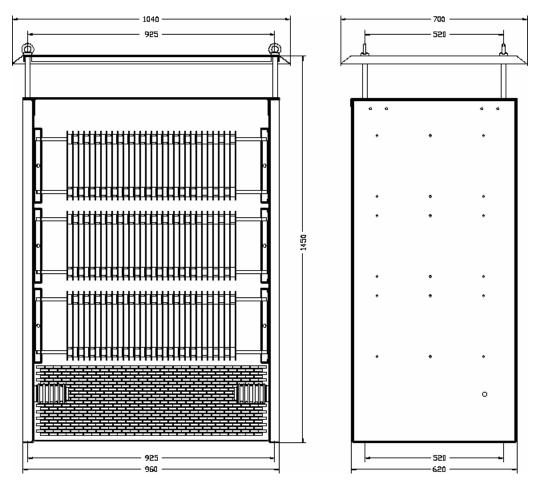


Figure 5-45 Dimension drawing type 3

5.8 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

5.8.1 General information



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Hazardous voltages are present in certain parts of this equipment during operation of the cabinet unit.

Only qualified personnel may work on the cabinet.

Such personnel must be thoroughly familiar with all the warnings and maintenance procedures for the cabinet described in the documentation provided.

The successful and safe operation of this cabinet unit is dependent on correct transport, proper storage and installation, as well as careful operation and maintenance. National safety regulations must be observed.

5.8.2 Description

Note

Additional information

Refer to the layout diagrams and circuit diagrams provided on the enclosed customer DVD for the arrangement of components and interfaces, and for wiring.

Auxiliary Power Supply Modules supply power to the auxiliary power supply system of the SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules as well as to other external loads. The fans of the SINAMICS S120 devices installed in the Cabinet Modules are some of the devices connected to this auxiliary power supply system. In addition, the auxiliary power supply system supplies the electronic modules with an external 24 V DC voltage. This is required when the DC link is not charged, for example, in order to maintain PROFIBUS communication.

The 230 V AC supply can also be fed in externally via an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) and terminal -X46.

5.8 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Note

Supply infeed

The same rated voltage must be fed into the supply infeed of the Auxiliary Power Supply Module as for the connected Cabinet Modules, as the voltage fed into the Auxiliary Power Supply Module supplies the entire system with auxiliary voltage via the auxiliary power supply system.

If a different voltage than that of the connected Cabinet Modules is fed in, there is a risk of an insufficient energy supply to the device fans or too high a voltage, which can cause damage to the system.

Integration

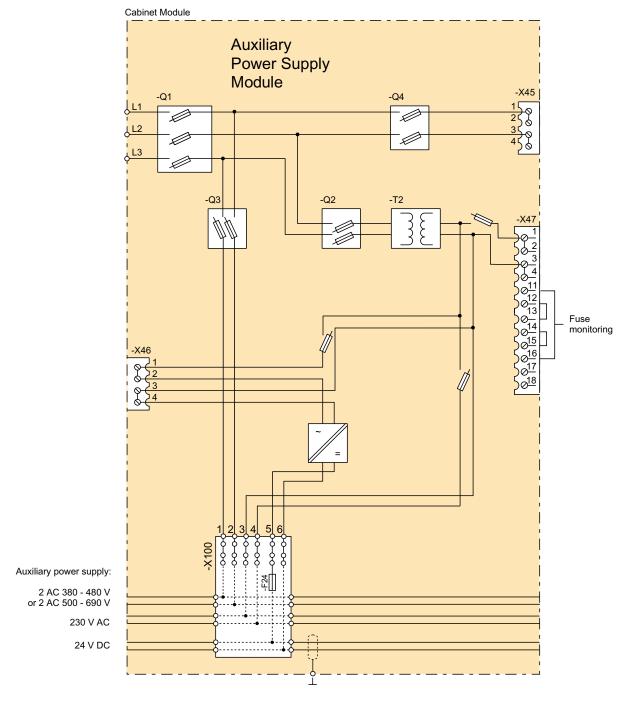


Figure 5-46 Connection example for Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

5.8 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Configuration

The Auxiliary Power Supply Module is connected on the plant side to a voltage corresponding to the respective rated device voltage.

The standard version contains the following components:

- Fuse switch disconnector with fuse monitoring for external evaluation
- Supply of auxiliary power system with 3 auxiliary voltages:
 - 24 V DC for the electronics power supply
 - 230 V 1 ph. AC to supply 230 V AC loads
 - 380 to 690 V 2 AC for supply of device fans (corresponding to the respective rated device voltage)
- Transformer with output voltage 230 V 1 AC
- SITOP power supply 24 V DC
- PE busbar, nickel-plated (60 x 10 mm), including jumper for looping through to the next Cabinet Module.

Note

Additional information

The configuration example of the Auxiliary Power Supply Module is used to illustrate the positioning of the factory-fitted components. They show the maximum possible configuration of the modules, which contain all options that can be ordered.

Refer to the layout diagrams (AO) on the customer DVD for the precise order-specific location of the components.

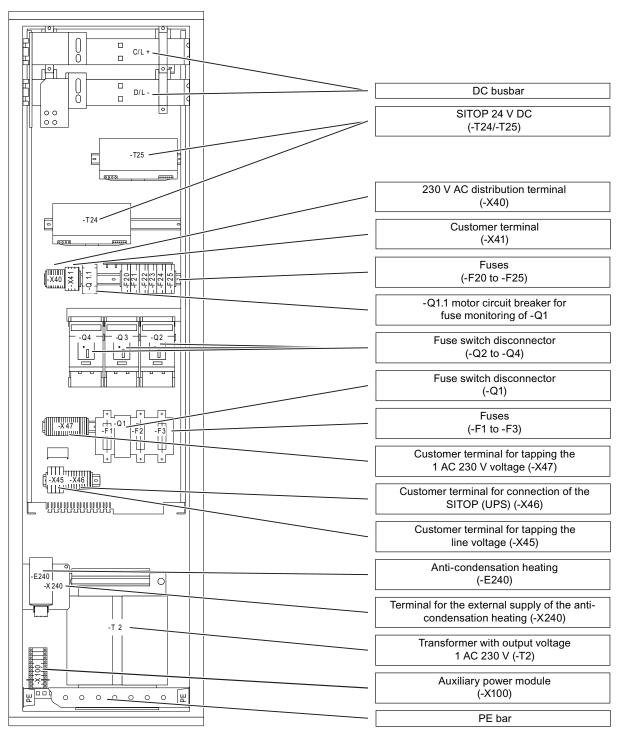


Figure 5-47 Configuration example for Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

5.8.3 Fuse switch disconnector (-Q1)

The customer feeds power to the Auxiliary Power Supply Module on the fuse switch disconnector (-Q1). The plant-side power demand indicated in the table "Technical data" varies according to the version of the Cabinet Module used.

5.8.4 Transformer (-T2) for generating the auxiliary voltage 230 V AC

A transformer is incorporated to generate the 230 V AC, 2-phase voltage. This voltage is made available in order to supply the auxiliary power system and the SITOP power supply.

When delivered, the taps are always set to the highest level. The line-side terminals of the transformer may need to be reconnected to the existing line voltage.

The line voltage assignments for making the appropriate setting on the transformer for the internal power supply are indicated in the following table.

Note

Reconnecting the terminals according to the actual line voltage

The terminals must be reconnected to the actual line voltage so that the 230 V AC, 2-phase voltage required in the system is provided correctly.



Hazardous electrical voltage

Reconnect the terminals only when the cabinet unit is disconnected from the power supply.

Table 5- 53 Assignment of the available line voltage for generating the 230 V AC, 2-phase voltage

Тар	Taps of voltage adaptation transformer (T2) L _A – L _B
380 V	3 – 4
400 V	2 – 4
415 V	1 – 4
440 V	3 – 5
460 V	2 – 5
480 V	1 – 5
500 V	3 – 6
525 V	2 – 6
550 V	1 – 6
575 V	3 – 7
600 V	2 – 7
660 V	3 – 8
690 V	1 – 8

Fuse adaptation (-Q2) for transformer (-T2)

Two LV HRC fuses (-Q2:-F1/-F2) are installed upstream of the transformer (-T2) to protect it.

Fuses rated for a line supply of between 500 V to 690 V are fitted at the factory. For supply voltages in the range from 380 V to 480 V, the customer must replace the fuses on the plant side. The required fuses are supplied as accessories with the Auxiliary Power Supply Module.

NOTICE

Replacing the fuses

If the customer fails to replace the fuses when the system is connected to a supply voltage in the 380 to 480 V range, there is a risk of fuse overloading in the low voltage range (380 V to 480 V) so that the fuses will need to be replaced by new ones.

/!\warning

Hazardous electrical voltage

It is essential to disconnect the unit from the power supply while the fuses are being replaced.

Note

Only replace the fuses using the fuse grip

A fuse grip must always be used to replace the fuses.

If necessary, the fuse grip can be ordered from Siemens.

Table 5- 54 Overview of fuses for the transformer (-T2) in the Auxiliary Power Supply Module

Auxiliary Power Supply Module	0MX14-0AA3	0MX16-3AA3	0MX21-0AA3	0MX21-4AA3	
Order no. 6SL3700-					
LV HRC fuse for voltage range 380 to 480 V 3 AC					
Fuse protection in A	gG 20	gG 25	gG 35	gG 50	
Fuse	3NA3807-6	3NA3810-6	3NA3814-6	3NA3820-6	
LV HRC fuse for voltage range 500 to 690 V 3 AC (fitted at factory)					
Fuse protection in A	gG 16	gG 20	gG 32	gG 40	
Fuse	3NA3805-6	3NA3807-6	3NA3812-6	3NA3817-6	

5.8 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

5.8.5 Auxiliary power supply system

Description

The auxiliary power supply system is used to distribute the available voltages (line voltage for device fans, 230 V AC, 2-phase and 24 V DC). The table below shows an overview of the connected voltages and associated fuses for the auxiliary power supply system in the Auxiliary Power Supply Module. The 24 V DC voltage is provided directly from the SITOP power supply and is not protected separately by a fuse. The 24 V DC power supply itself is current-limited and short-circuit-proof at the output.

Note

The 24 V DC voltage is only available via the auxiliary power supply system.

The assignment of the auxiliary power module is described in the chapter "Electrical installation", section "Connections/auxiliary power supply system".

Table 5- 55 Overview of the fuses for the auxiliary power supply system in the Auxiliary Power Supply Module

Order no. 6SL3700-	0MX14-0AA3	0MX16-3AA3	0MX21-0AA3	0MX21-4AA3	
Fuse protection in A					
380 to 690 V 2 AC (depending on the rated device voltage)	63	80	100	100	
230 V 1 AC	6	10	10	20	
24 V DC	20	40	80	80	

5.8.6 Customer interfaces for supplying power to an additional auxiliary power supply system

This chapter describes only those interfaces in the cabinet that require additional connection work by the customer. All other interfaces are pre-wired at the factory and are not designed for customer connections. The table below provides an overview of the most important technical data of the customer terminals in the cabinet.

Note

Additional information

All connections to be established on the plant side as well as the interfaces for integration into the plant control system are described in the circuit and terminal diagrams on the customer DVD supplied.

Table 5- 56 Overview of customer terminals in the Auxiliary Power Supply Module

Cabinet Module	0MX14-	0MX16-	0MX21-	0MX21-		
Order no. 6SL3700-	0AA3	3AA3	0AA3	4AA3		
Customer terminal -X45 for tapping the line	voltage (380 t	o 480 V 3 AC c	or 500 to 690 V	3 AC)		
Fuse protection in A	50	63	80	80		
Max. connection cross section in mm ²	16	16	16	16		
Customer terminal -X46 for connection of a	Customer terminal -X46 for connection of an uninterruptible power supply for SITOP 1)					
Fuse protection in A 2)	10	20	35	35		
Max. connection cross section in mm ²	6	6	6	6		
Customer terminal -X47 for tapping the 230 V AC, 1-phase voltage						
Fuse protection in A	8	10	10	20		
Max. connection cross section in mm ²	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5		

When an uninterruptible power supply is connected, the jumpers between -X46:1/2 and -X46:5/6 must be removed.

The customer is responsible for providing external fuse protection for the uninterruptible power supply according to the specifications for the 24 V DC power supply used.

5.8 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

5.8.7 Options

Note

Additional information

The individual options are described in the chapter titled "Options".

Electrical options

Component	Option
Holder for ARC detector (arc sensor)	L51
Cabinet anti-condensation heating	L55

Mechanical options

Component	Option
Base 100 mm high	M06
Cable-marshaling compartment 200 mm high	M07
IP21 degree of protection	M21
IP23/IP43/IP54 degree of protection	M23, M43, M54
Side panels (right/left)	M26, M27
Closed cabinet door	M59
EMC shield bus	M70
DC busbar	M80 M87
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	M90

5.8.8 Technical data

Table 5- 57 Technical data for the Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Order no.	6SL3700-	0MX14- 0AA3	0MX16- 3AA3	0MX21- 0AA3	0MX21- 4AA3
Supply voltage on the plant/system side 380 690 V 3 AC	A	125	160	200	250
Line connection - Cable cross section, max. (IEC)	mm ²	150	150	150	150
Current carrying capacity, max. - load feeder connection 380 690 V AC - at the auxiliary power supply system - at customer terminal -X45 - load feeder connection 230 V AC - at the auxiliary power supply system - at customer terminal -X47 - load feeder connection 24 V DC - at the auxiliary power supply system Cable cross section, max.	A A A A	63 50 6 8 20	80 63 10 10	100 80 10 10	100 80 20 20 80
- connection -X45 - connection -X47	mm² mm²	16 2.5	16 2.5	16 2.5	16 2.5
PE/GND connection - Busbar cross section - Connection cross section, max. (IEC)	mm² mm²		60	usbar 00 40	
Cooling air requirement				onvection	1
Degree of protection (standard version)		IP20	IP20	IP20	IP20
Dimensions (standard version, IP20) - width - height 1) - depth	mm mm mm	600 2200 600	600 2200 600	600 2200 600	600 2200 600
Weight, approx. (standard version)	kg	170	180	210	240
Rated short-circuit current acc. to IEC	kA	80	80	80	80
Minimum short-circuit current 2)	Α	3200	4000	5000	7000

The cabinet height increases by 250 mm with IP21 degree of protection, and by 400 mm with IP23, IP24 and IP54 degrees of protection.

²⁾ Current required for reliable tripping of the protective devices.

5.8 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Maintenance and servicing

6.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Maintenance and servicing procedures that have to be carried out on a regular basis to ensure the availability of the components
- Replacing device components when the unit is serviced
- Forming the DC link capacitors



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Before carrying out maintenance or repair work on the de-energized cabinet, wait for 5 minutes after switching off the power supply. This allows the capacitors to discharge to a harmless level (< 25 V) after the line voltage has been switched off.

Before starting work, you should also measure the DC link voltage after the 5 minutes have elapsed. The voltage can be measured on DC link terminals DCP and DCN.

Beware of any residual rotation of the fan.



! DANGER

External supply voltages

When the external power supply (e.g. option L55) or the external 230 V auxiliary infeed or supply infeed is connected, dangerous voltages are still present in the cabinet even when the main breaker is open.

6.2 Cleaning the cabinet

The cabinet comprises mostly electronic components. Apart from the fan(s), therefore, it contains hardly any components that are subject to wear or that require maintenance or servicing. The purpose of maintenance is to preserve the specified condition of the cabinet. Dirt and contamination must be removed regularly and parts subject to wear replaced.

The following points must generally be observed.

Dust deposits

Dust deposits inside the cabinet must be removed at regular intervals (or at least once a year) by qualified personnel in line with the relevant safety regulations. The unit must be cleaned using a brush and vacuum cleaner, along with dry compressed air (max. 1 bar) for areas that cannot be easily reached.

Ventilation

The ventilation openings in the cabinet must never be obstructed. The fan must be checked to make sure that it is functioning correctly.

6.3 Servicing the cabinet

Servicing involves activities and procedures for maintaining and restoring the operating condition of the cabinet.

Required tools

The following tools are required for replacing components:

- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (width across flats 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench
- Screwdriver (size 1/2)
- Screwdriver Torx T20 / T25 / T30

A socket-spanner case with two long extensions is recommended.

Tightening torques for screw connections

The following tightening torques apply when tightening connections of operating current-conducting parts (DC link/motor connections, general busbars), non-operating current-conducting parts (ground connections, ground terminal connections), and general steel threaded connections.

Table 6- 1 Tightening torques for screw connections

Thread	Ground connections, protective conductor connections, steel threaded connections (conducting fault currents)	Plastic, busbars (operating current-conducting)
M3	1.3 Nm	0.8 Nm
M4	3 Nm	1.8 Nm
M5	6 Nm	3 Nm
M6	10 Nm	6 Nm
M8	25 Nm	13 Nm
M10	50 Nm	25 Nm
M12	88 Nm	50 Nm
M16	215 Nm	115 Nm

NOTICE

Screw connections for protective covers

The threaded connections for the protective covers made of Makrolon may only tightened with 2.5 Nm.

Cable and screw terminals

Cable and screw terminals must be checked regularly to ensure that they are securely in position and, if necessary, retightened. Cabling must be checked for defects. Defective parts must be replaced immediately.

Note

Maintenance intervals

The actual intervals at which maintenance procedures are to be performed depend on the installation conditions (cabinet environment) and the operating conditions.

Siemens offers its customers support in the form of a service contract. For further details, contact your regional office or sales office.

6.4 Replacing components

6.4.1 General information

This chapter deals with replacing components that may need to be exchanged when the cabinet units require maintenance or service. Other components are not normally subject to wear and tear and are, therefore, not covered in this chapter.

Note

Additional information

The order numbers for spare parts are listed on the supplied customer DVD in the spare parts list.

6.4.2 Safety information

Required safety precautions to be taken before carrying out maintenance and servicing



Five safety rules

You must read and observe the "Safety information" chapter in this Manual.

When carrying out any kind of work on electrical devices, the following "five safety rules" must always be observed in accordance with EN 50110-1 and EN 50110-2:

- Disconnect from power supply.
- Protect against reconnection.
- Make sure that the equipment is de-energized.
- · Ground and short-circuit.
- Cover or enclose adjacent components that are still live.



Hazards during transport

The following must be taken into account when the devices are transported:

- Some of the devices are heavy or top heavy.
- Due to their weight, the devices must be handled with care by trained personnel.
- Serious injury or even death and substantial material damage can occur if the devices are not lifted or transported properly.



/!\warning

Hazardous electrical voltage

The cabinet units are operated with high voltages.

All connection work must be carried out when the cabinet is de-energized.

All work on the cabinet must be carried out by trained personnel only.

Work on an open cabinet must be carried out with extreme caution because external supply voltages may be present. The power and control terminals may be live even when the motor is not running.

Dangerously high voltage levels are still present inside the cabinet up to 5 minutes after it has been disconnected due to the DC link capacitors. For this reason, the cabinet should not be opened until a reasonable period of time has elapsed.

6.4.3 Installation device for power blocks

Installation device

The installation device is used for installing and removing the power blocks for the Basic Line Modules, Active Line Modules, Smart Line Modules, and Motor Modules in chassis format.

It is used as a mounting aid and is placed in front of and secured to the module. The telescopic rails allow the withdrawable device to be adjusted according to the height at which the power blocks are installed. Once the mechanical and electrical connections have been undone, the power block can be removed from the module, whereby the power block is guided and supported by the guide rails on the withdrawable devices.



Figure 6-1 Mounting aid

Order number for the installation device

The order number for the installation device is 6SL3766-1FA00-0AA0.

6.4.4 Replacing the filter mats

Replacing the filter mats (for IP23/IP43/IP54)

The filter mats must be checked at regular intervals. If the mats are too dirty to allow the air supply to flow normally, they must be replaced.

Note

Replacing the filter mats

If you do not replace dirty filter mats, this can cause a premature thermal shutdown of the drive

Ordering data are available in the spare parts lists.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Allow unimpeded access to the grille area of the doors.

Note

The cabinet must be disconnected from the power supply to prevent the fans from drawing in contaminated external air. If an external power supply for the fans is used, take the coasting-down period of the fan into account or switch off the power supply.

Removing/Installing filter mats from/in the cabinet doors (IP23/IP43/IP54)

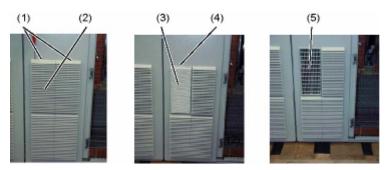


Figure 6-2 Removing/Installing filter mats (IP23/IP43/IP54)

- 1. Insert the screwdriver into the cut-out sections provided (1) and gently push the grille cover (2) down and forwards, then remove it.
- 2. Remove the filter mat (3).
- 3. Clean the ventilation grille (5).
- 4. Insert the new filter mat.
- 5. Replace the grille cover and gently snap it back into position in the cut-out sections.
- 6. Repeat the procedure for all filter mats that need to be replaced.

NOTICE

Correct replacement of filter mats

Make sure that no dirt falls into the cabinet!

The filter mat with degree of protection IP54 must be placed in the correct position (arrow points towards the cabinet).

The filter mat must be placed on the upper guide edge (4).

If you do not do this, the specified degree of protection IP23/IP43/IP54 will not be achieved!

When disposing of old filter mats, observe the applicable legal requirements!

6.4.5 Replacing power units

The components required for connecting the DC busbars to the power unit are supplied as standard. If a components is replaced, you may have to restore these connections. The connection procedure is described in the following section.

Preparatory steps:

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- The cabinet units must be installed and securely mounted
- Allow unimpeded access to the DC busbars (if necessary, remove the protective covers during installation work)

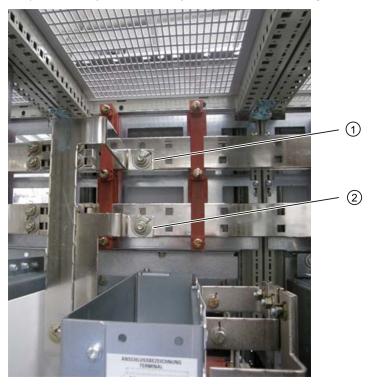


Figure 6-3 Connection to the DC busbar on the Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module and Motor Module in the chassis format

Establishing the connection for booksize format

Note

Make sure that you do not drop any nuts, washers, or screws as this could cause damage.

- 1. Connect the "DC P" connection on the Motor Module to the upper DC busbar (DC P) (1 x M12 screw + nut + washer; torque: 50 Nm).
- 2. Connect the "DC N" connection on the Motor Module to the lower DC busbar (DC N) (1 x M12 screw + nut + washer; torque: 50 Nm).

Establishing the connection for chassis format



Do not use cables

The use of cables instead of the factory-installed busbars is not permitted!

Note

Make sure that you do not drop any nuts, washers, or screws as this could cause damage.

- Connect the "DC P" connection at the Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module or Motor Module to the upper DC busbar (DC P) (1 x M12 screw + nut + washer; torque: 50 Nm).
- Connect the "DC N" connection at the Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module or Motor Module to the lower DC busbar (DC N) (1 x M12 screw + nut + washer; torque: 50 Nm).

6.4.6 Replacing the Motor Module, booksize format

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access.

Removal

- 1. Disconnect the Control Unit and remove from the plate (if present).
- 2. Detach the cable from the plate and put to one side.
- 3. Remove the Control Unit plates.
- 4. Remove the DC link rectifier adapter.
- 5. Remove and insulate the 24 V terminal adapter.
- 6. Remove the DRIVE-CLiQ cables.
- 7. Remove, short-circuit, and insulate the motor cable.
- 8. Unscrew the fastening screws of the Motor Module (two turns only).
- 9. Remove the Motor Module.

Installation

For installation, carry out the above steps for removal in reverse order.

6.4.7 Replacing the power block, chassis format

6.4.7.1 Replacing the power block, frame size FB

Replacing the power block

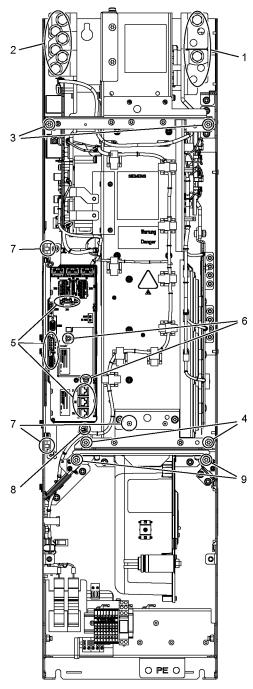


Figure 6-4 Replacing the power block, Basic Line Module, frame size FB

6.4 Replacing components

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Set up the installation device for the power block and keep it at hand (see the section titled "Installation device for power blocks").

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (4 screws).
- 2. Unscrew the connection to the line connection (6 screws).
- 3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (2 screws).
- 4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
- 5. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors). The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 6. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 7. Remove the mounts for the Control Interface Module (1 screw and 2 nuts) and carefully pull out the Control Interface Module.
 - When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).
- 8. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
- 9. Unscrew the 2 retaining screws for the fan and attach the installation device for the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.



Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 65 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip for the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in the chapter "Connecting Cabinet Modules to non-grounded line supplies (IT systems)".

6.4.7.2 Replacing the power block, frame sizes GB and GD

Replacing the power block

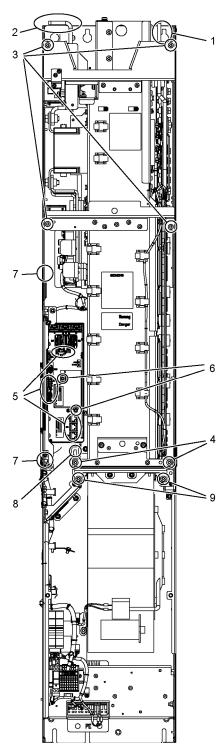


Figure 6-5 Replacing the power block, Basic Line Module, frame sizes GB and GD

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Set up the installation device for the power block and keep it at hand (see the section titled "Installation device for power blocks").

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (6 screws).
- 2. Unscrew the connection to the line connection (9 screws).
- 3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (4 screws).
- 4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
- 5. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors). The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 6. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 7. Remove the mounts for the Control Interface Module (2 nuts) and carefully pull out the Control Interface Module.
 - When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).
- 8. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
- 9. Unscrew the 2 retaining screws for the fan and attach the installation device for the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.



Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 135 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

6.4 Replacing components

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip for the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in the chapter "Connecting Cabinet Modules to non-grounded line supplies (IT systems)".

6.4.7.3 Replacing the power block, frame size FX

Replacing the power block

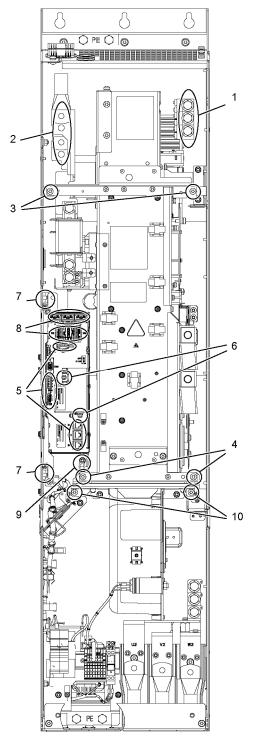


Figure 6-6 Replacing the power block, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size FX

6.4 Replacing components

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Set up the installation device for the power block and keep it at hand (see the section titled "Installation device for power blocks").

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure.

- 1. Unscrew the connection to the line or to the motor (3 screws).
- 2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (4 screws).
- 3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (2 screws).
- 4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
- 5. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors). The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 6. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 7. Remove the mounts for the Control Interface Module (2 nuts) and carefully pull out the Control Interface Module.
 - When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).
- 8. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (5 connectors).
- 9. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
- 10. Unscrew the 2 retaining screws for the fan and attach the installation device for the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.



/!\DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Up to 1200 V may still be present on the DC busbar system even after the DC interface (option L37) has been switched off. For this reason, take particular care to avoid coming into contact with the DC busbar system when replacing a power block!



Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 66 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

The second plug connection for the fiber optic cables cannot be disconnected until the power block has been pulled out slightly (see Step 7).

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

6.4.7.4 Replacing the power block, frame size GX

Replacing the power block

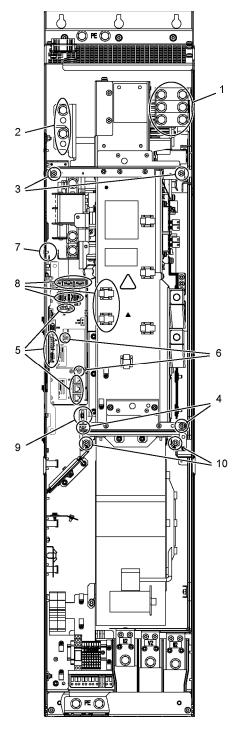


Figure 6-7 Replacing the power block, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size GX

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Set up the installation device for the power block and keep it at hand (see the section titled "Installation device for power blocks").

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure.

- 1. Unscrew the connection to the line or to the motor (3 screws).
- 2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (4 screws).
- 3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (2 screws).
- 4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
- Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors).
 The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 6. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 7. Remove the mount for the Control Interface Module (1 nut) and carefully pull out the Control Interface Module.
 - When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).
- 8. Disconnect the plug connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs) and release the cable connectors for the signal cables (2 connectors).
- 9. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
- 10.Unscrew the 2 retaining screws for the fan and attach the installation device for the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Up to 1200 V may still be present on the DC busbar system even after the DC interface (option L37) has been switched off. For this reason, take particular care to avoid coming into contact with the DC busbar system when replacing a power block!

CAUTION

Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 89 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

The second plug connection for the fiber optic cables cannot be disconnected until the power block has been pulled out slightly (see Step 7).

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

Note

Connection clip for the interference suppression capacitor on the Smart Line Module, frame size GX

The connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in the chapter "Connecting Cabinet Modules to non-grounded line supplies (IT systems)".

6.4.7.5 Replacing the power block, frame size HX

Replacing the power block, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size HX – left power block

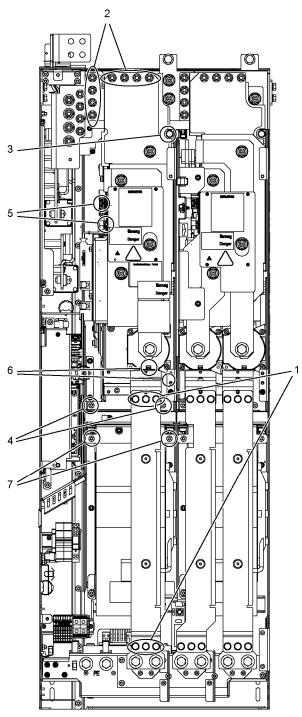


Figure 6-8 Replacing the power block, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size HX – left power block

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Set up the installation device for the power block and keep it at hand (see the section titled "Installation device for power blocks").

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the busbar (6 screws).
- 2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
- 3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
- 4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
- 5. Disconnect the plug connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (2 plugs).
- 6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (1 plug).
- 7. Unscrew the 2 retaining screws for the fan and attach the installation device for the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.



/ DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Up to 1200 V may still be present on the DC busbar system even after the DC interface (option L37) has been switched off. For this reason, take particular care to avoid coming into contact with the DC busbar system when replacing a power block!

⚠ CAUTION

Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 64 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

The second plug connection for the fiber optic cables cannot be disconnected until the power block has been pulled out slightly (see Step 5).

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

Replacing the power block, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size HX - right power block

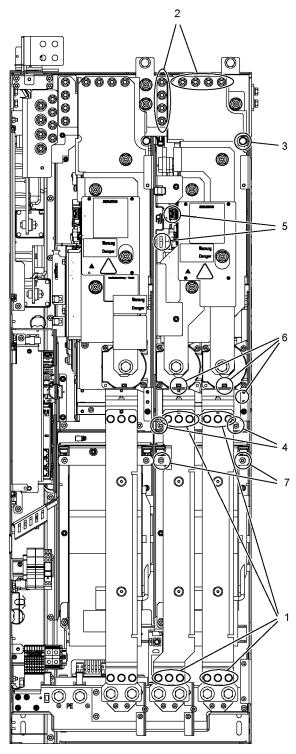


Figure 6-9 Replacing the power block, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size HX - right power block

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Set up the installation device for the power block and keep it at hand (see the section titled "Installation device for power blocks").

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the busbars (12 screws).
- 2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
- 3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
- 4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
- 5. Disconnect the plug connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (2 plugs). The second plug connection for the fiber optic cables cannot be disconnected until the power block has been pulled out slightly.
- 6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (2 connectors).
- 7. Unscrew the 2 retaining screws for the fan and attach the installation device for the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.



/!\DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Up to 1200 V may still be present on the DC busbar system even after the DC interface (option L37) has been switched off. For this reason, take particular care to avoid coming into contact with the DC busbar system when replacing a power block!

/ CAUTION

Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 86 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

The second plug connection for the fiber optic cables cannot be disconnected until the power block has been pulled out slightly (see Step 5).

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

6.4.7.6 Replacing the power block, frame size JX

Replacing the power block

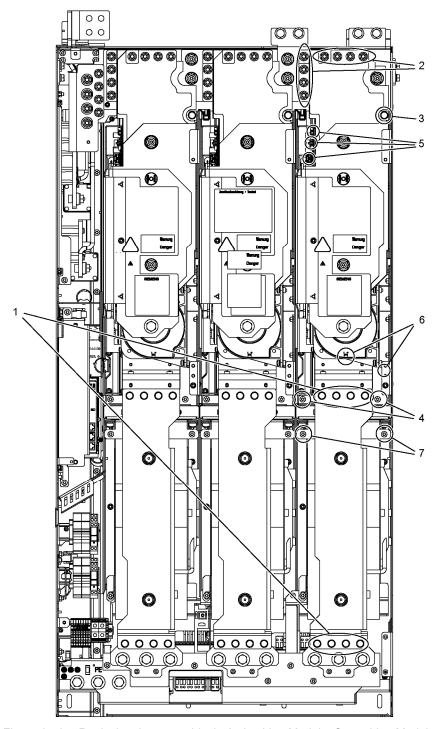


Figure 6-10 Replacing the power block, Active Line Module, Smart Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size JX

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Set up the installation device for the power block and keep it at hand (see the section titled "Installation device for power blocks").

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the busbar (8 screws).
- 2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
- 3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
- 4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
- 5. Disconnect the plug connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (2 plugs).
- 6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (1 plug).
- 7. Unscrew the 2 retaining screws for the fan and attach the installation device for the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.



/ DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Up to 1200 V may still be present on the DC busbar system even after the DC interface (option L37) has been switched off. For this reason, take particular care to avoid coming into contact with the DC busbar system when replacing a power block!



Caution when removing

The power block weighs approx. 90 kg!

When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Specifications for installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

The procedure described here for replacing the power block refers to the module on the right. The other modules are handled in the same way.

6.4.8 Replacing the Control Interface Module

6.4.8.1 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

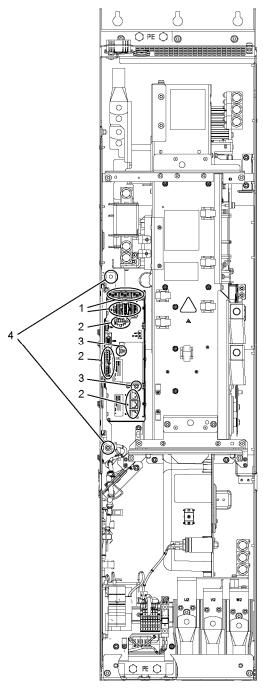


Figure 6-11 Replacing the Control Interface Module, Motor Module, frame size FX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the drive line-up from the power supply so that it is in a no-voltage condition.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- · Remove the front cover

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure.

- 1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (5 connectors).
- 2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors). The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

Note

It is only possible to connect identical power units in parallel if both power units have the same hardware version. Mixed operation between a power unit with Control Interface Module and a power unit with Control Interface Board is not possible.

6.4.8.2 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

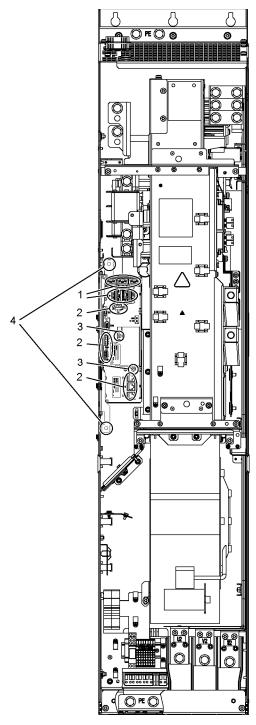


Figure 6-12 Replacing the Control Interface Module, Motor Module, frame size GX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the drive line-up from the power supply so that it is in a no-voltage condition.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the front cover

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure.

- 1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (5 connectors).
- 2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors). The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

Note

It is only possible to connect identical power units in parallel if both power units have the same hardware version. Mixed operation between a power unit with Control Interface Module and a power unit with Control Interface Board is not possible.

6.4.8.3 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

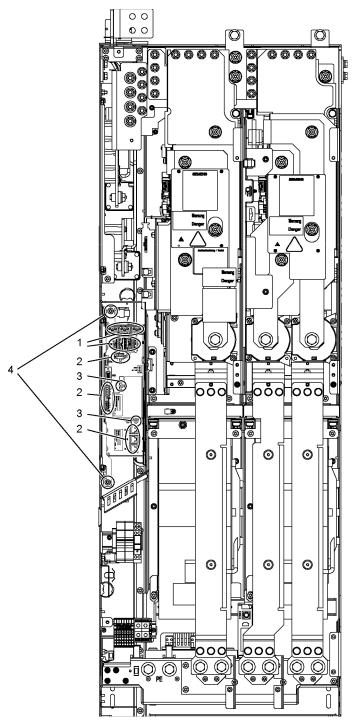


Figure 6-13 Replacing the Control Interface Module, Motor Module, frame size HX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the drive line-up from the power supply so that it is in a no-voltage condition.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure.

- 1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (5 connectors).
- 2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors). The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

Note

It is only possible to connect identical power units in parallel if both power units have the same hardware version. Mixed operation between a power unit with Control Interface Module and a power unit with Control Interface Board is not possible.

6.4.8.4 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

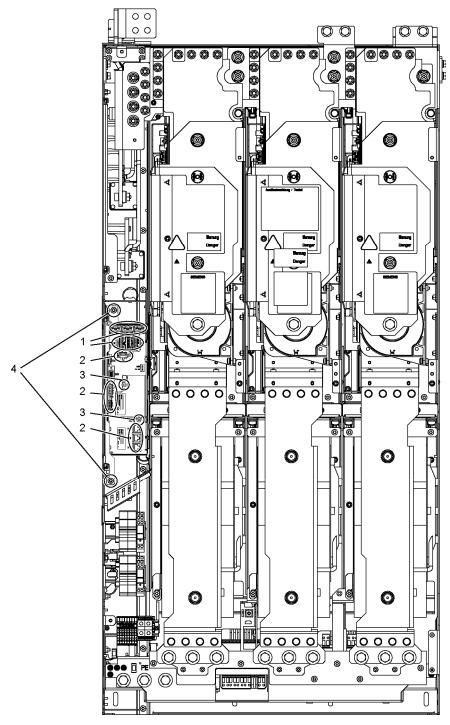


Figure 6-14 Replacing the Control Interface Module, Motor Module, frame size JX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the drive line-up from the power supply so that it is in a no-voltage condition.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure.

- 1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber optic cables and signal cables (5 connectors).
- 2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at X41 /- X42 /- X46 (6 connectors). The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked so that they can be correctly connected at a later time.
- 3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
- 4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber optic cables and sockets are accordingly labeled for correct assignment (U11, U21, U31).

Note

It is only possible to connect identical power units in parallel if both power units have the same hardware version. Mixed operation between a power unit with Control Interface Module and a power unit with Control Interface Board is not possible.

6.4.9 Replacing the Control Unit

The Control Unit is mounted on a slide-in unit that can be pulled out by removing a screw on the top left ① if the Control Unit needs to be replaced.

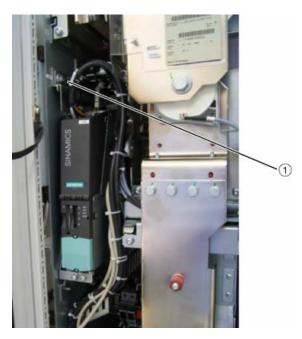


Figure 6-15 Replacing the Control Unit

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- · Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

- 1. Release nut (1)
- 2. Before pulling out the Control Unit on the slide-in unit completely, remove all cables connected to the Control Unit.
- 3. Pull out the Control Unit on the slide-in unit and install the new one.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing the Control Unit, ensure that you do not damage any cables.

Note

When installing the new Control Unit, you must reconnect the cables to exactly the same positions.

6.4.10 Replacing the fans

6.4.10.1 Replacing the fan, Booksize Cabinet Kit

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access.

Removing the fan, width 50 to 200 mm

Table 6- 2 Removing the fan

- Disconnect the power supplies (24 V DC and 400 V AC) Wait 5 minutes while the DC link capacitors discharge!
- Removing the module from the drive line-up.
- Release the snap hooks to open the fan cover.

Size 50 mm Size 100 mm Sizes 150 mm and 200 mm

- Release and pull out the connection plugs (1).



NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps for the fan, width 50 to 200 mm

Table 6-3 Installing a fan

Size 50 mm

Size 100 mm

Sizes 150 mm and 200 mm

Before installing the fan, check the air flow direction (the arrow on the fan must point towards the cooling ribs).

- Keep moving the fan into position until it is fully engaged. Notice! Do not crush the connection cables!
- Insert the connection plug until it is fully engaged.
- Insert the fan cover.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

Removing the fan, width 300 mm

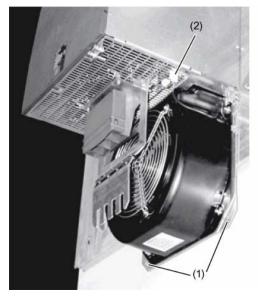




Figure 6-16 Removing the 300mm fan

- 1. Undo the M6 / 6 Nm screws (1)
- 2. Disconnect the power supply for the fan (2)
- 3. The fan can now be removed

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps for the fan, width 300 mm

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

6.4.10.2 Replacing the fan, frame sizes FB, GB and GD

Replacing the fan

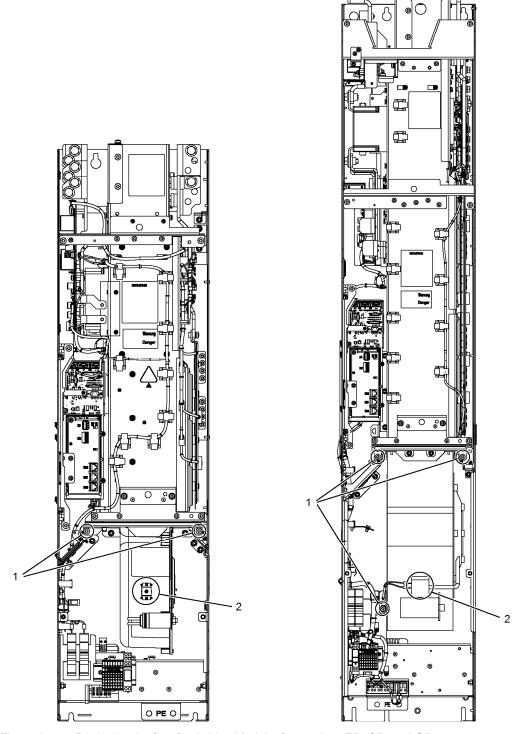


Figure 6-17 Replacing the fan, Basic Line Module, frame sizes FB, GB, and GD

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- · Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- Remove the retaining screws for the fan (2 screws for frame size FB; 3 screws for frame sizes GB and GD).
- 2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N").

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

6.4.10.3 Replacing the fan, sizes FX and GX

Replacing the fan

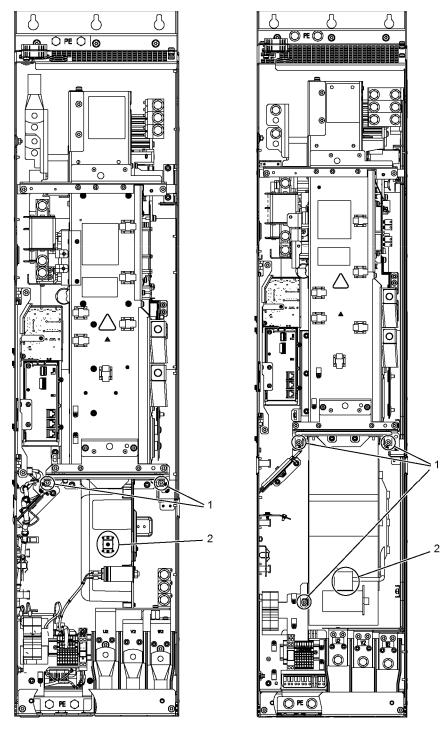


Figure 6-18 Replacing the fan, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame sizes FX and GX

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- · Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- Remove the retaining screws for the fan
 (2 screws for frame size FX; 3 screws for frame size GX)
- 2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N").

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

6.4.10.4 Replacing the fan, size HX

Replacing the fan, left power block

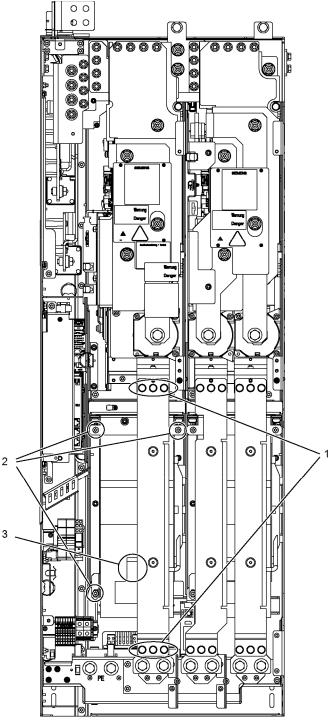


Figure 6-19 Replacing the fan, Active Line Module, Smart Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size HX - left power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the busbar (6 screws).
- 2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws).
- 3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N").

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

Replacing the fan, right power block

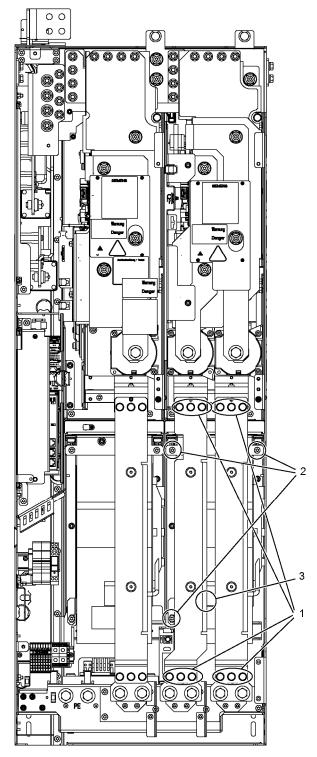


Figure 6-20 Replacing the fan, Active Line Module, Smart Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size HX - right power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the busbars (12 screws).
- 2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws).
- 3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N").

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

6.4.10.5 Replacing the fan, frame size JX

Replacing the fan

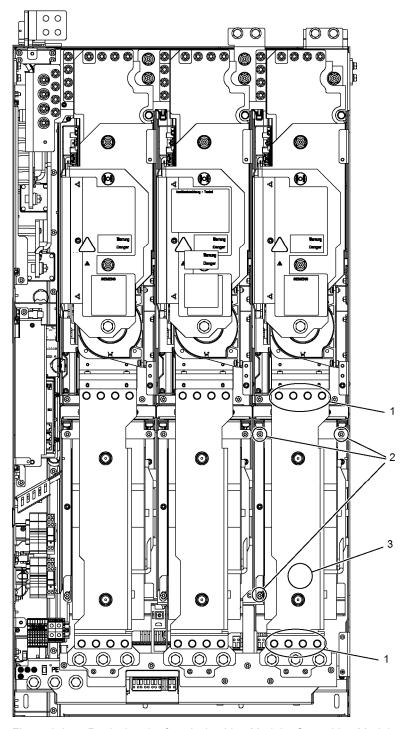


Figure 6-21 Replacing the fan, Active Line Module, Smart Line Module, and Motor Module, frame size JX

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the busbar (8 screws).
- 2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws).
- 3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N").

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

6.4.10.6 Replacing the fan, frame size FI

Replacing the fan

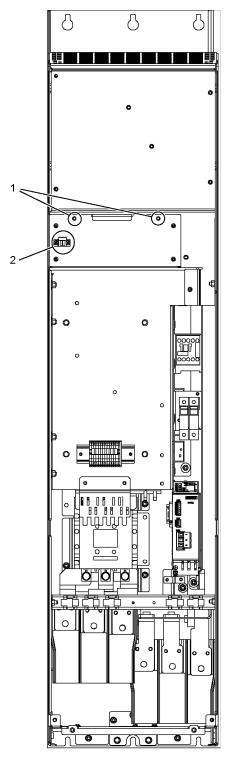


Figure 6-22 Replacing the fan, Active Interface Module, frame size FI

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- · Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan unit (2 screws).
- 2. Unplug connector -X630.

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

6.4.10.7 Replacing the fan, frame size GI

Replacing the fan

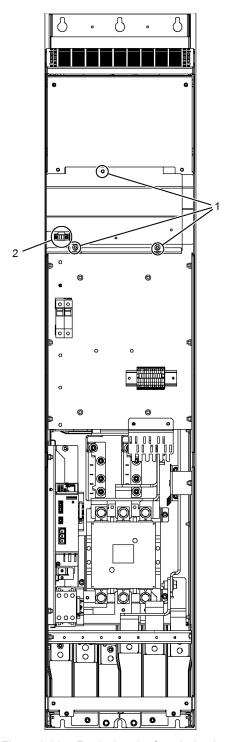


Figure 6-23 Replacing the fan, Active Interface Module, frame size GI

6.4 Replacing components

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- · Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan unit (3 screws).
- 2. Unplug connector -X630.

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

6.4.10.8 Replacing the fan, frame size HI

Replacing the fan

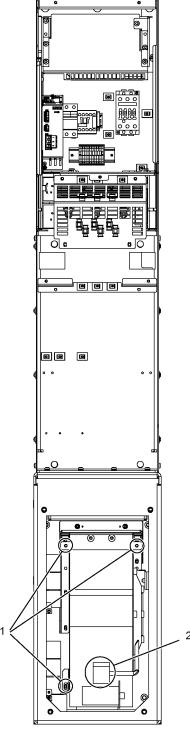


Figure 6-24 Replacing the fan, Active Interface Module, frame size HI

6.4 Replacing components

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- · Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan unit (3 screws).
- 2. Disconnect the supply cable (1 x "L", 1 x "N").

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

6.4.10.9 Replacing the fan, frame size JI

Replacing the fan

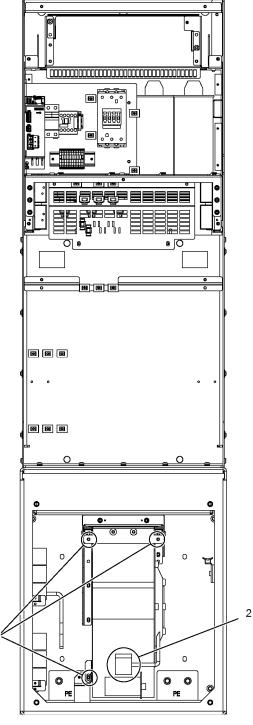


Figure 6-25 Replacing the fan, Active Interface Module, frame size JI

6.4 Replacing components

Description

The average service life of the device fans is approximately 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to ensure the availability of the Cabinet Module.

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the protective cover.
- · Allow unimpeded access.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the figure above.

- 1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan unit (3 screws).
- 2. Disconnect the supply cable (1 x "L", 1 x "N").

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE

Do not damage any signal cables

When removing, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.



Risk of injury from sharp edges

Take care not to cut yourself on the sharp edges inside the cabinet.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

6.4.11 Replacing the fuses

Replacement fuses

You can find the order numbers for replacing auxiliary power supply fuses that have blown in the spare parts list.



/!\WARNING

Replacing the fuses

When replacing fuses, you must take the following points into account:

- 1. Observe the "five safety rules".
- 2. Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- 3. Then rectify the cause of the fault.
- 4. Install a new fuse once the cause of the fault has been rectified.

6.4.11.1 Replacing the fuses for the auxiliary power supply

Replacement fuses

You can find the order numbers for replacing auxiliary power supply fuses that have blown in the spare parts list.



/!\warning

Replacing the fuses

When replacing fuses, you must take the following points into account:

- 1. Observe the "five safety rules".
- 2. Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- 3. Then rectify the cause of the fault.
- 4. Install a new fuse once the cause of the fault has been rectified.

6.4 Replacing components

6.4.11.2 Replacing the fuses (F71 to F73) in the Line Connection Module

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Have the fuse grip ready.

Removal and installation procedures

Note

On Line Connection Modules with a rated current of < 800 A, the fuses are freely accessible and can be replaced once the fault cause has been eliminated.

Note

On Line Connection Modules with a rated current of between 800 and 1600 A, the removal procedures described below must be carefully followed to replace the fuses.

- 1. Open the cabinet.
- 2. Take the top screws out of the support plate underneath the fuses. Loosen the bottom screws slightly. The support plate can then be pushed downwards.
- 3. Attach the fuse grip to the fuse.
- 4. Remove the defective fuse.
- 5. Press the yellow button on the fuse grip to release the defective fuse from it.
- 6. Attach the new fuse onto the grip.
- 7. Place the new fuse in the fuse holder in the cabinet.
- 8. Press the yellow button on the fuse grip to release the new fuse from it.
- 9. Attach the support plates underneath the fuses again.
- 10.Close the cabinet.

Note

If necessary, the fuse grip can be ordered from Siemens.

6.4.11.3 Replacing fuses in the fuse switch disconnector for Booksize Cabinet Kit

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).

Replacing

- 1. If option L37 is present, switch off the relevant DC interface in the door.
- 2. Open the door.
- 3. Open the fuse switch disconnector.
- 4. Remove the fuse link.
- 5. Replace the defective fuses.
- 6. Complete the procedure by carrying out the above actions in reverse order.

6.4.11.4 Replacing the DC fuses for chassis format

Replacing the DC fuses for Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame sizes FX and GX

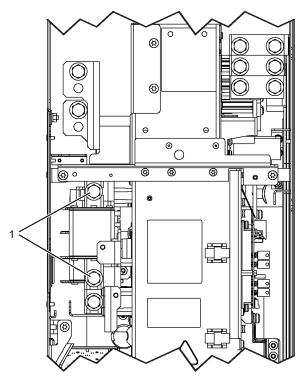


Figure 6-26 Replacing the DC fuses, frame sizes FX and GX

6.4 Replacing components

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access.



Hazardous electrical voltage

The DC voltage may still be present for up to 5 minutes.

Replacing the front fuse

- 1. Unscrew and remove the screws and nuts (1) from the front DC fuse.
- 2. Remove the DC fuse.

Replacing the back fuse

- 1. Unscrew and remove the screws and nuts from the front DC fuse (1).
- 2. Remove the front DC fuse.
- 3. Unscrew and remove the screws and nuts from the rear DC fuse, which can now be accessed.
- 4. Remove the rear DC fuse.

NOTICE

Replacing the fuses

After a DC fuse trips, always replace all DC fuses at the same time. Only fuses of the same type may be installed.

If you order a complete power unit as a replacement, make sure that only DC fuses are used. If the Option L37 (DC interface including precharging input circuit) is installed in your cabinet, the DC fuses of the replacement part must be replaced with the copper lugs of the existing power unit.

Replacing the DC fuses for Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, and Motor Module, frame sizes HX and JX

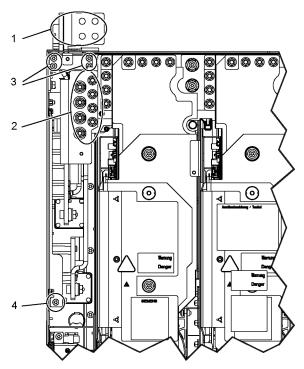


Figure 6-27 Replacing the DC fuses, frame sizes HX and JX

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Remove the protective cover.
- Allow unimpeded access.

/ CAUTION

Hazardous electrical voltage

The DC voltage may still be present for up to 5 minutes.

6.4 Replacing components

NOTICE

Replacing the fuses

After a DC fuse trips, always replace all DC fuses at the same time. Only fuses of the same type may be installed.

If you order a complete power unit as a replacement, make sure that only DC fuses are used. If the Option L37 (DC interface including precharging input circuit) is installed in your cabinet, the DC fuses of the replacement part must be replaced with the copper lugs of the existing power unit.

Removal steps

- 1. Release the DC connections at DCP and DCN (4 screws each)
- 2. Remove nuts (8 screws).
- 3. Remove the retaining screws for the connection plate of the housing (4 screws) and remove the connection plate.
- 4. Remove the retaining screws for the fuse insert (1 screw).

You can now remove the fuse insert.

Note

When removing the fuse insert, make sure that no cables or plastic parts are damaged.

You can then replace the DC fuses.

Installation steps

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

6.4.11.5 Replacing cylindrical fuses

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).

Replacement steps

- 1. Open the cabinet.
- 2. Open the fuse holder (push the flap down/up).
- 3. Remove the defective fuse.
- 4. Insert the replacement fuse.
- 5. Close the fuse holder (push the flap up/down).
- 6. Close the cabinet.

6.4.11.6 Replacing the LV HRC fuses

Description

NH fuses (low-voltage high-breaking-capacity fuses), also called knife fuses, are used, for example, in the on/off switches of the power supplies.



Figure 6-28 NH fuse

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Have the fuse equipment ready: NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuse-links



Figure 6-29 NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuses

Note

The NH fuse puller can be ordered from Siemens with order number 3NX1 if required.

Removal steps

- 1. Open the cabinet.
- 2. Front shock protection cover of the cabinet



Cover over the line connections

Do not remove the cover (touch protection) over the line connections!

- 3. Put the NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuse-links over the fuse
- 4. Remove the defective fuse.

Note

Replacing all NH fuses at the same time

After one NH fuse trips, always replace all NH fuses at the same time.

Installation steps

- 1. Insert the new fuse into the NH fuse grip.
- 2. Place the new fuse in the fuse holder in the cabinet.
- 3. Press the release button on the NH fuse puller to release the grip from the new fuse.
- 4. Attach the front shock protection cover
- 5. Close the cabinet.

/ CAUTION

Use only identical fuses

Only fuses of the identical type may be installed.

6.4.12 Replacing the DC interface (option L37)

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).
- Allow unimpeded access (Motor Module);
 (if no Control Unit is present, the plate can simply be unscrewed and turned to one side).

Removal

- 1. Switch off the relevant DC interface in the door.
- 2. Open the cabinet.
- 3. Open the fuse switch disconnector and remove the fuse link.
- 4. Remove the infeed cable to the Motor Module at the contactor.
- 5. Detach the motor plug or disconnect and insulate the motor cables.
- 6. Open the cover for the Motor Module.
- Remove the 24 V DC connector and insulate the contact surfaces so that they cannot be touched.
- 8. Remove the cable (2 -T1) at the contactor.
- 9. Remove the screws on the DC rectifier adapter.
- 10. Remove the connector (-X37).
- 11. Remove the cable ties on the cable to the DC rectifier adapter.
- 12. Remove the lower screws (up to 3) on the support plate for the pre-charger.
- 13. Remove the upper screws (up to 3) on the support plate for the pre-charger.

NOTICE

Secure the pre-charger

The pre-charger is only secured by the upper and lower screws, which means that it must be supported when you remove the final screws!

14. Carefully remove the support plate for the pre-charger and the DC rectifier adapter.

Installation

Installing is the same as removing, however in the reverse order.

Note

Use new cable ties

Use new cable ties to secure the cable to the DC rectifier adapter.

6.4.13 Replacing the pre-charging resistors of the DC interface (option L37)

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).

Removal

- 1. Remove the DC interface (see the section titled "Replacing the DC interface for Booksize Cabinet Kit").
- 2. Remove the fastening screws for the pre-charging resistors.
- 3. Remove the resistors.

Installation

- 1. Insert the new resistors.
- 2. Tighten the fastening screws of the pre-charging resistors.
- 3. Re-install the DC interface.

6.4.14 Replacing the backup battery for the cabinet operator panel

Replacing the backup battery

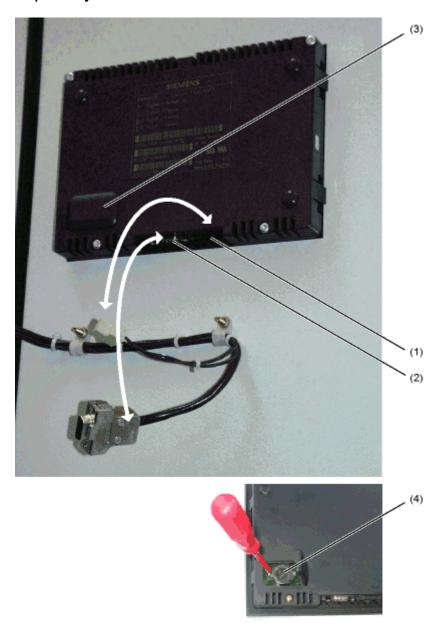


Figure 6-30 Replacing the backup battery

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Disconnect the cabinet from the power supply (do not forget the external power supplies).

Replacing

- 1. Disconnect the 24 V DC power-supply cable.
- 2. Disconnect the communication cable on the operator panel.
- 3. Open the cover of the battery compartment.
- 4. Remove the old battery.
- 5. Insert the new battery.
- 6. Complete the procedure by carrying out the above actions in reverse order.

Table 6-4 Technical data for the backup battery

Туре	CR2032 3 V lithium battery
Vendor	Maxell, Sony, Panasonic
Rated capacity	220 mAh
Maximum permissible charging current	10 mA (restricted to < 2 mA in operator panel)
Self-discharge at 20 °C	1%/year
Service life (in backup mode)	> 1 year at 70 °C > 1.5 years at 20 °C

Note

Time for replacing the battery

You must replace the battery within a period of one minute.

If the process takes longer than a minute, this can result in data being lost!

The battery must be disposed of in accordance with the applicable country-specific guidelines and regulations.

6.5 Forming the DC link capacitors

Description

If the Basic Line Modules, Smart Line Modules, Active Line Modules, and Motor Modules have not been used for more than two years, the DC link capacitors must be reformed. If this is not carried out, the units could be damaged after the DC link voltage is applied under load.

If the cabinet is commissioned within two years of its date of manufacture, the DC link capacitors do not need to be re-formed. The date of manufacture can be taken from the serial number on the rating plate.

Note

Storage period

It is important that the storage period is calculated from the date of manufacture and not from the date that the equipment was shipped.

Rating plate

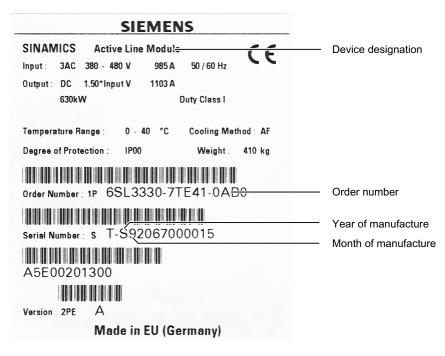


Figure 6-31 Rating plate using an Active Line Module as example

Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture can be determined as follows:

Table 6-5 Production year and month

Character	Year of manufacture	Character	Month of manufacture
S	2004	1 to 9	January to September
Т	2005	0	October
U	2006	N	November
V	2007	D	December
W	2008		
Х	2009		
Α	2010		
В	2011		
С	2012		
D	2013		
E	2014		

Procedure in the event of repair or replacement

A replacement Line Module or Motor Module or the corresponding replacement power block has to be re-formed after being in storage for a period of more than two years.

The DC link capacitors are re-formed by applying the rated voltage without load for at least 30 minutes.

To do this, the DC link must be precharged (i.e. the Line Modules switched on), while the controller for the existing Motor Modules must not be enabled for the specified length of time.

Procedure for re-forming outside the drive line-up

Replacement power units which have to be held ready for immediate use in the event of repair or replacement can also be re-formed individually and outside the drive line-up.

For this, the equipment must be connected to the forming circuits described in the following.

Components for the forming circuit (recommendation)

- 1 fuse switch 3-phase 400 V / 10 A or 690 V / 10 A
- 3 incandescent lamps 230 V / 100 W for a line voltage of 380 to 480 V 3 AC. Alternatively, use 3 resistors of 1 kΩ / 100 W each (e.g. GWK150J1001KLX000 from Vishay) instead of the incandescent lamps.

6.5 Forming the DC link capacitors

- 6 incandescent lamps 230 V / 100 W for a line voltage of 500 to 690 V 3 AC, where 2 incandescent lamps must be connected in series in each supply phase.
 Alternatively, use 3 resistors of 1 kΩ / 160 W each (e.g. GWK200J1001KLX000 from Vishay) instead of the incandescent lamps.
- Various small components, such as lamp sockets, cable 1.5 mm², etc.



/!\CAUTION

Install lamp sockets so that they are insulated

For a line voltage of 500 to 690 V 3 AC, the two lamp sockets connected in series must be insulated and protected from touch, because the insulation of the sockets is not designed for this high voltage.

Forming circuit for Line Modules

Note

Forming the Line Modules

Voltage must be supplied to Line Modules via a connected Motor Module and the associated DC link.

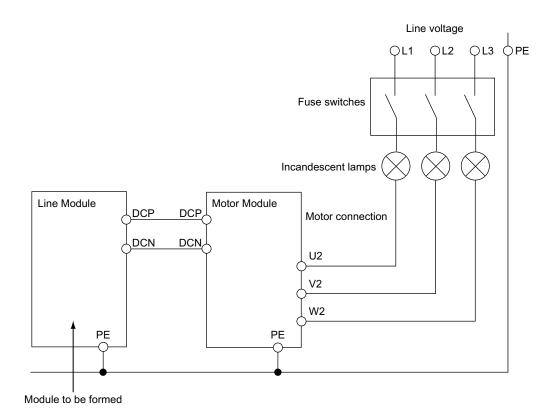


Figure 6-32 Forming circuit for Line Modules

Forming circuit for Motor Modules

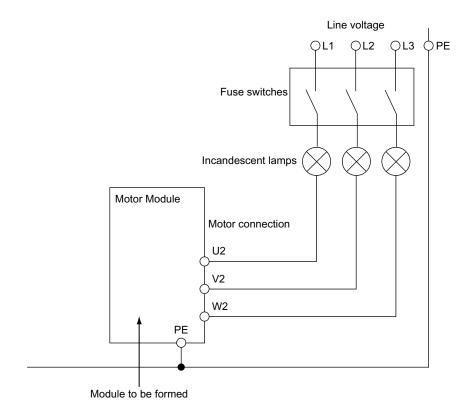


Figure 6-33 Forming circuit for Motor Modules

Procedure

- The unit being formed must not receive a power-on command (e.g. from the keyboard, BOP20 or terminal block).
- Connect the appropriate forming circuit.
- During the forming process, the incandescent lamps must become less bright or go completely dark. If the incandescent lamps continue to be brightly lit, a fault has occurred in the drive unit or in the wiring.

Maintaining the operational readiness of individual power blocks for servicing

It is recommended that during the planned downtimes, the power blocks positioned on the line side are replaced in order to guarantee the correct functioning of the power blocks during servicing.

6.5 Forming the DC link capacitors

Diagnostics

7.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides an overview of the LEDs on the various cabinet unit components. Detailed descriptions of the components are provided either in this Manual or in the additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

The overview of the LEDs provided here is intended for rapid diagnostic purposes.

7.2 LEDs on the CU320-2 DP Control Unit

Description of the LED states

The different states while booting are indicated using LEDs on the Control Unit.

- The duration of the individual states varies.
- If an error occurs, the booting procedure is terminated and the cause is indicated on the LEDs.
- Once the unit has successfully booted, all the LEDs are briefly switched off.
- Once the unit has booted, the LEDs are controlled via the loaded software.

Behavior of the LEDs during booting

Table 7-1 Load software

	LED		State	Comments
RDY	DP	OPT		
Red	Orange	Orange	Reset Hardware reset RDY LED lights up red, all other LEDs lig up orange	
Red	Red	Off	BIOS loaded	_
Red 2 Hz	Red	Off	BIOS error	Error occurred while loading the BIOS
Red 2 Hz	Red 2 Hz	Off	File error	CompactFlash card not inserted or defective
				Software has not been installed on the CompactFlash card or is defective
Red	Off	Off	Firmware loaded	_
Off	Red	Off	FW checked (no CRC error)	
Red 0.5 Hz	Red 0.5 Hz	Off	FW checked (CRC error)	CRC error
Orange	Off	Off	Start of DRIVE-CLiQ communication	

Table 7-2 Firmware

LED		State	Comments	
RDY	DP	OPT		
Off	Off	Off	Initializing	_
alternating		Running	See the table below	

Behavior of the LEDs after booting

Table 7-3 Control Unit CU320-2 DP – Description of the LEDs after booting

LED	Color	State	Description, cause	Remedy
RDY (READY)	-	OFF	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.	Check power supply
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.	_
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Commissioning / reset	_
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Writing to CompactFlash card	_
	Red	Flashing light 2 Hz	General errors	Check parameterization / configuration data
	Red/ green	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Control unit is ready for operation. However, there are no software licenses.	Obtain licenses
	Orange	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Updating the firmware of the DRIVE-CLiQ components that are connected	_
		Flashing light 2 Hz	DRIVE-CLiQ component firmware update has been completed. Wait for POWER ON of the respective component.	Carry out POWER ON for the components in question
	Green/ orange or red/ orange	Flashing light 1 Hz	Component detection via LED is activated (p0124[0]). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when component detection is activated via p0124[0] = 1.	_
DP PROFIdrive cyclic operation	-	Off	Cyclic communication has not (yet) taken place. Note: PROFIdrive is ready to communicate when the Control Unit is ready to operate (see LED RDY).	_
	Green	Steady light	Cyclic communication is taking place.	_
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Full cyclic communication has not yet taken place. Possible causes:	_
			The controller is not transferring any setpoints.	
			During isochronous operation, no global control (GC) or a faulty global control (GC) is transferred by the controller.	
	Red	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	PROFIBUS master is sending incorrect parameterization / configuration data	Adapt configuration between master / controller and CU

7.2 LEDs on the CU320-2 DP Control Unit

LED	Color	State	Description, cause	Remedy
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established	Remove the fault
OPT (OPTION)	-	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range. Component is not ready.	Check power supply and/or component
			Option Board not installed or no associated drive object has been created.	
	Green	Steady light	Option Board is ready.	_
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Depends on the option board used.	_
	Red	Steady light	At least one fault is present in this component. Option board not ready (e.g. after switch on).	Remedy and acknowledge fault
RDY and DP	Red	Flashing light 2 Hz	Bus error - communication has been interrupted	Remove the fault
RDY and OPT	Orange	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Firmware update in progress for connected Option Board CBE20	-

7.3 LEDs on the CU320-2 PN Control Unit

Description of the LED states

The different states while booting are indicated using LEDs on the Control Unit.

- The duration of the individual states varies.
- If an error occurs, the booting procedure is terminated and the cause is indicated on the LEDs.
- Once the unit has successfully booted, all the LEDs are briefly switched off.
- Once the unit has booted, the LEDs are controlled via the loaded software.

Behavior of the LEDs during booting

Table 7-4 Load software

	LED			Comments
RDY	DP	OPT		
Red	Orange	Orange	Reset	Hardware reset RDY LED lights up red, all other LEDs light up orange
Red	Red	Off	BIOS loaded	_
Red 2 Hz	Red	Off	BIOS error	Error occurred while loading the BIOS
Red 2 Hz	Red 2 Hz	Off	File error	CompactFlash card not inserted or defective Software has not been installed on the CompactFlash card or is defective
Red	Off	Off	Firmware loaded	-
Off	Red	Off	FW checked (no CRC error)	
Red 0.5 Hz	Red 0.5 Hz	Off	FW checked (CRC error)	CRC error
Orange	Off	Off	Start of DRIVE-CLiQ communication	

Table 7- 5 Firmware

	LED		LED		State	Comments
RDY	RDY DP OPT					
Off	Off Off Off		Initializing	_		
	alternating			See the table below		

Behavior of the LEDs after booting

Table 7-6 Control Unit CU320-2 PN – Description of the LEDs after booting

LED	Color	State	Description, cause	Remedy
RDY (READY)	-	OFF	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.	Check power supply
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.	_
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Commissioning / reset	-
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Writing to CompactFlash card	-
	Red	Flashing light 2 Hz	General errors	Check parameterization / configuration data
	Red/ green	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Control unit is ready for operation. However, there are no software licenses.	Upgrade licenses
	Orange	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Updating the firmware of the connected DRIVE- CLiQ components	_
		Flashing light 2 Hz	DRIVE-CLiQ component firmware update has been completed. Wait for POWER ON of the respective component.	Carry out POWER ON for the components in question
	Green/ orange	Flashing light	Component detection via LED is activated (p0124[0]).	_
	or red/ orange	1 Hz	Note: Both options depend on the LED status when component detection is activated via p0124[0] = 1.	
DP	_	Off	Cyclic communication has not (yet) taken place.	-
PROFIdrive cyclic operation			Note: PROFIdrive is ready to communicate when the Control Unit is ready to operate (see LED RDY).	
	Green	Steady light	Cyclic communication is taking place.	-
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Full cyclic communication has not yet taken place. Possible causes:	-
			The controller is not transferring any setpoints.	
			During isochronous operation, no global control (GC) or a faulty global control (GC) is transferred by the controller.	
			"Shared Device" is selected (p8929 = 2) and only one controller is connected.	

7.3 LEDs on the CU320-2 PN Control Unit

LED	Color	State	Description, cause	Remedy
Red		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Bus error, incorrect parameter assignment/configuration	Adapt configuration between controller and devices
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established	Remove the fault
OPT (OPTION)	_	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.	Check power supply and/or component
			Component is not ready.	
			Option board not installed or no associated drive object has been created.	
	Green	Steady light	Option board is ready.	_
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Depends on the option board used.	_
	Red	Steady light	At least one fault is present in this component.	Remedy and acknowledge
			Option board not ready (e.g. after switch-on).	fault
RDY and DP	Red	Flashing light 2 Hz	Bus error - communication has been interrupted	Remove the fault
RDY and OPT	Orange	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Firmware update in progress for connected Option Board CBE20	-

7.4 LEDs on the CBE20 Communication Board

Table 7-7 Meanings of the LEDs on the CBE20 Communication Board

LED	Color	Status	Description
Link port	-	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Steady light	A different device is connected to port x and a physical connection exists.
Activity port	-	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Yellow	Steady light	Data is being received or sent at port x.
Fault	-	Off	If the link port LED is green:
			The CBE20 is operating normally, data is being exchanged with the configured IO controller.
	Red	Flashing	The response monitoring interval has elapsed.
			Communication is interrupted.
			The IP address is incorrect.
			Incorrect or no configuration
			Incorrect parameter settings
			Incorrect or missing device name
			IO Controller not connected/switched off, although an Ethernet connection has been established.
			Other CBE20 errors
		Steady light	CBE20 bus error
			No physical connection to a subnet/switch.
			Incorrect transmission rate
			Full duplex transmission is not activated.
Sync	_	Off	If the link port LED is green:
			Control Unit task system is not synchronized with the IRT clock. An internal substitute clock is generated.
	Green	Flashing light	The Control Unit task system has synchronized with the IRT clock cycle and data is being exchanged.
		Steady light	Task system and MC-PLL synchronized with the IRT clock.

7.4 LEDs on the CBE20 Communication Board

LED	Color	Status	Description
OPT on the Control Unit	- Off		The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.
			Communication Board either defective or not inserted.
	Green	Steady light	Communication Board is ready and cyclic communication is taking place.
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	The Communication Board is ready, but cyclic communication is not yet taking place.
			Possible causes:
			At least one fault is present.
			Communication is being established.
	Red	Steady light	Cyclic communication via PROFINET has not yet been established. However, acyclic communication is possible. SINAMICS waits for a parameterizing/configuration telegram
		Flashing light 0.5 Hz	The firmware has not been successfully downloaded to the CBE20 (error).
			Possible causes:
			The CBE20 is defective.
			The memory card for the Control Unit is defective.
			In this state CBE20 cannot be used.
		Flashing light 2.5 Hz	Communication between the Control Unit and CBE20 is faulty. Possible causes:
			The board was withdrawn after power up.
			The board is defective.
	Orange	Flashing light 2.5 Hz	Firmware is being downloaded.

7.5 LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Basic Line Module

Table 7-8 Meaning of the LEDs "READY" and "DC LINK" on the Control Interface Module in the Basic Line Module

LED, state		Description
READY	DC LINK	
Off	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.
Green	Off	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is present.
	Red	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is too high.
Orange	Orange	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
Red		At least one fault is present in this component.
		Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.
Flashing, 0.5 Hz:		Firmware is being downloaded.
Green / Red		
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Firmware download is complete. Wait for POWER ON.
Green / Red		
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Detection of the component via LED is activated (p0124)
Green / Orange or Red / Orange		Note: Both options depend on the LED status when component recognition is activated via p0124 = 1.

Table 7-9 Meaning of the LED "POWER OK" on the Control Interface Module in the Basic Line Module

LED	Color	State	Description
POWER OK	Green	Off	DC link voltage < 100 V and voltage at -X9:1/2 less than 12 V.
		On	The component is ready for operation.
		Flashing light	There is a fault. If the LED continues to flash after you have performed a POWER ON, please contact your Siemens service center.



/!\warning

Hazardous DC link voltage

Irrespective of the state of the LED "DC LINK", hazardous DC link voltages can always be present.

The warning information on the component must be carefully observed!

7.6 LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Smart Line Module

Table 7- 10 Meaning of the LEDs "READY" and "DC LINK" on the Control Interface Module in the Smart Line Module

LED, state		Description
READY	DC LINK	
Off	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.
Green	Off	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is present.
	Red	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is too high.
Orange	Orange	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
Red		At least one fault is present in this component.
		Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.
Flashing, 0.5 Hz: Green / Red		Firmware is being downloaded.
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Firmware download is complete. Wait for POWER ON.
Green / Red		
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Detection of the component via LED is activated (p0124)
Green / Orange		Note:
or Red / Orange		Both options depend on the LED status when component recognition is activated via p0124 = 1.

Table 7- 11 Meaning of the LED "POWER OK" on the Control Interface Module in the Smart Line Module

LED	Color	State	Description
POWER OK	Green	Off	DC link voltage < 100 V and voltage at -X9:1/2 less than 12 V.
		On	The component is ready for operation.
		Flashing light	There is a fault. If the LED continues to flash after you have performed a POWER ON, please contact your Siemens service center.



/ WARNING

Hazardous DC link voltage

Irrespective of the state of the LED "DC LINK", hazardous DC link voltages can always be present.

The warning information on the component must be carefully observed!

7.7 LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Active Line Module

Table 7- 12 Meaning of the LEDs "READY" and "DC LINK" on the Control Interface Module in the Active Line Module

LED, state		Description
READY	DC LINK	
Off	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.
Green	Off	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is present.
	Red	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is too high.
Orange	Orange	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
Red		At least one fault is present in this component.
		Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.
Flashing, 0.5 Hz: Green / Red		Firmware is being downloaded.
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Firmware download is complete. Wait for POWER ON.
Green / Red		
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Detection of the component via LED is activated (p0124)
Green / Orange		Note:
or Red / Orange		Both possibilities depend on the LED status when activated using p0124 = 1.

Table 7- 13 Meaning of the LED "POWER OK" on the Control Interface Module in the Active Line Module

LED	Color	State	Description
POWER OK	Green	Off	DC link voltage < 100 V and voltage at -X9:1/2 less than 12 V.
		On	The component is ready for operation.
		Flashing light	There is a fault. If the LED continues to flash after you have performed a POWER ON, please contact your Siemens service center.



/!\warning

Hazardous DC link voltage

Irrespective of the state of the LED "DC LINK", hazardous DC link voltages can always be present.

The warning information on the component must be carefully observed!

7.8 LEDs on the Control Interface Module in the Motor Module, chassis format

Table 7- 14 Meaning of the LEDs "READY" and "DC LINK" on the Control Interface Module in the Motor Module

LED, state		Description		
READY	DC LINK			
Off	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.		
Green	Off	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.		
	Orange	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is present.		
	Red	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is too high.		
Orange	Orange	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.		
Red		At least one fault is present in this component.		
		Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.		
Flashing, 0.5 Hz:		Firmware is being downloaded.		
Green / Red				
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Firmware download is complete. Wait for POWER ON.		
Green / Red				
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Detection of the component via LED is activated (p0124)		
Green / Orange or Red / Orange		Note: Both options depend on the LED status when component recognition is activated via p0124 = 1.		

Table 7- 15 Meaning of the LED "POWER OK" on the Control Interface Module in the Motor Module

LED	Color	State	Description	
POWER OK	Green	Off	DC link voltage < 100 V and voltage at -X9:1/2 less than 12 V.	
		On	The component is ready for operation.	
		Flashing light	There is a fault. If the LED continues to flash after you have performed a POWER ON, please contact your Siemens service center.	



/ WARNING

Hazardous DC link voltage

Irrespective of the state of the LED "DC LINK", hazardous DC link voltages can always be present.

The warning information on the component must be carefully observed!

7.9 LEDs on the Motor Module in the booksize format

Table 7- 16 Meaning of the LEDs on the Motor Module in booksize format

LED, state		Description		
Ready	DC LINK			
Off	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.		
Green	Off	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.		
	Orange	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is present.		
	Red	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is too high.		
Orange	Orange	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.		
Red		At least one fault is present in this component.		
		Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.		
Flashing, 0.5 Hz:		Firmware is being downloaded.		
Green / Red				
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Firmware download is complete. Wait for POWER ON.		
Green / Red				
Flashing, 2 Hz:		Detection of the component via LED is activated (p0124)		
Green / Orange		Note:		
or Red / Orange		Both possibilities depend on the LED status when activated using p0124 = 1.		





Hazardous DC link voltage

Irrespective of the state of the LED "DC LINK", hazardous DC link voltages can always be present.

The warning information on the component must be carefully observed!

7.10 LEDs on the Central Braking Module

Table 7- 17 Meaning of the LEDs on the Braking Module in the Central Braking Module

LED	Status	Description
ME - "Ready" message	Off	U _{DC} missing
		Overtemperature
		Maximum control setting
	Steady light	Ready
MUI - "Overcurrent" message Off		Normal status
	Steady light	Short circuit/ground fault
MUL - "Overload" message	Off	Normal status
	Steady light	Overload: Set brake ON time exceeded
MUT - "Overtemperature" message	Off	Normal status
	Steady light	Overtemperature

7.11 LEDs on the Voltage Sensing Module (VSM) in the Active Interface Module

Table 7- 18 Meaning of the LEDs on the Voltage Sensing Module in the Active Interface Module

LED	Color	Status	Description		
		Off	The electronics power supply is missing or out of tolerance.		
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.		
	Orange	Steady light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.		
	Red	Steady light	At least one fault is present in this component.		
RDY (READY)			Note: LED is driven irrespective of the corresponding messages being reconfigured.		
	Green/ Flashing li red 0.5 Hz		Firmware is being downloaded.		
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Firmware download is being completed. Waiting for POWER ON.		
	Green/ orange	Flashing light 2 Hz	Component recognition via LED is activated (p0144). Note:		
	or		Both possibilities depend on the LED status when activated via p0144 = 1.		
	red/				
	orange				

7.12 LEDs on the SMC10 Sensor Module

Table 7- 19 Meaning of the LEDs on the SMC10 Sensor Module

LED	Color	Status	Description		
		Off	The electronics power supply is missing or out of tolerance.		
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.		
	Orange	Steady light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.		
	Red	Steady light	At least one fault is present in this component.		
Note: LED is driven irrespective of the corresponding me		Note: LED is driven irrespective of the corresponding messages being reconfigured.			
RDY (READY)	\D1 rod light		Firmware is being downloaded.		
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Firmware download is being completed. Waiting for POWER ON.		
orange		Flashing light 2 Hz	Component recognition via LED is activated (p0144). Note: Both possibilities depend on the LED status when activated via p0144 = 1.		
	red/ orange				

7.13 LEDs on the SMC20 Sensor Module

Table 7- 20 Meaning of the LEDs on the SMC20 Sensor Module

LED	Color	Status	Description	
		Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.	
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.	
	Orange	Steady light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.	
Not The		Steady light	At least one fault is present in this component. Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.	
(READY)	Green/ red	Flashing 0.5 Hz	Firmware is being downloaded.	
		Flashing 2 Hz	Firmware download is being completed. Waiting for POWER ON.	
	Green/ orange or red/ orange	Flashing	Component recognition via LED is activated (p0144). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when component recognition is activated via p0144 = 1.	

7.14 LEDs on the SMC30 Sensor Module

Table 7- 21 Meaning of the LEDs on the SMC30 Sensor Module

LED	Color	Status	Description	
		Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.	
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.	
	Orange	Steady light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.	
RDY	Red	Steady light	At least one fault is present in this component. Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.	
(READY)	Green/ red	Flashing 0.5 Hz	Firmware is being downloaded.	
		Flashing 2 Hz	Firmware download is being completed. Waiting for POWER ON.	
	Green/ orange or red/ orange	Flashing	Component recognition via LED is activated (p0144). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when component recognition is activated via p0144 = 1.	
	-	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range. Power supply ≤ 5 V.	
OUT > 5 V Orange Steady light The elect Measurin Notice: You must power st If an end		Steady light	The electronics power supply for the measuring system is available. Measuring system supply > 5 V	

7.15 LEDs on the TM54F Terminal Module

Table 7- 22 Description of the LEDs on the Terminal Module TM54F

LED	Color	State	Description	
	-	off	The electronics power supply is missing or outside the permissible tolerance range.	
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.	
	Orange	Steady light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.	
READY	Red	Steady light	At least one fault is present in this component. Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.	
	Green / Red	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware is being downloaded.	
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware download is complete. Waiting for POWER ON	
	Green / Orange or Red / Orange	Flashing light	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0154). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when module recognition is activated via p0154 = 1.	

7.16 LEDs on the temperature sensor module TM150

Temperature sensor module TM150 (-A151 to -A154)

Table 7- 23 Description of the LEDs on the TM150

LED	Color	State	Description	
READY	-	Off	The electronics power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.	
	Green	Steady light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.	
	Orange	Steady light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.	
	Red		At least one fault is present in this component. Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.	
	Green/red	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Firmware is being downloaded.	
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Firmware has been downloaded. Wait for POWER ON.	
	Green / Orange or Flashing light 2 Hz		Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0154). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when module recognition is activated via p0154 = 1.	

7.17 LEDs on the SITOP power supply unit

Table 7- 24 Meaning of the LEDs on the SITOP power supply unit

LED	Meaning
Green	Output voltage > 20.5 V
Yellow	Overload, output voltage < 20.5 V ("constant current" mode)
Red	Latching shutdown ("Shutdown" mode)

7.17 LEDs on the SITOP power supply unit

Options 8

8.1 Safety information



DANGER

Five safety rules

You must read and observe the "Safety information" chapter in this Manual.

When carrying out any kind of work on electrical devices, the following "five safety rules" must always be observed in accordance with EN 50110-1 and EN 50110-2:

- 1. Disconnect from power supply.
- 2. Protect against reconnection.
- 3. Make sure that the equipment is de-energized.
- 4. Ground and short-circuit.
- 5. Cover or enclose adjacent components that are still live.



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

The cabinet units are operated with high voltages.

All connection work must be carried out when the cabinet is de-energized.

All work on the unit must be carried out by trained personnel only.

Work on an open cabinet must be carried out with extreme caution because external supply voltages may be present. The power and control terminals may be live even when the motor is not running.

Dangerously high voltage levels are still present in the unit up to 5 minutes after it has been disconnected due to the DC link capacitors. For this reason, the cabinet should not be opened until a reasonable period of time has elapsed.

The user is responsible for ensuring that the motor, inverter, and other devices are installed and connected in accordance with the recognized technical rules in the country of installation and with other applicable regional regulations. Special attention should be paid to cable dimensioning, fuses, grounding, shutdown, disconnection, and overcurrent protection.

If an item of protective gear trips in a branch circuit, a leakage current may have been disconnected. To reduce the risk of fire or an electric shock, the current-conducting parts and other components in the cabinet should be inspected and damaged parts replaced. When an item of protective gear trips, the cause of the trip must be identified and rectified.

Note

Different types of Cabinet Modules

The Cabinet Modules come in a range of different frame sizes, with each size differing from the others in several ways. The main differences are:

- The covers used can have different dimensions, and they can be arranged and secured in different ways.
- The components can be arranged differently within the cabinet units.
- The components can be mounted within the cabinet units using different methods.

These variations result from the different requirements made of the components/equipment installed in the cabinet units. These differences are intentional and exist for "EMC optimization" reasons.

8.2 D14, Preliminary copy of customer documentation

If documents such as circuit diagrams, terminal diagrams, arrangement diagrams and dimension drawings are required for the system engineering (integration of the plant in higher-level systems, interface clarification, installation, building planning, etc.), advance documentation can also be ordered when ordering the cabinet modules. These documents are then supplied electronically a few working days after the order has been entered. If the order includes options that fall outside the scope of standard delivery, these will not be covered by the documentation due to the obvious time constraints.

Documentation relating to the order is sent to the buyer by e-mail. The recipient's e-mail address must be specified with the order for this purpose. In the e-mail, the recipient is also provided with a link for downloading general advance documentation such as operating instructions, Manual and commissioning instructions.

8.3 G20, CBC10 Communication Board

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Motor Modules in chassis format

Description



Figure 8-1 CAN CBC10 Communication Board

The CBC10 CANopen communication board (CAN Communication Board) is used to connect drives in the SINAMICS drive system to higher-level automation systems with a CAN bus.

The CANopen Option Board uses two 9-pin SUB D connectors for the connection to the CAN bus system.

The connectors can be used as inputs or outputs. Unused pins are plated through.

The following baud rates are also supported:

10, 20, 50, 125, 250, 500, 800 kBaud and 1 MBaud.

The module is installed in the factory in the option slot of the CU320-2 Control Unit.

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert the option board in a de-energized state

The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the control unit and option board are disconnected from the power supply.

The CBC10 must only be operated by qualified personnel. The ESD notices must be observed.

Note

Additional information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the CBC10 Communication Board can be found in the accompanying operating instructions, These operating instructions are available as additional documentation on the customer DVD provided.

Interface overview

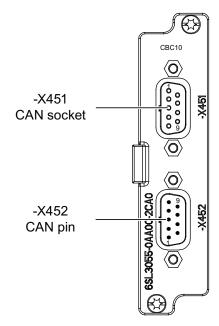


Figure 8-2 CAN CBC10 Communication Board, interface overview

X451 CAN bus interface

CAN bus interface -X451 features the following socket assignments:

Table 8-1 CAN bus interface X451

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	Reserved	
	2	CAN_L	CAN signal (dominant low)
	3	CAN_GND	CAN ground
	4	Reserved	
	5	CAN_SHLD	Optional shield
	6	GND	CAN ground
	7	CAN_H	CAN signal
	8	Reserved	
	9	Reserved	
Connector type: 9-p	in Sub-D so	ocket	·

X452 CAN bus interface

CAN bus interface -X452 features the following socket assignments:

Table 8-2 CAN BUS interface X452

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	Reserved	
	2	CAN_L	CAN signal (dominant low)
	3	CAN_GND	CAN ground
	4	Reserved	
	5	CAN_SHLD	Optional shield
	6	GND	CAN ground
	7	CAN_H	CAN signal
	8	Reserved	
	9	Reserved	
Connector type: 9-pi	n SUB D co	nnector (pins)	

8.4 G33, CBE20 Communication Board

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Motor Modules in chassis format

Description



Figure 8-3 CBE20 Ethernet Communication Board

Interface module CBE20 is used for communication via PROFINET.

The module is installed in the factory in the option slot of the CU320-2 Control Unit.

4 Ethernet interfaces are available on the module. Diagnosis of the function mode and communication are possible via LEDs.

Interface overview

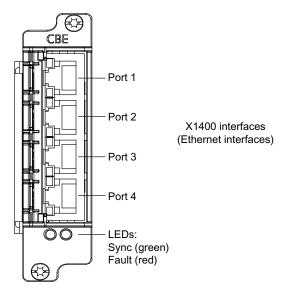


Figure 8-4 CBE20 Ethernet Communication Board, interface overview

MAC address

The MAC address of the Ethernet interfaces is indicated on the upper side of the CBE20. The label is only visible when the module has been removed.

Note

Note the MAC address

Remove the module and note down the MAC address of the module so that you have it available for subsequent commissioning. Re-install the module.

X1400 Ethernet interface

Table 8-3 Connector X1400, port 1 - 4

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
8	1	RX+	Receive data +
	2	RX-	Receive data -
154	3	TX+	Transmit data +
	4		Reserved, do not use
	5		Reserved, do not use
	6	TX-	Transmit data -
	7		Reserved, do not use
	8		Reserved, do not use
	Screened backshell	M_EXT	Shield, permanently connected

Installation

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert the option board in a de-energized state

The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the control unit and option board are disconnected from the power supply.

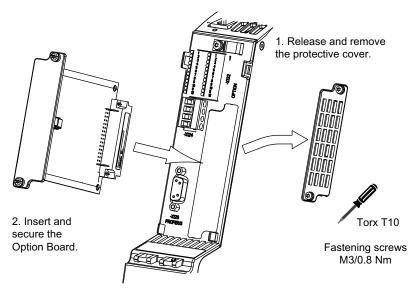


Figure 8-5 Installing the CBE20

8.5 G51 to G54, temperature sensor module TM150

8.5.1 General information

Availability of option

These options are available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Line Connection Module

Description

The Terminal Module TM150 is used for acquiring and evaluating several temperature sensors.

In this case, option G51 is for 1 temperature sensor module, option G52 for 2 temperature sensor modules TM150 etc.:

- G51: 1 temperature sensor module TM150
- G52: 2 temperature sensor modules TM150
- G53: 3 temperature sensor modules TM150
- G54: 4 temperature sensor modules TM150

The temperature is measured in a temperature range from -99 °C to +250 °C for the following temperature sensors:

- PT100 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- PT1000 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- KTY84 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- PTC (with short-circuit monitoring)
- Bimetallic NC contact (without monitoring)

For the temperature sensor inputs, for each terminal block the evaluation can be parameterized for 1x2-wire, 2x2-wire, 3-wire or 4-wire. There is no galvanic isolation in the TM150.

A maximum of 12 temperature sensors can be connected to Terminal Module TM150.

8.5.2 Interfaces

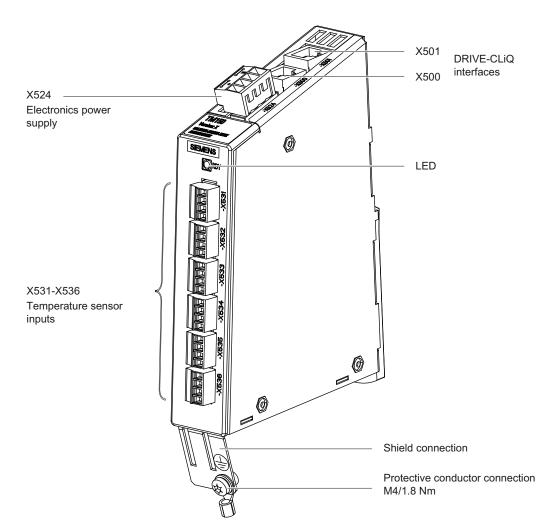


Figure 8-6 Terminal Module TM150

Temperature sensor connections

Table 8-4 X531-X536 temperature sensor inputs

	Terminal	Function 1x2- / 2x2-wire	Function 3 and 4-wire	Technical data
	1	+Temp (channel x)	+ (channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 1x2 wires
3 6				Connection of the 2nd measurement cable for sensors with 4-wires
	2	-Temp (channel x)	- (channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 1x2 wires
				Connection of the 1st measurement cable for sensors with 3 and 4-wires.
	3	+Temp (channel y)	+ I _c (constant current, positive channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 2x2, 3 and 4-wires
	4	-Temp (channel y)	- I _c (constant current, negative channel x)	

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Measuring current via temperature sensor connection: approx. 0.83 mA

When connecting temperature sensors with 3 wires, a jumper must be inserted between X53x.2 and X53x.4.

Table 8-5 Channel assignment

Terminal	Channel number [x] for 1x2, 3 and 4-wires	Channel number [y] for 2x2 wires
X531	0	6
X532	1	7
X533	2	8
X534	3	9
X535	4	10
X536	5	11



Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

/!\CAUTION

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. A sensor connected up with the incorrect polarity cannot detect if the motor overheats.

/ CAUTION

Connecting several temperature sensors

When connecting several temperature sensors, the individual sensors must be separately connected to "+ Temp" and "- Temp".

It is not permissible to jumper the "+ Temp" and "- Temp" signals between the individual terminal blocks!

/ CAUTION

Cable length and cross section

Cable length and cross section might influence the temperature measurement (10 Ω cable resistance for a PT100, can falsify the measurement result by 10 %). For cable lengths > 100 m, cables with a cross-section of \geq 1 mm² must be used.

The maximum cable length is 300 m.

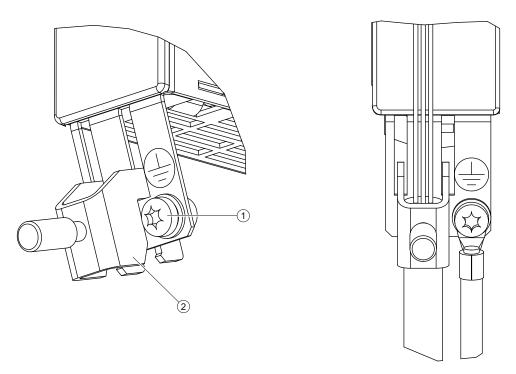
/!\CAUTION

Use shielded temperature sensor cables

Cables to connect temperature sensors must always be installed with shielding. The cable shield must be connected to the ground potential at both ends over a large surface area. Temperature-sensor cables that are routed together with the motor cable must be twisted in pairs and shielded separately.

Protective conductor connection and shield support

The following diagram shows a typical Weidmüller shield connection clamp for the shield supports.



- ① Protective conductor connection M4/1.8 Nm
- ② Shield connection terminal, Weidmüller company, type: KLBÜ CO1, order number: 1753311001

Figure 8-7 Shield support and protective conductor connection of the TM150

/!\DANGER

Malfunction in the event of incorrect shielding

If the shielding procedures described and the permissible cable lengths are not observed, the machine may malfunction.

8.5.3 Connection example

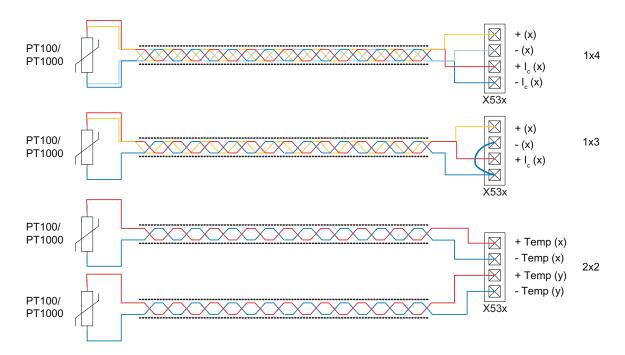


Figure 8-8 Connecting a PT100/PT1000 with 2x2, 3 and 4-wires to the temperature sensor inputs X53x of Terminal Module TM150

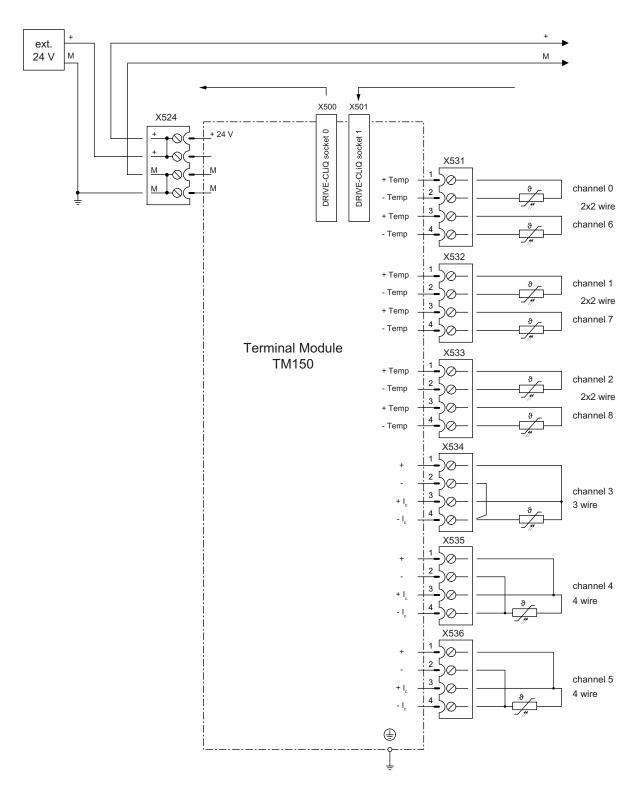


Figure 8-9 Connection example for a Terminal Module TM150

8.6 G56, contactor monitoring

8.6 G56, contactor monitoring

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 cabinet modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules

Description

The protective monitoring option is used for monitoring the pre-charging and bypass contactors of the Line Modules.

The connecting cable from the contactors to the Control Interface Module is factory-installed.

Activation

The monitoring is activated using the following parameters:

- p0255.0 = monitoring time for the pre-charging contactor (factory setting = 0, max. 6500 ms)
- p0255.1 = monitoring time for the bypass contactor (factory setting = 0, max. 6500 ms)

Fault messages

- F30060 (A) pre-charging contactor status monitoring
- F30061 (A) bypass contactor status monitoring

8.7 K01 to K05, safety license for 1 to 5 axes

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Chassis format Motor Modules

8.7 K01 to K05, safety license for 1 to 5 axes

Description

The Safety Integrated Basic functions do not require a license. A license is, however, required for each axis with safety functions in the case of Safety Integrated Extended functions. It is irrelevant which safety functions are used and how many.

In this case, option K01 is for 1 axis, option K02 for 2 axes etc. - up to option K05 for 5 axes.

- K01: Safety license for 1 axis
- K02: Safety license for 2 axes
- K03: Safety license for 3 axes
- K04: Safety license for 4 axes
- K05: Safety license for 5 axes

Note

Presently, a maximum of 5 safety axes with Safety Integrated Extended functions are possible on a Control Unit CU320-2.

Licenses

The required licenses can be optionally ordered together with the CompactFlash Card.

Subsequent licensing is realized in the Internet using the "WEB License Manager" by generating a license key:

http://www.siemens.com/automation/license

Note

The generation of the license key is described in detail in the SINAMICS S120 Function Manual, Chapter "Basics of the drive system" under "Licensing".

Activation

The associated license key is entered into parameter p9920 in the ASCII code. The license key is activated using parameter p9921 = 1.

Diagnostics

An insufficient license is indicated via the following alarm and LED:

- Alarm A13000 → License not sufficient
- LED READY → Flashes green/red at 0.5 Hz

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.8 K08, AOP30 advanced operator panel

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Chassis format Motor Modules

Note

Option K08 is only available in conjunction with the CU320-2 Control Unit (option K90 or K95).

Description



Figure 8-10 AOP30 advanced operator panel (option K08)

The user-friendly AOP30 advanced operator panel is an optional input/output device used for commissioning, operation and diagnostic purposes.

The AOP30 communicates with the CU320-2 Control Unit via an RS 232 serial interface using the PPI protocol.

Features

- Display with green backlighting (resolution: 240 x 64 pixels)
- 26-key keypad
- RS 232 interface
- Time and date memory powered by internal battery backup
- 4 LEDs indicate the operating condition of the drive unit: RUN, green ALARM, yellow FAULT, red LOCAL/REMOTE, green

Note

Additional documents

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the AOP30 Advanced Operator Panel can be found in the relevant operating instructions. These operating instructions are available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

→ See additional documentation "SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Module AOP30"

8.9 K46, Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC10

8.9.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Chassis format Motor Modules

Description

The SMC10 Sensor Module is used for detecting the actual motor speed and the rotor position angle. The signals emitted by the resolver are converted here and made available to the closed-loop controller via the DRIVE-CLiQ interface for evaluation purposes.

The following encoders can be connected to the SMC10 Sensor Module:

- 2-pole resolver
- Resolver, multi-pole

The motor temperature can also be detected using KTY84-130 temperature sensors or PTC thermistors.

Table 8-6 SMC10 specification

	Value
Transmission ratio of the resolver	ü = 0.5
Excitation voltage on the SMC10 for ü = 0.5 (cannot be parameterized)	4.1 V _{rms}
Amplitude monitoring threshold (secondary tracks) of the SMC10	1 V _{rms}

The maximum encoder cable length is 130 m.

The excitation frequency is synchronized to the current-controller clock cycle and lies in the range between 5 kHz and 10 kHz.

The ratio between ohmic resistance R and inductance L determines whether the resolver can be evaluated with the SMC10 (see diagram below).

Note

The Booksize Cabinet Kit with Double Motor Module has two of these Sensor Modules built in. It must be ensured that the installation of the encoder ground connection is insulating.

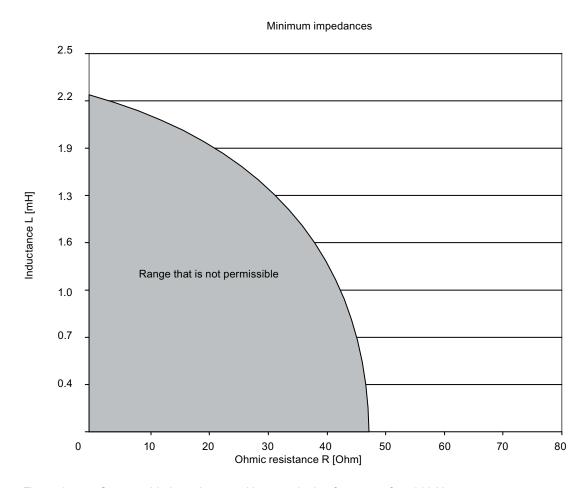


Figure 8-11 Connectable impedances with an excitation frequency f = 5000 Hz

8.9.2 Safety information

Note

Only connect one encoder system

Only one encoder system may be connected per Sensor Module.

NOTICE

Risk of equalization currents via the electronics ground

Make sure there is no electrical connection between the encoder system housing and the signal lines and the sensor system electronics.

If this is not carefully observed, under certain circumstances the system will not be able to reach the required interference immunity level (there is then a danger of equalization currents flowing through the electronics ground).



Use shielded temperature sensor cables

Cables to connect temperature sensors must always be installed with shielding. The cable shield must be connected to the ground potential at both ends over a large surface area. Connecting cables that are routed together with the motor cable must be twisted in pairs and shielded separately.

8.9.3 Interfaces

Overview

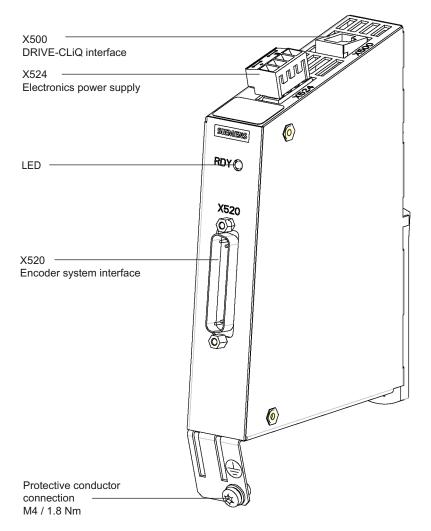


Figure 8-12 Interface overview for the SMC10

X520 encoder interface

Table 8-7 Encoder interface X520

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	Reserved, do not use	
	2	Reserved, do not use	
	3	S2	Resolver signal A (sin+)
	4	S4	Inverted resolver signal A (sin-)
	5	Ground	Ground (for internal shield)
📑	6	S1	Resolver signal B (cos+)
• •	7	S3	Inverted resolver signal B (cos-)
• •	8	Ground	Ground (for internal shield)
• •	9	R1	Resolver excitation positive
• •	10	Reserved, do not use	
• •	11	R2	Resolver excitation negative
• •	12	Reserved, do not use	
	13	+ Temp	Motor temperature measurement KTY84-1C130 (KTY+) Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130 / PTC
	14	Reserved, do not use	
	15	Reserved, do not use	
	16	Reserved, do not use	
	17	Reserved, do not use	
	18	Reserved, do not use	
	19	Reserved, do not use	
	20	Reserved, do not use	
	21	Reserved, do not use	
	22	Reserved, do not use	
	23	Reserved, do not use	
	24	Ground	Ground (for internal shield)
	25	- Temp	Motor temperature measurement KTY84-1C130 (KTY-) Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130 / PTC
Connector type	e: 25-pin SU	IB D connector (pins)	

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

8.9.4 Connection example

Connection example: Resolver, 8-pin

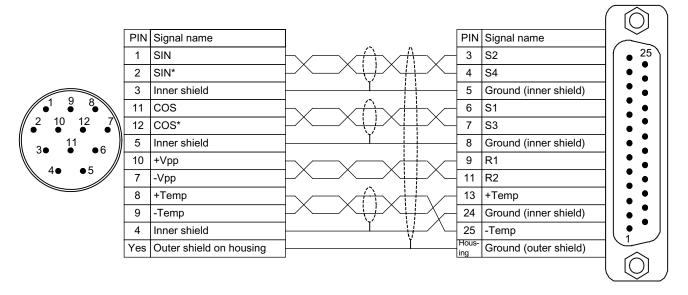


Figure 8-13 Connection example: Resolver, 8-pin

8.10 K48, Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC20

8.10.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Chassis format Motor Modules

Description

The SMC20 Sensor Module is used to simultaneously detect the actual motor speed and the path length. The signals emitted by the incremental encoder are converted here and made available to the closed-loop controller via the DRIVE-CLiQ interface for evaluation purposes.

The following encoders can be connected to the SMC20 Sensor Module:

- Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 V_{pp}
- EnDat and SSI absolute encoders

The motor temperature can also be detected using KTY84-130 temperature sensors or PTC thermistors.

The maximum encoder cable length is 100 m.

Note

The Booksize Cabinet Kit with Double Motor Module has two of these encoder modules built in.

8.10.2 Safety information

Note

Only connect one encoder system

Only one encoder system may be connected per Sensor Module.

NOTICE

Risk of equalization currents via the electronics ground

Make sure there is no electrical connection between the encoder system housing and the signal lines and the sensor system electronics.

If this is not carefully observed, under certain circumstances the system will not be able to reach the required interference immunity level (there is then a danger of equalization currents flowing through the electronics ground).



Use shielded temperature sensor cables

Cables to connect temperature sensors must always be installed with shielding. The cable shield must be connected to the ground potential at both ends over a large surface area. Connecting cables that are routed together with the motor cable must be twisted in pairs and shielded separately.

8.10.3 Interfaces

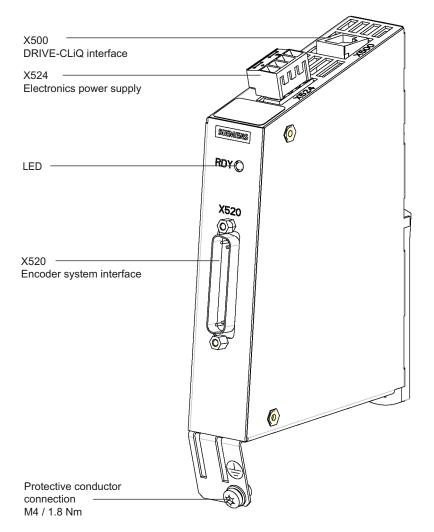


Figure 8-14 Interface overview for the SMC20

X520 encoder interface

Table 8-8 Encoder interface X520

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	P encoder	Encoder power supply
	2	M encoder	Ground for encoder power supply
25	3	A	Incremental signal A
	4	A*	Inverted incremental signal A
• •	5	Ground	Ground (for internal shield)
• •	6	В	Incremental signal B
• •	7	B*	Inverted incremental signal B
• •	8	Ground	Ground (for internal shield)
• •	9	Reserved, do not use	
• •	10	Clock	Clock, EnDat interface, SSI clock
(• • J	11	Reserved, do not use	
	12	Clock*	Inverted clock, EnDat interface, inverted SSI clock
	13	+ Temp	Motor temperature measurement KTY84-1C130 (KTY+) Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130 / PTC
	14	P sense	Sense input for encoder power supply
	15	Data	Data, EnDat interface, SSI data
	16	M sense	Ground for sense input for encoder power supply
	17	R	Reference signal R
	18	R*	Inverted reference signal R
	19	С	Absolute track signal C
	20	C*	Inverted absolute value signal C
	21	D	Absolute track signal D
	22	D*	Inverted absolute track signal D
	23	Data*	Inverted data, EnDat interface, inverted SSI data
	24	Ground	Ground (for internal shield)
	25	- Temp	Motor temperature measurement KTY84-1C130 (KTY-) Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130 / PTC

/!\CAUTION

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

/!\DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

P sense and M sense

The cables for P sense or M sense with P encoder or M encoder must be jumpered at the encoder end. The supply voltage of the encoder is detected by the SMC20 and automatically adjusted to 5 V to compensate any power loss.

8.10.4 Connection example

Connection example: Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp, 2,048

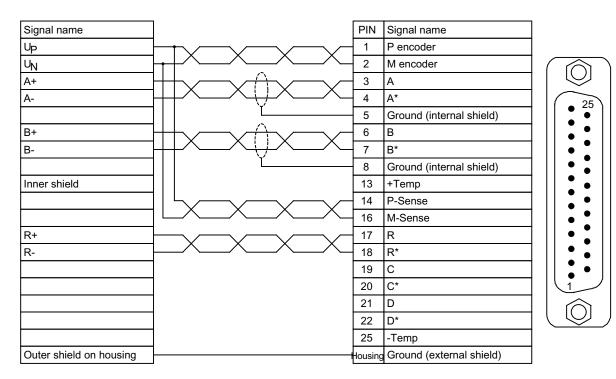


Figure 8-15 K48, connection example: Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp, 2,048

8.11 K50, Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC30

8.11.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The SMC30 Sensor Module is used for detecting the actual motor speed. The signals emitted by the rotary pulse encoder are converted here and made available to the closed-loop controller via the DRIVE-CLiQ interface for evaluation purposes.

The following encoders can be connected to the SMC30 Sensor Module:

- TTL encoder
- HTL encoder
- SSI encoder
- KTY or PTC temperature sensor

Table 8-9 Connectable encoders with supply voltage

Encoder type	X520 (SUB-D)	X521 (terminal)	X531 (terminal)	Open-circuit monitoring	Remote sense
HTL bipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
HTL unipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
TTL bipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
TTL bipolar 5 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	To X520
TTL unipolar	No	No	No	No	No
SSI 24 V/5 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

Table 8- 10 Maximum encoder cable length

Encoder type	Maximum signal cable length in m
TTL	100
HTL unipolar	100
HTL bipolar	300
SSI	100

8.11 K50, Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted SMC30

Note

Because the physical transmission media is more robust, the bipolar connection should always be used for HTL encoders. The unipolar connection should only be used if the encoder type does not output push-pull signals.

Note

The Booksize Cabinet Kit with Double Motor Module has two of these encoder modules built in.

Table 8- 11 Specification of encoder systems that can be connected

Parameter	Designation	Threshol d	Min.	Max.	Unit
High signal level (TTL bipolar at X520 or X521/X531) 1)	U _{Hdiff}		2	5	V
Low signal level (TTL bipolar at X520 or X521/X531) 1)	U _{Ldiff}		-5	-2	V
High signal level	U _H ⁴⁾	High	17	Vcc	V
(HTL unipolar)		Low	10	Vcc	V
Low signal level	U _L ⁴⁾	High	0	7	٧
(HTL unipolar)		Low	0	2	V
High signal level (HTL bipolar) ²⁾	U _{Hdiff}		3	Vcc	V
Low signal level (HTL bipolar) ²⁾	U _{Ldiff}		-V _{CC}	-3	V
High signal level (SSI bipolar at X520 or X521/X531) 1)	U _{Hdiff}		2	5	V
Low signal level (SSI bipolar at X520 or X521/X531) 1)	U _{Ldiff}		-5	-2	V
Signal frequency	fs		-	300	kHz
Edge clearance	t _{min}		100	-	ns
Zero pulse inactive time (before and after A=B=high)	t _{Lo}		640	(t _{ALo-BHi} - t _{Hi})/2 ³⁾	ns
Zero pulse active time (while A=B=high and beyond)	tні		640	t _{ALo-BHi} - 2 x t _{Lo} ³⁾	ns

¹⁾ Other signal levels according to the RS422 standard.

²⁾ The absolute level of the individual signals varies between 0 V and V_{CC} of the encoder system.

³⁾ t_{ALo-BHI} is not a specified value, but is the time between the falling edge of track A and the next but one rising edge of track B.

⁴⁾ The threshold can be set via p0405.04 (switching threshold); the setting when delivered is "Low".

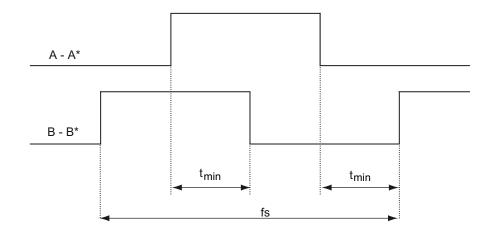


Figure 8-16 Signal characteristic of the A and B track between two edges: Time between two edges with pulse encoders

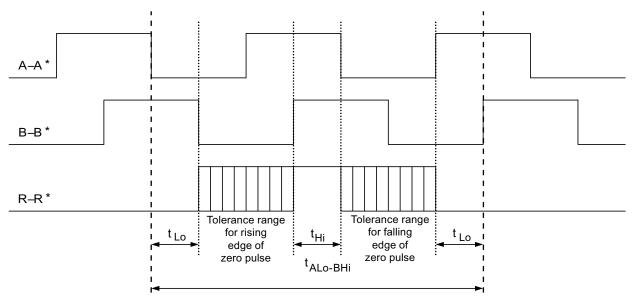


Figure 8-17 Position of the zero pulse to the track signals

For encoders with a 5 V supply at X521/X531, the cable length is dependent on the encoder current (this applies to cable cross-sections of 0.5 mm²):

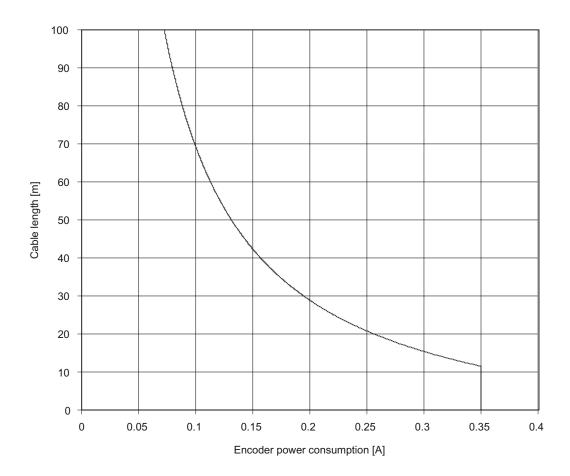


Figure 8-18 Signal cable length as a function of the encoder current consumption

For encoders without Remote Sense the permissible cable length is restricted to 100 m (reason: The voltage drop depends on the cable length and the encoder current).

8.11.2 Safety information

Note

Only connect one encoder system

Only one encoder system may be connected per Sensor Module.

NOTICE

Risk of equalization currents via the electronics ground

Make sure there is no electrical connection between the encoder system housing and the signal lines and the sensor system electronics.

If this is not carefully observed, under certain circumstances the system will not be able to reach the required interference immunity level (there is then a danger of equalization currents flowing through the electronics ground).

NOTICE

Use shielded cables

If screw terminals are used, the signal cable must be shielded and connected to the shield contact provided over a large surface area.

/ CAUTION

Use shielded temperature sensor cables

Cables to connect temperature sensors must always be installed with shielding. The cable shield must be connected to the ground potential at both ends over a large surface area. Connecting cables that are routed together with the motor cable must be twisted in pairs and shielded separately.

8.11.3 Interfaces

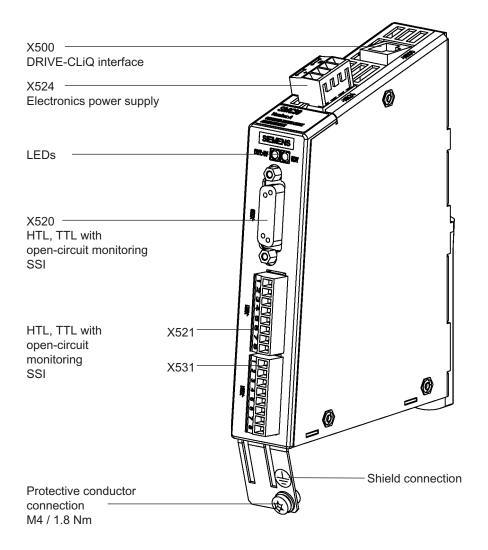


Figure 8-19 Interface overview for the SMC30

X520 encoder connection 1 for HTL/TTL/SSI encoder with open-circuit monitoring

Table 8- 12 Encoder connection X520

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
15 0 0	1	+Temp	Motor temperature sensing KTY84-1C130 (KTY+) Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130/PTC/ bimetallic switch with NC contact
	2	Clock	SSI clock
000	3	Clock*	Inverted SSI clock
000	4	P encoder 5 V / 24 V	Encoder power supply
1	5	P encoder 5 V / 24 V	Encoder power supply
	6	P sense	Sense input for encoder power supply
	7	M encoder (M)	Ground for encoder power supply
	8	-Temp	Motor temperature sensing KTY84-1C130 (KTY-) Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130/PTC/ bimetallic switch with NC contact
	9	M sense	Ground for sense input
	10	R	Reference signal R
	11	R*	Inverted reference signal R
	12	B*	Inverted incremental signal B
	13	В	Incremental signal B
	14	A*/data*	Inverted incremental signal A/inverted SSI data
	15	A/data	Incremental signal A/SSI data
Connector ty	pe: 15-pin Su	b-D socket	

NOTICE

Setting the encoder power supply

The encoder power supply can be parameterized to 5 V or 24 V. The encoder may be destroyed if you enter the wrong parameter.

/!\CAUTION

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

/ DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

X521/X531 encoder connection 2 for HTL/TTL/SSI encoder with open-circuit monitoring

Table 8- 13 Encoder connection X521

	Terminal	Signal name	Technical data
	1	А	Incremental signal A
\sim	2	A*	Inverted incremental signal A
°	3	В	Incremental signal B
5 	4	B*	Inverted incremental signal B
o 🚍	5	R	Reference signal R
	6	R*	Inverted reference signal R
	7	CTRL	Control signal
	8	М	Ground
Max. connec	Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm ²		

Note

Operation of unipolar HTL encoders

When unipolar HTL encoders are used, terminal block A*, B*, and R* must be jumpered with M encoder (-X531).

Table 8- 14 Encoder connection X531

	Terminal	Signal name	Technical data	
Ţ	1	P encoder 5 V / 24 V	Encoder power supply	
\mathbb{Z}^2	2	M encoder	Ground for encoder power supply	
³ 	3	-Temp	Motor temperature sensing KTY84-1C130 (KTY-)	
1.5	4	+Temp	Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130/PTC/ bimetallic switch with NC contact	
⁷	5	Clock	SSI clock	
$ _{\infty}$	6	Clock*	Inverted SSI clock	
	7	Data	SSI data	
	8	Data*	Inverted SSI data	
Max. connect	Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

Note

Cable shield for the encoder connection via terminals

Note that when the encoder is connected via terminals, the cable shield must be applied to the module.



KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.



Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp".

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

8.11.4 Connection example

Connection example 1: HTL encoder, bipolar, without zero mark -> p0405 = 9 (hex)

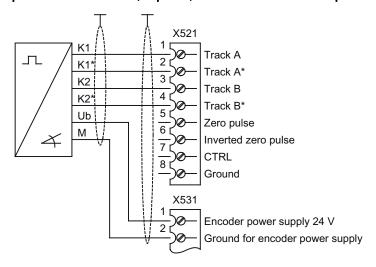


Figure 8-20 Connection example 1: HTL encoder, bipolar, without zero mark

Connection example 2: TTL encoder, unipolar, without zero track -> p0405 = A (hex)

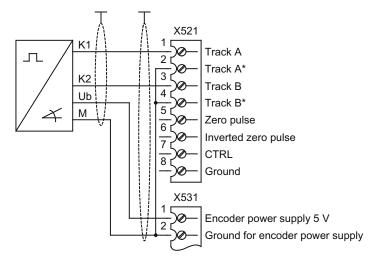


Figure 8-21 Connection example 2: TTL encoder, unipolar, without zero track

8.12 K51, VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module Cabinet-Mounted

8.12 K51, VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module Cabinet-Mounted

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

Voltage sensing module VSM10 is used to operate a permanent-magnet synchronous machine without encoder with the requirement for switching to a machine which is already running (flying restart function).

The terminals on the Voltage Sensing Module (-T1-B51) are pre-assigned in the factory and must not be changed by the customer.

To commission the function, the permanent-magnet synchronous machine without encoder must be input and "Flying restart" activated with p1200.

Interfaces

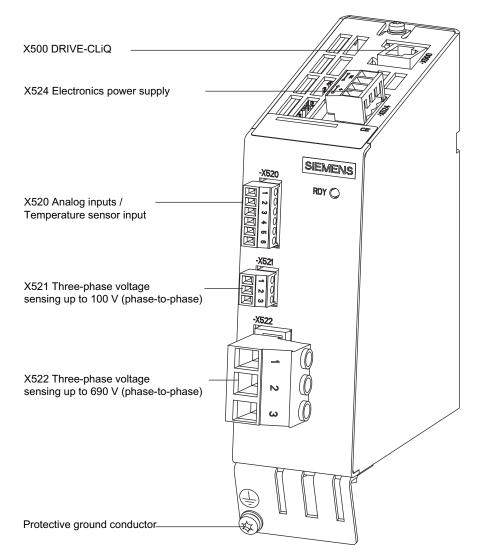
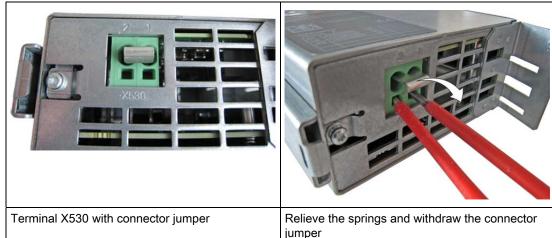


Figure 8-22 Interface overview for the Voltage Sensing Module (option K51)

Removing the connector jumper in the VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module

At the Voltage Sensing Module (VSM10), the connector jumper in terminal X530 on the underside of the component must be removed if you are using the cabinet unit on an ungrounded line supply (IT system).

Use two screwdrivers or a suitable tool in order to relieve the holding springs in the terminal and then withdraw the connector jumper.



8.13 K52, Additional SMC30 Sensor Module

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- **Booksize Cabinet Kits**
- Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

With option K50, an SMC30 Sensor Module is included in the cabinet unit. The additional SMC30 Sensor Module enables reliable actual value acquisition when using Safety Integrated Extended Functions.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.14 K70, fan power supply

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Module

Description

With this option, the line voltage supply for the auxiliary power supply system is taken after the circuit-breaker (-Q10) and is protected using a motor protection circuit-breaker -(Q12).

Voltages 1 AC 230 V and 24 V DC of the auxiliary power supply system must be supplied on the plant side.

8.15 K73, auxiliary power supply 24 V DC

Availability of option

• Booksize Cabinet Kits

Description

The 24 V DC supply for standard Booksize Cabinet Kits is tapped from the auxiliary power supply.

With option K73, the 24 V DC supply is provided by a dedicated SITOP.

8.16 K76, auxiliary voltage generating unit in the Line Connection Module

8.16 K76, auxiliary voltage generating unit in the Line Connection Module

Availability of option

• Line Connection Modules

Description

Cabinet Modules require an auxiliary energy supply to function properly. This current demand must be included in the configuration and supplied from an external source. If an external supply is not possible, the required auxiliary voltages can be generated by an Auxiliary Power Supply Module.

Alternatively, option K76 can be selected to generate the auxiliary voltages in the Line Connection Module. This is particularly advisable for smaller device configurations.

The following auxiliary voltages are available:

- 2 AC 380 to 480 V or 500 ... 690 V possible tap for the following Lne Connection Modules:
 - Line Connection Module with rated current up to 800 A: 35 A
 - Line Connection Module with rated current up to 1000 ... 1600 A: 50 A
 - Line Connection Module 6SL3700-0LE42-0AA3: 50 A
 - Line Connection Module with rated current up to 2000 ... 3200 A: 80 A
- 230 V AC (poss. tap approx. 4 ... 6 A)
- 24 V DC (poss. tap approx. 20 ... 40 A)

The auxiliary voltages in the Line Connection Module can be connected to the auxiliary power module therefore supplying the complete cabinet group.

If the Cabinet Modules are delivered as factory-assembled transport units (option Y11), the electrical installation work has already been carried out.

If the parts are delivered individually, the auxiliary power supply interface must be installed with 3 cables on site.

Depending on the version, the power loss is approx. 100 W.

Adapting the auxiliary power supply (-T10)

A transformer is installed in the Line Connection Module (-T10) for the 230 V AC auxiliary power supply for the cabinet. The location of the transformer is indicated in the layout diagrams supplied.

When delivered, the taps are always set to the highest level. The line-side terminals of the transformer may need to be reconnected to the existing line voltage.

The line voltage assignments for making the appropriate setting on the transformer for the internal power supply are indicated in the following tables.

Table 8- 15 Line voltage assignments for the internal power supply (380 to 480 V 3 AC)

Line supply voltage range	Тар	Taps of the voltage matching transformer (-T10) LH1 – LH2
342 390 V	380 V	1 – 2
391 410 V	400 V	1 – 3
411 430 V	415 V	1 – 4
431 450 V	440 V	1 – 5
451 470 V	460 V	1 – 6
471 528 V	480 V	1 – 7

Table 8- 16 Line voltage assignment for the internal power supply (500 to 690 V AC, 3 phase)

Line supply voltage range	Тар	Taps of the voltage matching transformer (-T10) LH1 – LH2
450 515 V	500 V	1 – 8
516 540 V	525 V	1 – 9
541 560 V	550 V	1 – 10
561 590 V	575 V	1 – 11
591 630 V	600 V	1 – 12
631 680 V	660 V	1 to 14, terminals 12 and 13 are jumpered
681 759 V	690 V	1 to 15, terminals 12 and 13 are jumpered

Note

Consequences when using an unmatched transformer

If the terminals are not reconnected to the actual supply voltage, the internal power supply will not be correct.

8.17 K82, terminal module for activating safety functions "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1"

8.17 K82, terminal module for activating safety functions "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1"

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- · Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The option K82 (terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1") is used for isolated activation via a variable control voltage range of the safety functions already present in the standard, which can also be used without option K82.

Use option K82 to activate the following Safety Integrated functions (terminology according to draft IEC 61800-5-2):

- Safe Torque Off (STO)
- Safe Stop 1 (SS1, time-controlled)

Note

Standards complied with

The integrated safety functions, starting from the Safety Integrated (SI) input terminals of the SINAMICS components (Control Unit, Motor Module), satisfy the requirements according to EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL2.

In combination with the option K82, the requirements specified in EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, as well as in DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) are satisfied for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL2.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.18 K87, Terminal Module TM54F

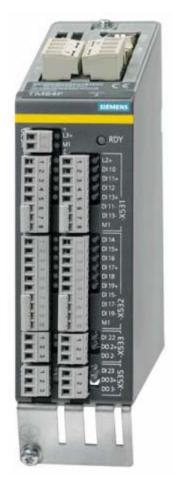


Figure 8-23 Option K87, Terminal Module TM54F

Availability of option

- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The TM54F Terminal Module is a terminal expansion module with safe digital inputs and outputs for controlling the Safety Integrated functions of SINAMICS.

The TM54F must be directly connected to a Control Unit via DRIVE-CLiQ. Motor Modules or Line Modules must not be connected to a TM54F.

Precisely one TM54F can be assigned to each Control Unit.

8.18 K87, Terminal Module TM54F

TM54F features the following interfaces:

Table 8- 17 Overview of the TM54F interfaces

Туре	Quantity
Fail-safe digital outputs (F-DO)	4
Fail-safe digital inputs (F-DI)	10
Sensor ¹⁾ power supplies, dynamic response supported ²⁾	2
Sensor ¹⁾ power supply, no dynamic response	1
Digital inputs to check F_DO for a test stop	4

- Sensors: Fail-safe devices to issue commands and sense, for example, emergency stop pushbuttons and safety locks, position switches and light arrays/light curtains.
- 2) Dynamic response: The sensor power supply is switched on and off by the TM54F when the forced dormant error detection is active for the sensors, cable routing, and the evaluation electronics.

The TM54F provides 4 fail-safe digital outputs and 10 fail-safe digital inputs. A fail-safe digital output consists of a 24 V DC switching output, a ground switching output, and a digital input for checking the switching state. A fail-safe digital input comprises two digital inputs.

Note

Rated values of the F-DO

The rated values of the F-DO meet the requirements of EN 61131-2 for digital DC outputs with 0.5 A rated current.

The operating ranges of the F-DI meet the requirements of EN 61131-2 for Type 1 digital inputs.

Note

Shielding cables

Please note that the F-DIs must take the form of shielded cables if they are > 30 m in length.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.19 K88, Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The Safe Brake Control (SBC) is a safety function, that is used in safety-related applications, e.g. in presses or in rolling mills. In the current-free state, the brake acts on the motor of the drive using spring force. The brake is released when current flows through it (=low active).

The maximum brake current is 2 A.

The Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC is installed in the cabinet unit in the factory. An infeed is connected to terminal -X12 on the Safe Brake Adapter to provide the necessary power. For control, a connection is established between the Safe Brake Adapter and the Control Interface Module using a cable harness installed in the factory.

For controlling the brake, a connection must be established on site between terminal -X14 on the Safe Brake Adapter and the rectifier of the brake. It is not permissible that AC brakes are directly controlled.

/!\warning

Damage to the device when connecting a 24 V DC brake

If, on the plant site, a 24 V DC brake is connected to option K88, Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC, then this can damage the Safe Brake Adapter. This can result in the following undesirable effects:

- Closing the brake is not displayed on the LEDS.
- The fuse is ruptured.
- The contact service life of the relay is reduced.

/!\warning

Maximum cable length of the brake control

The maximum permissible cable length of 300 m between the Safe Brake Adapter 230 V AC and the brake must be observed. To accurately calculate the maximum cable length, see the SINAMICS Low Voltage Engineering Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.19 K88, Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC

Fast de-energization

Some brake rectifier types are equipped with two additional connections for switching the brake load on the DC side. This allows the brake coil to be quickly deenergized, i.e. braking starts earlier.

The Safe Brake Adapter supports such a fast de-energization using the two additional connections -X15:1 and -X15:2. This function does not belong to the safe brake control.

Notes

Note

Replacement fuses

The order numbers for spare fuses can be taken from the spare parts list supplied.

Note

The integrated safety functions, starting from the Safety Integrated (SI) input terminals of the SINAMICS components (Control Unit, Motor Module), satisfy the requirements according to EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL2.

With the Safe Brake Adapter (option K88), the requirements specified in EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) as well as for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL 2 are fulfilled.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.20 K90, Control Unit CU320-2 DP

8.20.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Chassis format Motor Modules

Note

For Double Motor Modules in the booksize format, only one common Control Unit is available for both Motor Modules.

Description

With option K90, a CU320-2 DP Control Unit is installed in the Line Modules and Motor Modules of the drive line-up; this assumes the functions of communication, open-loop control, and closed-loop control for up to 4 Motor Modules, in addition to 1 Line Module.

The connection to the relevant modules and any additional I/O modules is established via DRIVE-CLiQ. A standard PROFIBUS interface is available for higher-level communication.

The unit can communicate with other participants via PROFIBUS or the DRIVE-CLiQ interface, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Engineering Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Note

CU320-2 Control Unit without performance enhancement

Without performance enhancement, it is generally possible to operate 2 Motor Modules plus 1 Line Module.

Note

Performance enhancement

The computing capacity required increases in proportion to the number of connected Motor Modules and system components and in relation to the dynamic response required. The full computing capacity of the CU320-2 Control Unit is available only with performance enhancement.

8.20.2 Connection overview

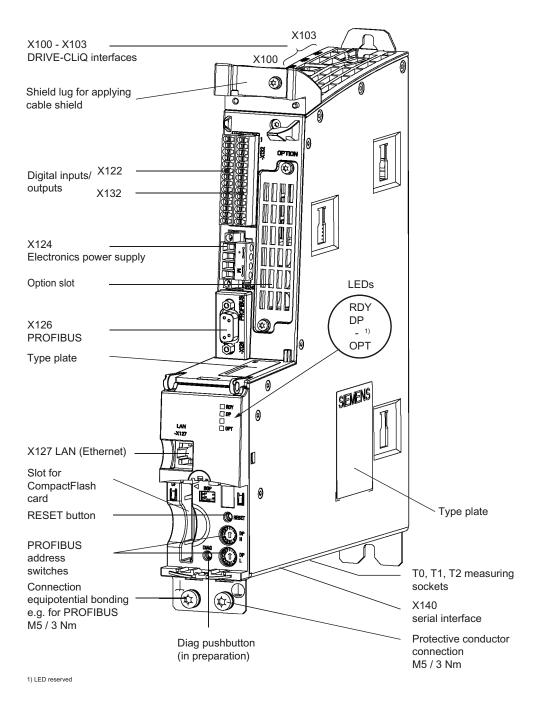


Figure 8-24 Connection overview of the CU320-2 DP Control Unit (without cover)

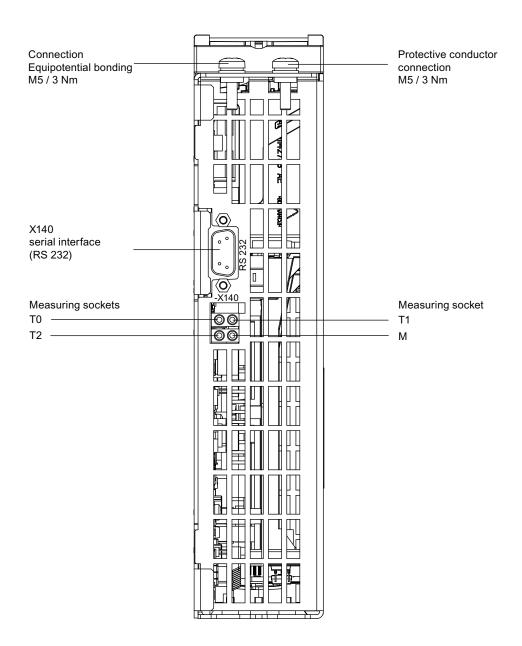


Figure 8-25 Interface X140 and measuring sockets T0 to T2 - CU320-2 DP (view from below)

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert a CompactFlash card in a no-voltage state

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed when the Control Unit is in a novoltage condition.

Non-compliance can result in a loss of data during operation and possibly a plant standstill.

8.20 K90, Control Unit CU320-2 DP

NOTICE

Observe ESD regulations

The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert the option board in a de-energized state

The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the control unit and option board are disconnected from the power supply.

8.20.3 Connection example

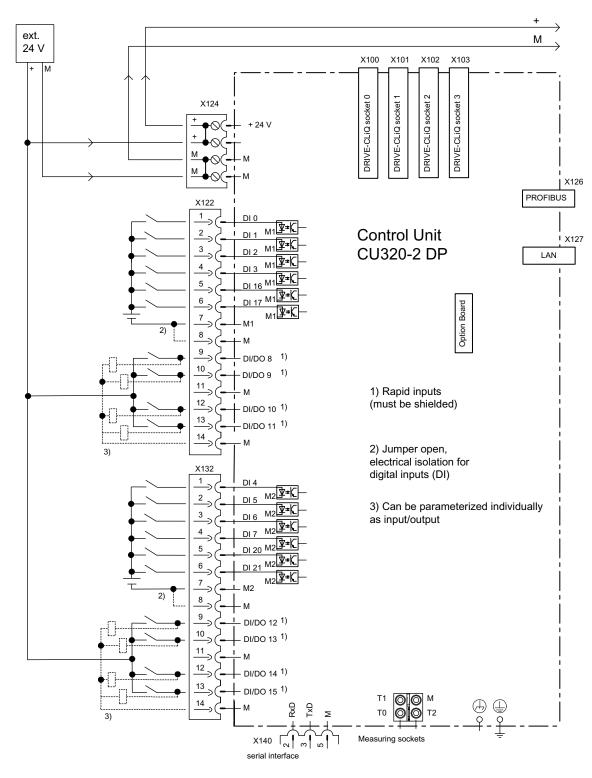


Figure 8-26 Connection example of CU320-2 DP

Note

Power supply for the digital inputs

In the circuit example, the power for the digital inputs (terminals -X122 and -X132) is supplied from the internal 24 V supply of the Control Unit (terminal -X124).

The two groups of digital inputs (optocoupler inputs) each have a common reference potential (reference ground M1 or M2). To close the circuit when the internal 24 V supply is used, the reference grounds M1 / M2 are connected to internal ground (M).

If power is not supplied from the internal 24 V supply (terminal -X124), the jumper between grounds M1 and M or M2 and M must be removed in order to avoid potential current loops. The external ground must then be connected to terminals M1 and M2.

8.20.4 X55 customer terminal strip

8.20.4.1 Overview

Description

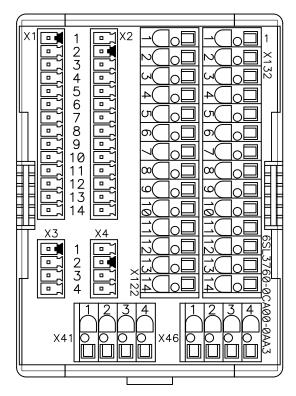


Figure 8-27 Option G55, customer terminal block -X55

The customer terminal block- X55 is installed in the cabinet together with the CU320-2 Control Unit. The digital inputs/outputs of the Control Unit can be used via terminal blocks - X55-X122 and -X55-X132.

Note

Internally wired interfaces

Interfaces -X1, -X2, -X3 and -X4 are wired within the cabinet and are not available for customer connections!

If the customer terminal block is ever replaced, connectors -X1 and -X2 must not be interchanged! Otherwise, "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" will malfunction!

8.20 K90, Control Unit CU320-2 DP

Note

Customer terminal block as standard

The customer terminal block is a standard component in the cabinet for the Motor Module Cabinet Module (chassis format). The digital inputs/outputs of the CU320-2 Control Unit on terminal blocks -X55-X122 and -X55-X132 can only be used in conjunction with a Control Unit.

Note

Power supply for the digital inputs

The two groups of digital inputs (DI0 to DI3, DI16 and DI17 or DI4 ... DI7, DI20 and DI21) each have a common reference potential per group (reference ground M1 or M2). To close the circuit when the internal 24 V supply is used, the reference grounds M1 / M2 are connected to internal ground (M).

If power is supplied from an external source, the jumper between ground M1 and M or M2 and M must be removed in order to avoid potential looping. The external ground must then be connected to terminals M1 or M2.

Pin assignment of customer terminal strip -X55

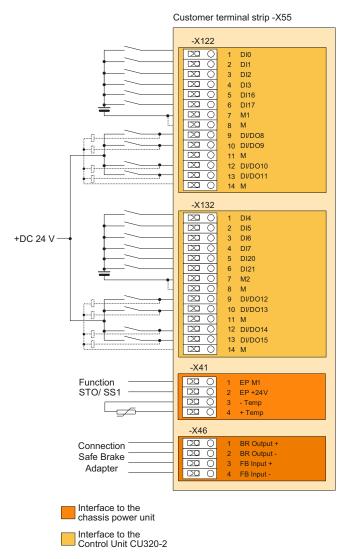


Figure 8-28 Connection assignment of customer terminal block -X55 (example: Motor Module Cabinet Module (chassis format))

8.20.4.2 X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection

Table 8- 18 Terminal block X41 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Function	Technical data	
(Freble Bulger)		Supply voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 V - 28.8 V) Current consumption: 10 mA		
	2	EP +24 V (Enable Pulses)	Signal propagation times: L → H: 100 μs; H → L: 1000 μs	
			The pulse inhibit function is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.	
	3	- Temp	Temperature sensor connection for motor temperature measurement:	
	4	+ Temp	KTY84-1C130, PTC, PT100	
Max. connecta	Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm ²			

DANGER

Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp". If safe electrical separation cannot be guaranteed (for linear motors or third-party motors, for example), a Sensor Module External (SME120 or SME125) must be used.

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection: KTY84-1C130 / PTC / PT100

NOTICE

Use shielded cables

The temperature sensor connection must be shielded. The shielding must be attached to the shield support of the Motor Module.

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Note

EP terminals only for Safety Integrated Basic Functions

The function of the EP terminals is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.

8.20.4.3 X46 Brake control and monitoring

Table 8- 19 Terminal block X46 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Function	Technical data
1234	1	BR output +	This interface is intended for the connection of the
0000	2	BR output -	Safe Brake Adapter.
	3	FB input +	
	4	FB input -	
Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm ²			

NOTICE

Cable length

The length of the connecting cable at terminal strip -X46 must not exceed 10 m, and the cable must not be brought out to outside the control cabinet or control cabinet group.

8.20.4.4 X122 digital inputs/outputs

Table 8- 20 Terminal block X122 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data
- Co	1	DI 0	Voltage (max.): -30 V to +30 V DC
$\sim \bigcirc \bigcirc$	2	DI 1	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V Electrical isolation: reference potential is M1 terminal
\Box	3	DI 2	Level (incl. ripple)
	4	DI 3	High level: 15 V to 30 V
υ O D	5	DI 16	Low level: -30 V to +5 V
	6	DI 17	Input delay (typ.): for "0" \rightarrow "1": 50 μ s for "1" \rightarrow "0": 150 μ s
	7	M1	Reference potential for terminals 1 to 6
900	8	М	Ground
	9	DI/DO 8	As input:
	10	DI/DO 9	Voltage: -30 V to +30 V DC
	11	М	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V Level (incl. ripple)
	12	DI/DO 10	High level: 15 V to 30 V
	13	DI/DO 11	Low level: -30 V to +5 V
	14	M	DI/DO 8, 9, 10, and 11 are "rapid inputs" $^{2)}$ Input delay (typ.): for "0" \rightarrow "1": 5 μ s for "1" \rightarrow "0": 50 μ s
			As output: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA continuous short circuit proof Output delay (typ./max.) ³⁾ : for "0" → "1": 150 μs / 400 μs for "1" → "0": 75 μs / 100 μs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W

¹⁾ DI: Digital input; DI/DO: Bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronic ground; M1: Ground reference

²⁾ The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark

³⁾ Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out} ; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

NOTICE

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

To enable the digital inputs (DI) to function, terminal M1 must be connected.

This is achieved by:

- 1. Providing the ground reference of the digital inputs, or
- 2. A jumper to terminal M (**Notice!** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

Note

Brief voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

8.20.4.5 X132 digital inputs/outputs

Table 8- 21 Terminal block X132 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data	
	1	DI 4	Voltage (max.): -30 V to +30 V DC	
	2	DI 5	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V	
	3	DI 6	Electrical isolation: reference potential is M2 terminal Level (incl. ripple)	
	4	DI 7	High level: 15 V to 30 V	
	5	DI 20	Low level: -30 V to +5 V	
	6	DI 21	Input delay (typ.): for "0" \rightarrow "1": 50 μ s for "1" \rightarrow "0": 150 μ s	
	7	M2	Reference potential for terminals 1 to 6	
Max. connectati	8	M	Ground	
	9	DI/DO 12	As input:	
	10	DI/DO 13	Voltage: -30 V to +30 V DC	
	11	M	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V Level (incl. ripple)	
	12	DI/DO 14	High level: 15 V to 30 V	
	13	DI/DO 15	Low level: -30 V to +5 V	
	14 M		DI/DO 12, 13, 14, and 15 are "rapid inputs" $^{2)}$ Input delay (typ.): for "0" \rightarrow "1": 5 μ s for "1" \rightarrow "0": 50 μ s	
		2.5 7272	As output: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Continuous short circuit-proof Output delay (typ./max.) ³): for "0" → "1": 150 µs / 400 µs for "1" → "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W	

¹⁾ DI: Digital input; DI/DO: Digital input/output; M: Electronics ground; M2: Ground reference

²⁾ The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark

³⁾ Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out} ; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

NOTICE

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

To enable the digital inputs (DI) to function, terminal M2 must be connected.

This is achieved by:

- 1. Providing the ground reference of the digital inputs, or
- 2. A jumper to terminal M (**Notice!** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

Note

Brief voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

8.20.5 X100 - X103 DRIVE-CLiQ interface

Table 8- 22 DRIVE-CLiQ interface X100 - X103

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	Α	+ (24 V)	Power supply
	В	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Connector type	e: RJ45 socket		

Connector type: RJ45 socket

Blanking plate for DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) Order number: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0

8.20.6 X126 PROFIBUS

Table 8-23 X126 PROFIBUS interface

	Pin	Signal name	Meaning	Range		
00000	1	-	Not assigned			
	2	M24_SERV	Teleservice supply, ground	0 V		
	3	RxD / TxD-P	Receive/transmit data P (B)	RS485		
	4	CNTR-P	Control signal	TTL		
	5	DGND	PROFIBUS data reference potential			
	6	VP	Supply voltage plus	5 V ± 10%		
	7	P24_SERV	Teleservice supply, + (24 V)	24 V (20.4 V to 28.8 V)		
	8	RxD / TxD-N	Receive/transmit data N (A)	RS485		
	9	-	Not assigned			
Connector type: 9-pin Sub-D socket						

Note

Remote diagnostics

A teleservice adapter can be connected to the PROFIBUS interface (X126) for remote diagnostics.

The power supply for the teleservice (terminals 2 and 7) can have a max. load of 150 mA.



Use equipotential bonding conductor

A potential bonding conductor with a cross-section of at least 25 mm² must be used between components in a system that are located at a distance from each other. If a potential bonding conductor is not used, high leakage currents that could destroy the Control Unit or other PROFIBUS nodes can be conducted via the PROFIBUS cable.



Do not connect CAN cables to interface X126

No CAN cables must be connected to interface X126. If CAN cables are connected, the Control Unit and other CAN bus nodes may be destroyed.

PROFIBUS connectors

The first and last nodes in a bus must contain terminating resistors. Otherwise, data transmission will not function correctly.

The bus terminating resistors are activated in the connector.

The cable shield must be connected at both ends and over a large surface area.

8.20.7 PROFIBUS address switch

The PROFIBUS address is set as a hexadecimal value via two rotary coding switches. Values between 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$) can be set as the address. The upper rotary coding switch (H) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^1 and the lower rotary coding switch (L) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^0 .

Table 8-24 PROFIBUS address switch

Rotary coding switches	Significance		Examples	
		21 _{dec}	35 _{dec}	126 _{dec}
		15 _{hex}	23 _{hex}	7E _{hex}
DP H	16 ¹ = 16	1	2	7
DP L	16º = 1	5	3	E

Setting the PROFIBUS address

The factory setting for the rotary coding switches is 0_{dec} (00_{hex}).

There are two ways to set the PROFIBUS address:

- 1. Using parameter p0918
 - To set the bus address for a PROFIBUS node using STARTER, first set the rotary code switches to 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and/or 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$).
 - Then use parameter p0918 to set the address to a value between 1 and 126.
- 2. Using the PROFIBUS address switches on the Control Unit
 - The address is set manually to values between 1 and 126 using the rotary coding switches. In this case, p0918 is only used to read the address.

The address switch is behind the blanking plate. The blanking plate is part of the scope of supply.

8.20.8 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

Table 8- 25 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

	Pin	Designation	Technical data	
	1	TXP	Ethernet transmit data +	
	2	TXN	Ethernet transmit data -	
	3	RXP	Ethernet receive data +	
	4	Reserved, do not use		
	5	Reserved, do not use		
	6	RXN	Ethernet receive data -	
	7	Reserved, do not use		
	8	Reserved, do not use		
Connector type	Connector type: RJ45 socket			

Note

Support during commissioning

The X127 LAN interface supports commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

For diagnostic purposes, the X127 LAN interface features a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

Table 8- 26 LED statuses for the X127 LAN interface

LED	State	Description
Green	On	10 or 100 Mbit link available
	Off	Missing or faulty link
Yellow	On	Sending or receiving
	Off	No activity

8.20.9 X140 serial interface (RS232)

The AOP30 operator panel for operating/parameterizing the device can be connected via the serial interface. The interface is located on the underside of the Control Unit.

Table 8-27 Serial interface (RS232) X140

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	2	RxD	Receive data
	3	TxD	Transmit data
9	5	Ground	Ground reference
Connector type	Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector		

NOTICE

Connecting cable to the AOP30

The connecting cable to AOP30 may only contain the three contacts which are listed in the table; a completely assigned cable may not be used.

8.20.10 Measuring sockets T0, T1, T2

Table 8- 28 Measuring sockets T0, T1, T2

	Socket	Function	Technical data
T0 = 6 6 T1	T0	Measuring socket 0	Voltage: 0 5 V
T2 5 0 0 M	T1	Measuring socket 1	Resolution: 8 bits
	T2	Measuring socket 2	Load current: max. 3 mA Continuous short-circuit proof
7	M	Ground	The reference potential is terminal M
The measurement sockets are only suitable for bunch pin plugs with a diameter of 2 mm.			

Note

Support for commissioning and diagnostics

The measuring sockets support commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

8.20 K90, Control Unit CU320-2 DP

8.20.11 CompactFlash card

Description

The computing capacity required and utilization of the CU320-2 Control Unit can be calculated with the SIZER engineering tool. The firmware options are supplied in license form, which are written to the CompactFlash card in the factory as license codes. The firmware options can also be enabled on-site, for example, if the required expanded performance is not known at the time of placing the order. You will need the serial number of the CompactFlash card and the order number of the firmware option to be enabled. With this information, you can purchase the associated license code from a license database and enable the firmware option.

The license code is only valid for the CompactFlash card declared and cannot be transferred to other CompactFlash cards.

NOTICE

Handling data on the CompactFlash Card

The data stored on the CompactFlash card must not be changed manually. Only the STARTER program can modify the data.

If you do not do this, all the data on the CompactFlash card will be lost (parameters, software license, etc.).

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed after the Control Unit CU320-2 has been switched off.

8.20.11.1 Using the memory card

Description

The STARTER commissioning tool is used to store configuration data centrally on the CompactFlash card. This ensures that if the Control Unit is defective, it can be simply replaced without the loss of any data. It also enables data to be stored on external storage media.

The data on the CompactFlash card can also be accessed using a CompactFlash card reader connected to a PC. This card reader is not included in the scope of supply.

System preconditions for installing STARTER V4.3.2

Hardware

The following minimum requirements must be met:

- Programming unit (PG) or PC
- Pentium III, at least 1 GHz, (> 1 GHz recommended)
- 1 GB RAM (2 GB recommended)
- Screen resolution 1024 × 768 pixels, 16-bit color depth
- Free hard disk space > 3 GB

Software

The following minimum requirements must be met when using STARTER without an existing STEP 7 installation:

• Microsoft Internet Explorer V6.0 or higher

32-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP2
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 *) and SP3
- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise incl. SP1 (standard installation)

64-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise SP1 (standard installation)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2

STARTER setup is possible with native Windows versions with Asian languages only if the Windows XP or Windows 7 software is an MUI version.

Acrobat Reader V5.0 or higher is required to open the function diagrams in the online help.

Note

Preconditions in conjunction with STEP7

If STARTER is used in combination with other STEP7 components, the prerequisites for the S7 components shall apply.

^{*)} restricted test scope

8.20 K90, Control Unit CU320-2 DP

Additional system requirements for installing a CompactFlash card reader

- Free USB connection
- CD-ROM drive (for installing the driver for the card reader)

8.20.11.2 Data functions

Once a card reader has been connected and successfully installed, the data on the CompactFlash card can be accessed in the same way as data stored on other PC storage media (e.g. access to hard disk, memory stick, etc.). To access its data, the CompactFlash card must first be removed from the Control Unit CU320-2 and inserted in the card reader connected to the PC.

The actual procedure for accessing the CompactFlash card data depends on the operating system used.

NOTICE

Handling the CompactFlash card

The data stored on the CompactFlash card must not be changed manually. Only the STARTER program can modify the data.

If you do not do this, all the data on the CompactFlash card will be lost (parameters, software license, etc.).

8.20.11.3 Saving the memory card parameter settings

Following commissioning, it is advisable to back up the data on the CompactFlash card to an external storage medium (hard disk, data carrier, etc.).

To do this, the CompactFlash card is read via a card reader connected to a PC. Ensure that all the files and directories are stored in the same form as on the CompactFlash card.

If necessary, the device status following commissioning of the drive can be restored by uploading the saved data to the CompactFlash card.

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert a CompactFlash card in a no-voltage state

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed after the Control Unit CU320-2 has been switched off.

If you do not do this, all the data on the CompactFlash card will be lost (parameters, software license, etc.).

If you remove the CompactFlash Card in operation, alarm A01100 "CU: CompactFlash card removed" is output.

Manual, 03/2013, A5E03263538A

8.20.11.4 Slot for the CompactFlash card

Slot for the CompactFlash card



Figure 8-29 CompactFlash card slot

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert a CompactFlash card in a no-voltage state

The CompactFlash card may only be removed and inserted when the Control Unit is in a voltage-free state; doing this during operation instead could result in a loss of data and, where applicable, a plant standstill.

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted as shown in the photo above (arrow at top right).

NOTICE

Observe ESD regulations

The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

Note

Returned item

When returning a defective Control Unit, remove the CompactFlash card and keep it for insertion in the replacement unit. This is important otherwise the data on the CompactFlash card (parameters, firmware, licenses, and so on) may be lost.

8.21 K94, Performance extension for CU320-2

Note

Only use SIEMENS CompactFlash cards

Please note that only SIEMENS CompactFlash cards can be used to operate the Control Unit.

8.21 K94, Performance extension for CU320-2

Availability of option

This option is available for the following options:

- Option K90, Control Unit CU320-2 PROFIBUS
- Option K95, Control Unit CU320-2 PROFINET

Description

A CU320-2 Control Unit can perform the communication, open-loop and closed-loop control functions for several power units. The computing capacity requirement increases in proportion to the number of power units and system components and in relation to the dynamic response required. The full computing capacity of the CU320-2 Control Unit is available only with performance enhancement.

In addition to the firmware, the CompactFlash Card also contains licensing codes, which are required to enable firmware options (such as performance enhancement and the Safety Integrated Extended functions).

8.22 K95, Control Unit CU320-2 PN

8.22.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 cabinet modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- Chassis format Motor Modules

Note

For Double Motor Modules in the booksize format, only one common Control Unit is available for both Motor Modules.

Description

With option K95, a CU320-2 PN Control Unit is installed in the Line Modules and Motor Modules of the drive line-up; this assumes the functions of communication, open-loop control, and closed-loop control for up to 4 Motor Modules, in addition to 1 Line Module.

The connection to the relevant modules and any additional I/O modules is established via DRIVE-CLiQ. A standard PROFINET interface is available for higher-level communication.

The unit can communicate with other participants via PROFINET or the DRIVE-CLiQ interface, see SINAMICS Low-Voltage Engineering Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Note

CU320-2 Control Unit without performance enhancement

Without performance enhancement, it is generally possible to operate 2 Motor Modules plus 1 Line Module.

Note

Performance enhancement

The computing capacity required increases in proportion to the number of connected Motor Modules and system components and in relation to the dynamic response required. The full computing capacity of the CU320-2 Control Unit is available only with performance enhancement.

8.22.2 Connection overview

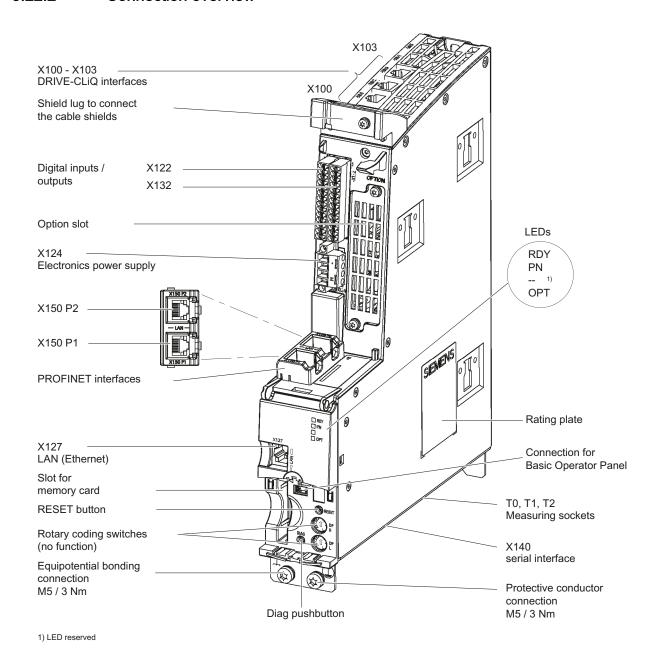


Figure 8-30 Overview of connections for the CU3202 PN Control Unit (without cover)

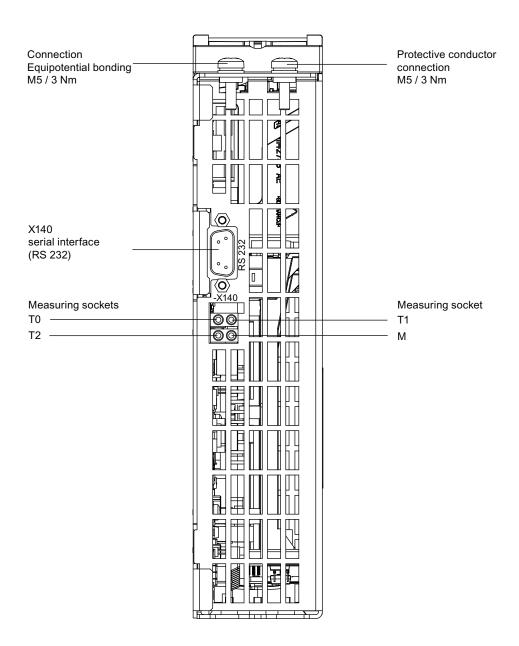


Figure 8-31 Interface X140 and measuring sockets T0 to T2 - CU320-2 PN (view from below)

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert a CompactFlash card in a no-voltage state

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed when the Control Unit is in a novoltage condition.

Non-compliance can result in a loss of data during operation and possibly a plant standstill.

8.22 K95, Control Unit CU320-2 PN

NOTICE

Observe ESD regulations

The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert the option board in a de-energized state

The Option Board may only be inserted and removed when the control unit and option board are disconnected from the power supply.

8.22.3 Connection example

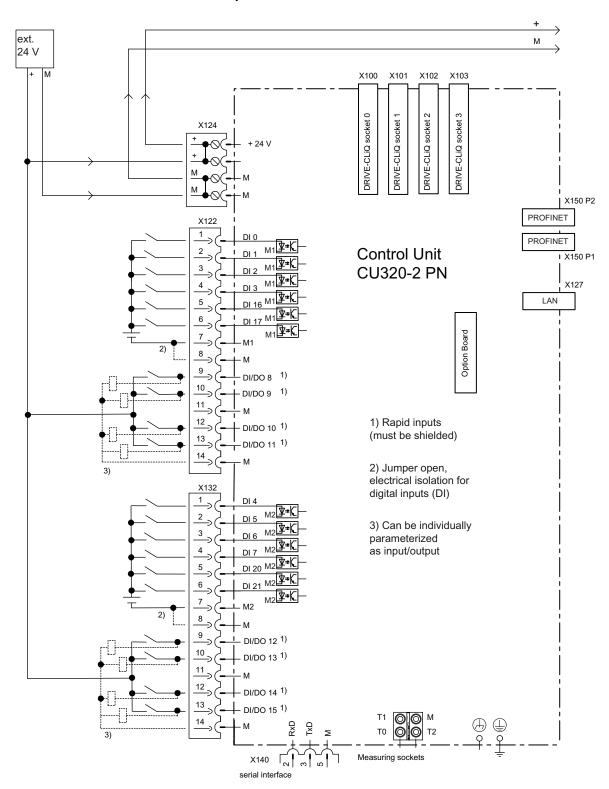


Figure 8-32 Connection example, CU320-2 PN

8.22 K95, Control Unit CU320-2 PN

Note

Power supply for the digital inputs

In the circuit example, the power for the digital inputs (terminals -X122 and -X132) is supplied from the internal 24 V supply of the Control Unit (terminal -X124).

The two groups of digital inputs (optocoupler inputs) each have a common reference potential (reference ground M1 or M2). To close the circuit when the internal 24 V supply is used, the reference grounds M1 / M2 are connected to internal ground (M).

If power is not supplied from the internal 24 V supply (terminal -X124), the jumper between grounds M1 and M or M2 and M must be removed in order to avoid potential current loops. The external ground must then be connected to terminals M1 and M2.

8.22.4 X55 customer terminal strip

8.22.4.1 Overview

Description

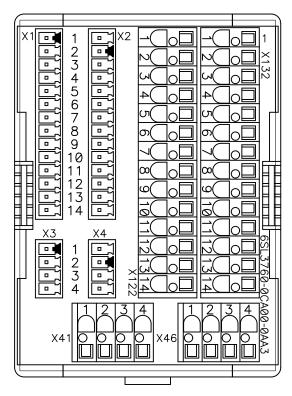


Figure 8-33 Option G55, customer terminal block -X55

The customer terminal block- X55 is installed in the cabinet together with the CU320-2 Control Unit. The digital inputs/outputs of the Control Unit can be used via terminal blocks - X55-X122 and -X55-X132.

Note

Internally wired interfaces

Interfaces -X1, -X2, -X3 and -X4 are wired within the cabinet and are not available for customer connections!

If the customer terminal block is ever replaced, connectors -X1 and -X2 must not be interchanged! Otherwise, "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" will malfunction!

8.22 K95, Control Unit CU320-2 PN

Note

Customer terminal block as standard

The customer terminal block is a standard component in the cabinet for the Motor Module Cabinet Module (chassis format). The digital inputs/outputs of the CU320-2 Control Unit on terminal blocks -X55-X122 and -X55-X132 can only be used in conjunction with a Control Unit.

Note

Power supply for the digital inputs

The two groups of digital inputs (DI0 to DI3, DI16 and DI17 or DI4 ... DI7, DI20 and DI21) each have a common reference potential per group (reference ground M1 or M2). To close the circuit when the internal 24 V supply is used, the reference grounds M1 / M2 are connected to internal ground (M).

If power is supplied from an external source, the jumper between ground M1 and M or M2 and M must be removed in order to avoid potential looping. The external ground must then be connected to terminals M1 or M2.

Pin assignment of customer terminal strip –X55

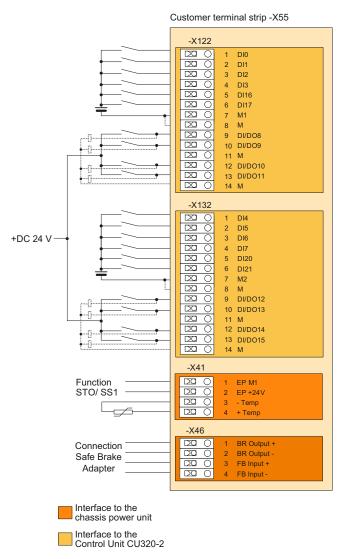


Figure 8-34 Connection assignment of customer terminal block -X55 (example: Motor Module Cabinet Module (chassis format))

8.22.4.2 X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor connection

Table 8- 29 Terminal block X41 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Function	Technical data	
1234	1	EP M1 (Enable Pulses)	Supply voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 V - 28.8 V) Current consumption: 10 mA	
	2	EP +24 V (Enable Pulses)	Signal propagation times: L → H: 100 μs; H → L: 1000 μs	
			The pulse inhibit function is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.	
	3	- Temp	Temperature sensor connection for motor temperature measurement:	
	4	+ Temp	KTY84-1C130, PTC, PT100	
Max. connecta	ble cross-se	ection: 2.5 mm ²		



Risk of electric shock!

Only temperature sensors that meet the safety isolation specifications stipulated in EN 61800-5-1 may be connected to terminals "+Temp" and "-Temp". If safe electrical separation cannot be guaranteed (for linear motors or third-party motors, for example), a Sensor Module External (SME120 or SME125) must be used.

Failure to observe these instructions can result in electric shock!

Note

Connectable sensor

The following sensors can be connected to the temperature sensor connection: KTY84-1C130 / PTC / PT100

NOTICE

Use shielded cables

The temperature sensor connection must be shielded. The shielding must be attached to the shield support of the Motor Module.

Note

KTY temperature sensor connected with the correct polarity

The KTY temperature sensor must be connected with the correct polarity. If the polarity is reversed, the sensor will not be able to detect if the motor overheats.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the associated Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Note

EP terminals only for Safety Integrated Basic Functions

The function of the EP terminals is only available when Safety Integrated Basic Functions are enabled.

8.22.4.3 X46 Brake control and monitoring

Table 8- 30 Terminal block X46 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Function	Technical data
1234	1	BR output +	This interface is intended for the connection of the
0000	2	BR output - Safe Brake Adapter.	Safe Brake Adapter.
	3	FB input +	
	4	FB input -	
Max. connec	Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm ²		

NOTICE

Cable length

The length of the connecting cable at terminal strip -X46 must not exceed 10 m, and the cable must not be brought out to outside the control cabinet or control cabinet group.

8.22.4.4 X122 digital inputs/outputs

Table 8- 31 Terminal block X122 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data
-(Co	1	DI 0	Voltage (max.): -30 V to +30 V DC
	2	DI 1	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V
	3	DI 2	Electrical isolation: reference potential is M1 terminal
	4	DI 3	Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 V to 30 V
5	5	DI 16	Low level: -30 V to +5 V
	6	DI 17	Input delay (typ.): for "0" → "1": 50 µs for "1" → "0": 150 µs
	7	M1	Reference potential for terminals 1 to 6
	8	M	Ground
	9	DI/DO 8	As input:
	10	DI/DO 9	Voltage: -30 V to +30 V DC
	11	M	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V
	12	DI/DO 10	Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 V to 30 V
	13	DI/DO 11	Low level: -30 V to +5 V
	14	M	DI/DO 8, 9, 10, and 11 are "rapid inputs" $^{2)}$ Input delay (typ.): for "0" \rightarrow "1": 5 μ s for "1" \rightarrow "0": 50 μ s
May		2.52	As output: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA continuous short circuit proof Output delay (typ./max.) ³): for "0" → "1": 150 µs / 400 µs for "1" → "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
Max. connecta	l ble cross-section	 on: 2.5 mm ²	ıvıaxımum ıamp ıoad: 5 W

¹⁾ DI: Digital input; DI/DO: Bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronic ground; M1: Ground reference

²⁾ The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark

³⁾ Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out} ; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

NOTICE

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

To enable the digital inputs (DI) to function, terminal M1 must be connected.

This is achieved by:

- 1. Providing the ground reference of the digital inputs, or
- 2. A jumper to terminal M (**Notice!** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

Note

Brief voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

8.22.4.5 X132 digital inputs/outputs

Table 8- 32 Terminal block X132 on the customer terminal block X55

	Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data
-(\n\\	1	DI 4	Voltage (max.): -30 V to +30 V DC
200	2	DI 5	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V
w	3	DI 6	Electrical isolation: reference potential is M2 terminal Level (incl. ripple)
	4	DI 7	High level: 15 V to 30 V
5	5	DI 20	Low level: -30 V to +5 V
	6	DI 21	Input delay (typ.): for "0" \rightarrow "1": 50 μ s for "1" \rightarrow "0": 150 μ s
	7	M2	Reference potential for terminals 1 to 6
	8	М	Ground
	9	DI/DO 12	As input:
	10	DI/DO 13	Voltage: -30 V to +30 V DC
	11	M	Typical current consumption: 9 mA at 24 V Level (incl. ripple)
	12	DI/DO 14	High level: 15 V to 30 V
	13	DI/DO 15	Low level: -30 V to +5 V
	14	M	DI/DO 12, 13, 14, and 15 are "rapid inputs" $^{2)}$ Input delay (typ.): for "0" \rightarrow "1": 5 μ s for "1" \rightarrow "0": 50 μ s
Max. connecta		2.5 7272	As output: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Continuous short circuit-proof Output delay (typ./max.) ³): for "0" → "1": 150 µs / 400 µs for "1" → "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W

¹⁾ DI: Digital input; DI/DO: Digital input/output; M: Electronics ground; M2: Ground reference

²⁾ The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark

³⁾ Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out} ; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

NOTICE

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

To enable the digital inputs (DI) to function, terminal M2 must be connected.

This is achieved by:

- 1. Providing the ground reference of the digital inputs, or
- 2. A jumper to terminal M (**Notice!** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

Note

Brief voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

8.22.5 X100 - X103 DRIVE-CLiQ interface

Table 8- 33 DRIVE-CLiQ interface X100 - X103

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
: □□ B	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	Α	+ (24 V)	Power supply
	В	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Connector type	e: R.I45 socket		

Connector type: RJ45 socket

Blanking plate for DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) Order number: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0

8.22.6 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

Table 8-34 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

	Pin	Designation	Technical data	
	1	TXP	Ethernet transmit data +	
	2	TXN	Ethernet transmit data -	
	3	RXP	Ethernet receive data +	
	4	Reserved, do not use		
	5	Reserved, do not use		
	6	RXN	Ethernet receive data -	
	7	Reserved, do not use		
	8	Reserved, do not use		
Connector type	Connector type: RJ45 socket			

Note

Support during commissioning

The X127 LAN interface supports commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

For diagnostic purposes, the X127 LAN interface features a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

Table 8- 35 LED statuses for the X127 LAN interface

LED	State	Description
Green	On	10 or 100 Mbit link available
	Off	Missing or faulty link
Yellow	On	Sending or receiving
	Off	No activity

8.22.7 X140 serial interface (RS232)

The AOP30 operator panel for operating/parameterizing the device can be connected via the serial interface. The interface is located on the underside of the Control Unit.

Table 8- 36 Serial interface (RS232) X140

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	2	RxD	Receive data
	3	TxD	Transmit data
9	5	Ground	Ground reference
Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector			

NOTICE

Connecting cable to the AOP30

The connecting cable to AOP30 may only contain the three contacts which are listed in the table; a completely assigned cable may not be used.

8.22.8 X150 P1/P2 PROFINET connection

Table 8- 37 X150 P1 and X150 P2 PROFINET

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	RXP	Receive data +
	2	RXN	Receive data -
	3	TXP	Transmit data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	TXN	Transmit data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	

8.22 K95, Control Unit CU320-2 PN

Note

Connecting cables

The PROFINET interfaces support Auto MDI(X). It is therefore possible to use both crossed and uncrossed cables to connect the devices.

For diagnostic purposes, the two PROFINET interfaces are each equipped with a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

Table 8- 38 LED states at the X150 P1/P2 PROFINET interface

LED	Color	State	Description	
Link port	-	Off	Missing or faulty link	
	Green	Steady light	10 or 100 Mbit link available	
Activity port	-	Off	No activity	
	Yellow	Flashing light	Data is being received or sent at port x	

8.22.9 Measuring sockets T0, T1, T2

Table 8- 39 Measuring sockets T0, T1, T2

	Socket	Function	Technical data
T0 = 6 11	T0	Measuring socket 0	Voltage: 0 5 V
	T1	Measuring socket 1	resolution: 8 bits
	T2	Measuring socket 2	Load current: max. 3 mA Continuous short-circuit proof
	М	Ground	The reference potential is terminal M
The measurement sockets are only suitable for bunch pin plugs with a diameter of 2 mm.			

Note

Support for commissioning and diagnostics

The measuring sockets support commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

8.22.10 CompactFlash card

Description

The computing capacity required and utilization of the CU320-2 Control Unit can be calculated with the SIZER engineering tool. The firmware options are supplied in license form, which are written to the CompactFlash card in the factory as license codes. The firmware options can also be enabled on-site, for example, if the required expanded performance is not known at the time of placing the order. You will need the serial number of the CompactFlash card and the order number of the firmware option to be enabled. With this information, you can purchase the associated license code from a license database and enable the firmware option.

The license code is only valid for the CompactFlash card declared and cannot be transferred to other CompactFlash cards.

NOTICE

Handling data on the CompactFlash Card

The data stored on the CompactFlash card must not be changed manually. Only the STARTER program can modify the data.

If you do not do this, all the data on the CompactFlash card will be lost (parameters, software license, etc.).

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed after the Control Unit CU320-2 has been switched off.

8.22.10.1 Using the memory card

Description

The STARTER commissioning tool is used to store configuration data centrally on the CompactFlash card. This ensures that if the Control Unit is defective, it can be simply replaced without the loss of any data. It also enables data to be stored on external storage media.

The data on the CompactFlash card can also be accessed using a CompactFlash card reader connected to a PC. This card reader is not included in the scope of supply.

System preconditions for installing STARTER V4.3.2

Hardware

The following minimum requirements must be met:

- Programming unit (PG) or PC
- Pentium III, at least 1 GHz, (> 1 GHz recommended)
- 1 GB RAM (2 GB recommended)
- Screen resolution 1024 × 768 pixels, 16-bit color depth
- Free hard disk space > 3 GB

Software

The following minimum requirements must be met when using STARTER without an existing STEP 7 installation:

Microsoft Internet Explorer V6.0 or higher

32-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP2
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 *) and SP3
- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise incl. SP1 (standard installation)

64-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise SP1 (standard installation)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2

STARTER setup is possible with native Windows versions with Asian languages only if the Windows XP or Windows 7 software is an MUI version.

Acrobat Reader V5.0 or higher is required to open the function diagrams in the online help.

Note

Preconditions in conjunction with STEP7

If STARTER is used in combination with other STEP7 components, the prerequisites for the S7 components shall apply.

^{*)} restricted test scope

Additional system requirements for installing a CompactFlash card reader

- Free USB connection
- CD-ROM drive (for installing the driver for the card reader)

8.22.10.2 Data functions

Once a card reader has been connected and successfully installed, the data on the CompactFlash card can be accessed in the same way as data stored on other PC storage media (e.g. access to hard disk, memory stick, etc.). To access its data, the CompactFlash card must first be removed from the Control Unit CU320-2 and inserted in the card reader connected to the PC.

The actual procedure for accessing the CompactFlash card data depends on the operating system used.

NOTICE

Handling the CompactFlash card

The data stored on the CompactFlash card must not be changed manually. Only the STARTER program can modify the data.

If you do not do this, all the data on the CompactFlash card will be lost (parameters, software license, etc.).

8.22.10.3 Saving the memory card parameter settings

Following commissioning, it is advisable to back up the data on the CompactFlash card to an external storage medium (hard disk, data carrier, etc.).

To do this, the CompactFlash card is read via a card reader connected to a PC. Ensure that all the files and directories are stored in the same form as on the CompactFlash card.

If necessary, the device status following commissioning of the drive can be restored by uploading the saved data to the CompactFlash card.

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert a CompactFlash card in a no-voltage state

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted or removed after the Control Unit CU320-2 has been switched off.

If you do not do this, all the data on the CompactFlash card will be lost (parameters, software license, etc.).

If you remove the CompactFlash Card in operation, alarm A01100 "CU: CompactFlash card removed" is output.

8.22.10.4 Slot for the CompactFlash card

Slot for the CompactFlash card



Figure 8-35 CompactFlash card slot

NOTICE

Only withdraw or insert a CompactFlash card in a no-voltage state

The CompactFlash card may only be removed and inserted when the Control Unit is in a voltage-free state; doing this during operation instead could result in a loss of data and, where applicable, a plant standstill.

The CompactFlash card may only be inserted as shown in the photo above (arrow at top right).

NOTICE

Observe ESD regulations

The CompactFlash card is an electrostatic sensitive component. ESD regulations must be observed when inserting and removing the card.

Note

Returned item

When returning a defective Control Unit, remove the CompactFlash card and keep it for insertion in the replacement unit. This is important otherwise the data on the CompactFlash card (parameters, firmware, licenses, and so on) may be lost.

8.23 L00, use in the first environment according to EN 61800-3, Category C2 (TN/TT systems)

Note

Only use SIEMENS CompactFlash cards

Please note that only SIEMENS CompactFlash cards can be used to operate the Control Unit.

8.23 L00, use in the first environment according to EN 61800-3, Category C2 (TN/TT systems)

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules

Description

To limit the emitted interference, the drive converters are equipped as standard with a radio interference suppression filter that conforms to the limits defined in Category C3. By using the optional line filter (option L00) and additional measures performed in the factory - which are required in the cabinets - then SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules also comply with the limit values for use in the first environment (category C2) according to EN 61800-3.

The fine filters are suitable for TN or TT systems with grounded neutral point.

Restrictions

Note

Option L00 not available for a parallel connection

Option L00, use in the first environment (category C2) according to EN 61800-3, is not available for Line Modules in a parallel connection.

Note

Additional information

The measures required on the customer's side, which must be performed to fulfill the limit values for use in the first environment (category C2) according to EN61800-3, are listed in the "Configuration Manual SINAMICS Low Voltage" on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.23 L00, use in the first environment according to EN 61800-3, Category C2 (TN/TT systems)

Note

Combining a line filter and line reactor

The optional line filter must always be combined with a line reactor, otherwise it cannot achieve its full filter effect.

Note

EMC shield bus

To allow the power cable shield to be connected in conformance with EMC requirements, an additional EMC shield bus (M70 option) is factory fitted at the converter input and output.

Note

It is not possible to combine insulation monitoring and line filter

It is not possible to use the insulation monitoring function (option L87) in conjunction with the optional line filter.

NOTICE

Maximum permissible motor cable length

The maximum permissible total motor cable length when using the line filters in conjunction with Basic Line Modules is 100 m.

The maximum permissible total motor cable length when using the line filter in connection with Smart Line Modules and Active Line Modules is 300 m.

Shielded motor cables must always be used.

8.24 L07, dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter comprises two components: the dv/dt reactor and the voltage-limiting network (Voltage Peak Limiter), which cuts off the voltage peaks and feeds back the energy into the DC link. The dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is designed for use with motors for which the voltage strength of the insulation system is unknown or insufficient.

The dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the voltage load on the motor cables to values in accordance with the limit value curve A in compliance with IEC/TS 60034-25.

The rate of voltage rise is limited to < 1600 V/µs, the peak voltages are limited to < 1400 V.

Note

Operation of standard motors with standard insulation and without insulated bearing is possible on SINAMICS converters up to line supply voltages of 690 V.

Restrictions

The following constraints should be noted when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to no more than 150 Hz.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
 - Shielded cables: max. 100 m (e.g. Protodur NYCWY)
 - Unshielded cables: max. 150 m (e.g. Protodur NYY)

/!\WARNING

Load at low output frequencies

When a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the drive must not be operated in uninterrupted duty with an output frequency lower than 10 Hz.

A maximum load duration of 5 minutes at an output frequency lower than 10 Hz is permissible, provided that the drive is operated with an output frequency higher than 10 Hz for a period of 5 minutes thereafter.

Uninterrupted duty at an output frequency less than 10 Hz can produce thermal overload and destroy the dv/dt filter.

/ WARNING

Maximum pulse frequency

When a dv/dt filter compact is used, the pulse frequency of the Motor Module must not exceed 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz. If a higher pulse frequency is set, then this could destroy the dv/dt filter.

NOTICE

Do not operate without a connected motor

When a dv/dt filter compact plus voltage peak limiter is used, the drive must not be operated without a connected motor, otherwise the filter can be destroyed.

Note

Setting pulse frequencies

It is permissible to set pulse frequencies in the range between the rated pulse frequency and the relevant maximum pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used.

Table 8- 40 Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus VPL is used for units with a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz

Order no. 6SL3720	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 2 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter is used		
Line voltage 380 480 V 3 AC (DC link voltage 510 750 V DC)					
1TE32-1AAx	110	210	4 kHz		
1TE32-6AAx	132	260	4 kHz		
1TE33-1AAx	160	310	4 kHz		
1TE33-8AAx	200	380	4 kHz		
1TE35-0AAx	250	490	4 kHz		

Table 8- 41 Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus VPL is used for units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz

Order no. 6SL3720	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter is used
		ine voltage 380 480 V 3 AC C link voltage 510 750 V DC)	
1TE36-1AAx	315	605	2.5 kHz
1TE37-5AAx	400	745	2.5 kHz
1TE38-4AAx	450	840	2.5 kHz
1TE41-0AAx	560	985	2.5 kHz
1TE41-2AAx	710	1260	2.5 kHz
1TE41-4AAx	800	1405	2.5 kHz
		ine voltage 500 690 V 3 AC C link voltage 675 1080 V DC)
1TG28-5AAx	75	85	2.5 kHz
1TG31-0AAx	90	100	2.5 kHz
1TG31-2AAx	110	120	2.5 kHz
1TG31-5AAx	132	150	2.5 kHz
1TG31-8AAx	160	175	2.5 kHz
1TG32-2AAx	200	215	2.5 kHz
1TG32-6AAx	250	260	2.5 kHz
1TG33-3AAx	315	330	2.5 kHz
1TG34-1AAx	400	410	2.5 kHz
1TG34-7AAx	450	465	2.5 kHz
1TG35-8AAx	560	575	2.5 kHz
1TG37-4AAx	710	735	2.5 kHz
1TG38-1AAx	800	810	2.5 kHz
1TG38-8AAx	900	910	2.5 kHz
1TG41-0AAx	1000	1025	2.5 kHz
1TG41-3AAx	1200	1270	2.5 kHz

Commissioning

During commissioning, the dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be logged on using STARTER or via the AOP30 operator panel (p0230 = 2).

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

Parameter p0230 is reset when the factory setting is established. The parameter has to be reset when recommissioning.

8.25 L08/L09, motor reactor/2 motor reactors in series

8.25 L08/L09, motor reactor/2 motor reactors in series

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Booksize Cabinet Kits (L08/L09)
- Motor Module in chassis format (L08)

Description

Motor reactors reduce the voltage stress on the motor windings by reducing the voltage gradients at the motor terminals that occur when motors are fed from drive converters. At the same time, the capacitive charge/discharge currents that also occur on the output of the Motor Module when long motor cables are used are reduced.

In addition, a motor reactor must be used for parallel connection of Motor Modules in chassis format when a motor with a single-winding system is being supplied and the required minimum motor cable lengths cannot be maintained.

With option L08, one motor reactor is used; with option L09, two motor reactors switched in series are used to enable the use of a longer motor cable.



NOTICE

Hot surfaces

The surface temperature of the motor reactors can exceed 80 °C.

Note

Due to limited space, only one motor reactor can be used for the Booksize Cabinet Kits with Double Motor Modules.

Motor cable lengths

Table 8- 42 Maximum motor cable lengths when using motor reactors for Booksize Cabinet Kits

Order no.	Power	Current	Maximum motor cable length in m					
6SL3720-	in kW	in A	without motor reactors		With 1 motor reactor (L08)		With 2 motor reactors (L09)	
			Shielded	Unshielded	Shielded	Unshielded	Shielded	Unshielded
2TE13-0AB0	2 x 1.6	2 x 3	50	75	100	150	-	-
2TE15-0AB0	2 x 2.7	2 x 5	50	75	100	150	-	-
2TE21-0AB0	2 x 4.8	2 x 9	50	75	135	200	-	-
2TE21-8AB0	2 x 9.7	2 x 18	50	75	160	240	-	-
1TE13-0AB0	1.6	3	50	75	100	150	-	-
1TE15-0AB0	2.7	5	50	75	100	150	-	-
1TE21-0AB0	4.8	9	50	75	135	200	-	-
1TE21-8AB0	9.7	18	70	100	160	240	320	480
1TE23-0AB0	16	30	100	150	190	280	375	560
1TE24-5AB0	24	45	100	150	200	300	400	600
1TE26-0AB0	32	60	100	150	200	300	400	600
1TE28-5AB0	46	85	100	150	200	300	400	600
1TE31-3AB0	71	132	100	150	200	300	400	600
1TE32-8AB0	107	200	100	150	200	300	400	600

Note

Maximum motor cable length

When motor reactors are used, the maximum motor cable lengths for Motor Modules in chassis format is 300 m (shielded) or 450 m (unshielded).

8.26 L10, dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter

Motor connection

If the L08 / L09 option is used with Booksize Cabinet Kits, the motor cables are connected to terminal block -X1 (for a Double Motor Module: -X1, -X2).

Table 8-43 Maximum conductor cross-section when using motor reactors for Booksize Cabinet Kits

Order number 6SL3720-	Power in kW	Maximum connection cross section
2TE13-0AB0	2 x 1.6	6 mm²
2TE15-0AB0	2 x 2.7	6 mm²
2TE21-0AB0	2 x 4.8	6 mm²
2TE21-8AB0	2 x 9.7	6 mm²
1TE13-0AB0	1.6	6 mm²
1TE15-0AB0	2.7	6 mm²
1TE21-0AB0	4.8	6 mm²
1TE21-8AB0	9.7	6 mm²
1TE23-0AB0	16	6 mm²
1TE24-5AB0	24	16 mm²
1TE26-0AB0	32	16 mm²
1TE28-5AB0	46	35 mm²
1TE31-3AB0	71	95 mm²
1TE32-8AB0	107	95 mm²

8.26 L10, dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

· Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter comprises two components: the dv/dt reactor and the voltage-limiting network (Voltage Peak Limiter), which limits the voltage peaks to the level of the DC link voltage and returns energy to the DC link.

The dv/dt filters plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be used for motors for which the proof voltage of the insulation system is unknown or insufficient. Standard motors of the 1LA5, 1LA6, and 1LA8 series only require them at supply voltages > 500 V + 10%.

The dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the voltage gradient to values < $500 \text{ V/}\mu\text{s}$ and the typical voltage peaks to the values below (for motor cable lengths of < 300 m for frame sizes FX, GX, HX or < 150 m for frame size JX):

- < 1000 V at Uline < 575 V
- < 1250 V at 660 V < U_{line} < 690 V.

Option L10 is installed in an additional cabinet with a width of 600 mm that is located on the right-hand side of the Motor Module.



Maximum pulse frequency

When a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the pulse frequency of the Power Module must not exceed 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz. If a higher pulse frequency is set, then this could destroy the dv/dt filter.

NOTICE

Do not operate without a connected motor

When a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used, the drive must not be operated without a connected motor, otherwise the filter can be destroyed.

Note

Setting pulse frequencies

It is permissible to set pulse frequencies in the range between the rated pulse frequency and the relevant maximum pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used. When doing so, take into account the "Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency; refer to the Technical data.

Note

Parts of option L10 do not have nickel-plated copper busbars.

Restrictions

The following restrictions must be taken into account when a duv/dt filter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to no more than 150 Hz.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
 - Shielded cables: Max. 300 m (frame sizes FX, GX, HX) / 150 m (frame size JX)
 - Unshielded cables: Max. 450 m (frame sizes FX, GX, HX) / 225 m (frame size JX)

Table 8-44 Maximum permissible motor cable lengths for the DC link voltage 510 - 720 V DC

Frame sizes FX, GX, HX Shielded cable max. 300 m or unshielded cable max. 450 m	Frame size JX Shielded cable max. 150 m or unshielded cable max. 225 m	
6SL3720-1TE32-1AAx	6SL3720-1TE41-0AAx	
6SL3720-1TE32-6AAx	6SL3720-1TE41-2AAx	
6SL3720-1TE33-1AAx	6SL3720-1TE41-4AAx	
6SL3720-1TE33-8AAx	-	
6SL3720-1TE35-0AAx	-	
6SL3720-1TE36-1AAx	-	
6SL3720-1TE37-5AAx	-	
6SL3720-1TE38-4AAx	-	

Table 8- 45 Maximum permissible motor cable lengths for the DC link voltage 675 - 1035 V DC

Frame sizes FX, GX, HX Shielded cable max. 300 m or unshielded cable max. 450 m	Frame size JX Shielded cable max. 150 m or unshielded cable max. 225 m
6SL3720-1TG28-5AAx	6SL3720-1TG37-4AAx
6SL3720-1TG31-0AAx	6SL3720-1TG38-1AAx
6SL3720-1TG31-2AAx	6SL3720-1TG38-8AAx
6SL3720-1TG31-5AAx	6SL3720-1TG41-0AAx
6SL3720-1TG31-8AAx	6SL3720-1TG41-3AAx
6SL3720-1TG32-2AAx	-
6SL3720-1TG32-6AAx	-
6SL3720-1TG33-3AAx	-
6SL3720-1TG34-1AAx	-
6SL3720-1TG34-7AAx	-
6SL3720-1TG35-8AAx	-

Commissioning

During commissioning, the dv/dt filter must be logged on using STARTER or via the AOP30 operator panel (p0230 = 2).

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

Parameter p0230 is reset when the factory setting is established. The parameter has to be reset when recommissioning.

8.27 L13, main contactor for Line Connection Modules < 800 A

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

The Line Connection Modules with option L43 (for Basic Line Modules) include a manual fuse switch disconnector as a standard feature for rated currents up to 800 A. Option L13 is needed if a switching element is also required for disconnecting the cabinet from the infeed. In this case, the contactor is activated from the connected Line Module.

- In conjunction with option L42 (for Active Line Module):
 - For a rated current < 605 A (380 to 480 V 3 AC) or < 575 A (500 to 690 V 3 AC), the main contactor is a standard feature in the Active Interface Module of the Active Line Module.
 - For a rated current of 605 A (380 to 480 V 3 AC) or 575 A and 730 A (500 to 690 V 3 AC), option L13 (main contactor) is a standard feature in the Line Connection Module.
 - For a rated current > 605 A (380 to 480 V 3 AC) or > 730 A (500 to 690 V 3 AC), a circuit breaker is a standard feature in the Line Connection Module.
- In conjunction with option L43 (for Basic Line Module):
 - For a rated current < 800 A, option L13 (main contactor) can be ordered.
 - For a rated current > 800 A, a circuit breaker is a standard feature in the Line Connection Module.
- In conjunction with option L44 (for Smart Line Module):
 - For a rated current < 800 A, option L13 (main contactor) is a standard feature in the Line Connection Module.
 - For a rated current > 800 A, a circuit breaker is a standard feature in the Line Connection Module.

<u>/!</u>_warning

Only switch in a no-current condition

Do not switch the main contactor unless it is disconnected from the power supply!

8.28 L21, Operation in an IT system

X50 "main contactor" checkback contact

Table 8- 46 Terminal block X50 "main contactor" checkback contact

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data	
4	NO	Max. load current: 10 A	
5	NC	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC	
6	СОМ	Max. switching power: 250 VA Required minimum load: ≥ 1 mA	
Max. connectable	Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²		

¹⁾ NO: Normally-open contact, NC: Normally-closed contact, COM: Center contact

8.28 L21, Operation in an IT system

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 cabinet modules:

Line Connection Modules

Description

The option includes the installation of surge arresters and upstream fuses for each phase. The signaling contacts of the monitoring of the surge arresters and the fuses are connected in series and connected to a customer interface.

For this option, the connection clips to the interference suppression capacitor are removed from the respective Line Modules and included in the accessory kit.

Installation of the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor for operation in a TN system

When operating the devices in a TN system, the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor removed in the factory, must again be installed in the following Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules (the connection clip is located behind the fan for frame sizes HX and JX)
- Active Line Modules (connection clip in the Active Interface Module)

The connection links are included in the accessories pack for the cabinets.

For the positions of the connection links in the respective Cabinet Modules, see the chapter "Connection of the Cabinet Modules to non-grounded systems (IT systems)".

X700 - monitoring surge arresters and fuses

Table 8- 47 Terminal block X700, monitoring surge arresters and fuses

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data
1	NC	Max. load current:
4	NC	- At 24 V DC: 1 A - At 230 V AC: 0.5 A
Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²		

¹⁾ NC: NC contact

Reason why the monitoring function responds

After the monitoring function responds at terminal block X700:1/4, the cause must be identified:

- Surge arresters (-A703, -A704-, A705) have a display showing the operating state.
- The upstream fuses (Q700) are monitored using phase failure monitoring (-B700), which
 has an LED as operating display. In the event of a fault as a result of a defective fuse, the
 fuses (-Q700) must be checked and may have replaced once the fault cause has been
 eliminated.

Replacing surge arresters

The surge arrestor involved must be replaced in the case of a fault:

- Line Connection Modules 3 AC 380 480 V: Remove the insert (protective module) by withdrawing the defective insert and inserting the replacement part.
- Line Connection Modules 3 AC 500 690 V: Replacing the complete surge arrester.

8.29 L22, supplied as standard without line reactor

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules, only with option L43 (for Basic Line Modules)
- Smart Line Modules

8.30 L25, circuit breaker in withdrawable unit design

Description

If the Basic Line Module or Smart Line Module is supplied via a separate transformer, or if the supply system has a sufficiently low supply short-circuit power, the standard line reactor can be omitted.

For the Line Connection Module with option L22, the standard line reactor is not supplied in conjunction with the Basic Line Module (option L43).

The Smart Line Module with option L22 is supplied without a standard line reactor.

8.30 L25, circuit breaker in withdrawable unit design

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

The circuit breaker in withdrawable unit design is available as an option for Line Connection Modules with rated currents > 800 A. This breaker replaces the standard built-in circuit breaker.

The draw-out circuit breaker features a visible isolating distance.

X50 "circuit breaker" checkback contact

Table 8- 48 Terminal block X50 "Circuit-breaker" checkback contact

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data
1	NC	"Circuit breaker" checkback contacts
2	NO	Max. load current: 3 A
3 COM Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC		Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC
Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²		

¹⁾ NC: Normally-closed contact, NO: Normally-open contact, COM: Center contact

Note

Additional information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the circuit breaker, as well as the factory-installed options, can be found in the accompanying operating instructions, These operating instructions are available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.31 L34, output-side circuit breaker

8.31.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The option L34 (output-side circuit breaker) can be used to disconnect the motor terminals from the converter.

It is pre-wired and installed in a separate cabinet.



/ WARNING

Danger to life as a result of hazardous voltages for rotating permanent-magnet synchronous motors

At the motor terminals, a rotating, permanent-field synchronous motor generates a voltage that is proportional to the speed. The motor terminal voltage is always applied to the converter output terminals, the DC link and the connected components. Option L34 can be used to isolate a circuit in the event of a fault, or for maintenance work.

Note

Additional information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the circuit breaker can be found in the supplementary option description. This description is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

The Option L34 (output-side circuit breaker) is required in the following applications where permanent-field motors are used:

- Drives with a high moment of inertia, which require a longer period of time to coast down and generate a voltage at the motor terminals during this time.
- Mechanically coupled auxiliary drives, which can be driven together by a main drive.
- When carrying out maintenance and repairs on a converter if the motor cannot be stopped safely (e.g. using a mechanical brake).
- During high field weakening in conjunction with a suitable level of overvoltage protection, which suppresses the applied overvoltage effectively until the switch trips.

8.31 L34, output-side circuit breaker

Features

Option L34 is completely pre-wired. It is controlled using a built-in TM31 Terminal Module. To control this, the parameterization specified in the following Chapter "Parameterization" must be made during commissioning.

Note

After setting the parameters, the user must ensure that the switch is operating correctly.

For this reason, the output-side breaker is automatically controlled via the converter.

Note

The "ON" pushbutton directly located at the output switch is only available with the full functional scope, if the following preconditions are fulfilled:

- · there is no alarm or fault present,
- the customer remote-OFF is set to "enable".

To close the output-side breaker, the following conditions must be fulfilled:

- There must be no faults on the Motor Module.
- There must be no OFF command active on the Motor Module.
- The Motor Module must receive an ON command.
- Pre-charging of the Motor Module must be complete.

The output-side breaker is opened under the following conditions:

- There is an active fault on the Motor Module.
- The power supply at the auxiliary power system for option L34 (230 V AC/24 V DC) fails.
- The local "OFF" button on the output-side breaker is pressed.

Note

Pressing the "OFF" button directly on the output-side breaker will switch the Motor Module off (pulse suppression). The converter displays "External fault 3". The breaker can be closed again only by sending a new ON command via the Motor Module.

Note

To reduce the number of switching cycles, the output-side breaker will not open if the Motor Module receives an "OFF" command (OFF1, OFF2, OFF3).

If they are available, remote off switches (for optional use by customers) for disconnecting the output-side breaker must be connected accordingly via the undervoltage coil.



/!\warning

Maintaining the output switch

The user should note and monitor the permissible number of switching cycles specified for the output-side breaker. Once the permissible number of switching cycles has been reached, it is imperative that breaker maintenance be carried out. Otherwise, it can no longer be guaranteed that the breaker will function properly in the event of a fault.

8.31.2 Switching cycles for the output-side circuit breaker

Table 8- 49 Switching cycles for the output-side circuit breaker, 510 ... 750 V DC

Order number 6SL3720-	Unit rating [kW]	Rated output current [A]	Switching cycles with pulse inhibit	Switching cycles under load (without pulse inhibit)
1TE32-1AAx	110	210	20000	10000
1TE32-6AAx	132	260	20000	10000
1TE33-1AAx	160	310	20000	10000
1TE33-8AAx	200	380	20000	10000
1TE35-0AAx	250	490	10000	5000
1TE36-1AAx	315	605	10000	5000
1TE37-5AAx	400	745	10000	3000
1TE38-4AAx	450	840	3000	1500
1TE41-0AAx	560	985	3000	1500
1TE41-2AAx	720	1260	3000	1500
1TE41-4AAx	800	1405	3000	1500

8.31 L34, output-side circuit breaker

Table 8- 50 Switching cycles for the output-side circuit breaker, 675 ... 1080 V DC

Order number 6SL3720-	Unit rating [kW]	Rated output current [A]	Switching cycles with pulse inhibit	Switching cycles under load (without pulse inhibit)
1TG28-5AAx	75	85	20000	10000
1TG31-0AAx	90	100	20000	10000
1TG31-2AAx	110	120	20000	10000
1TG31-5AAx	132	150	20000	10000
1TG31-8AAx	160	175	20000	10000
1TG32-2AAx	200	215	20000	10000
1TG32-6AAx	250	260	20000	10000
1TG33-3AAx	315	330	20000	10000
1TG34-1AAx	400	410	10000	5000
1TG34-7AAx	450	465	10000	5000
1TG35-8AAx	560	575	10000	5000
1TG37-4AAx	710	735	10000	3000
1TG38-1AAx	800	810	3000	1500
1TG38-8AAx	900	910	3000	1500
1TG41-0AAx	1000	1025	3000	1500
1TG41-3AAx	1200	1270	3000	1500

8.31.3 Overview diagram of option L34

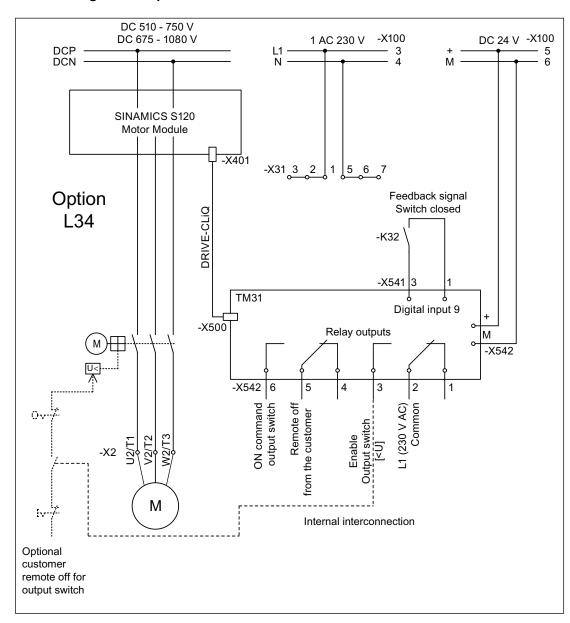


Figure 8-36 Overview diagram of option L34

8.31 L34, output-side circuit breaker

8.31.4 Parameter assignment

8.31.4.1 Parameterization with script

A script can be used for the automatic parameterization, which automatically makes the parameter settings in STARTER. The script and the handling instructions for executing the script are provided on the customer DVD, which is supplied with the device when it is shipped.

Note

Additional information

The script and the handling instructions for executing the script are provided on the customer DVD in folder "99 SOFTWARE\SCRIPT_option_L34". The customer DVD is supplied with the device when it is shipped.

8.31.4.2 Parameterization with free function blocks

The free function blocks are used for the parameterization described in this section. You must start by activating them.

Activating the free function blocks

To be able to work with the free function blocks, they must first be activated/enabled:

- If you are not certain that the project in the STARTER corresponds to the drive configuration, you should start with an upload (load data to PG).
- In Offline mode -> Right-click the drive object -> Properties -> Activate the "Free function blocks" in the "Drive Properties" interactive screenform under "Select function modules".
- You will then need to perform a download (load data to the target device) so that the "Free function blocks" function module is activated in the drive.

Setting the sampling time for run-time group 0 of the free function blocks

To activate the interconnection, parameterization (in the expert list) must be carried out as follows (in this example, it has been assumed that the drive is called "Drive_1" in the project navigator):

Table 8-51 Setting the sampling time for run-time group 0 of the free function blocks

Parameterization	Description
(Drive_1) p20000[0] = 3	The sampling time of the free function blocks run-time group 0 is
	classified as 3 (= 3 x r20002).

Interconnection for "Enable output-side breaker"

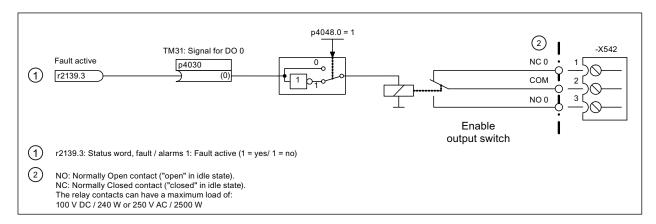


Figure 8-37 Interconnection for "Enable output-side breaker"

The breaker must also trip in the event of a converter fault. This is achieved using the specified interconnection.

To activate the interconnection, parameterization (in the expert list) must be carried out as follows (in this example, it has been assumed that the drive is called "Drive_1" in the project navigator):

Table 8-52 Parameterization for the interconnection for "Enable output-side breaker"

Parameterization	Description
(TM31) p4030 = (Drive_1) r2139.3	The "Fault active" drive signal is output at digital output 0 (DO 0) of the TM31.
(TM31) p4048.0 = 1 = inverted	Digital output 0 (DO 0) is inverted.

Interconnection for "Enable operation"

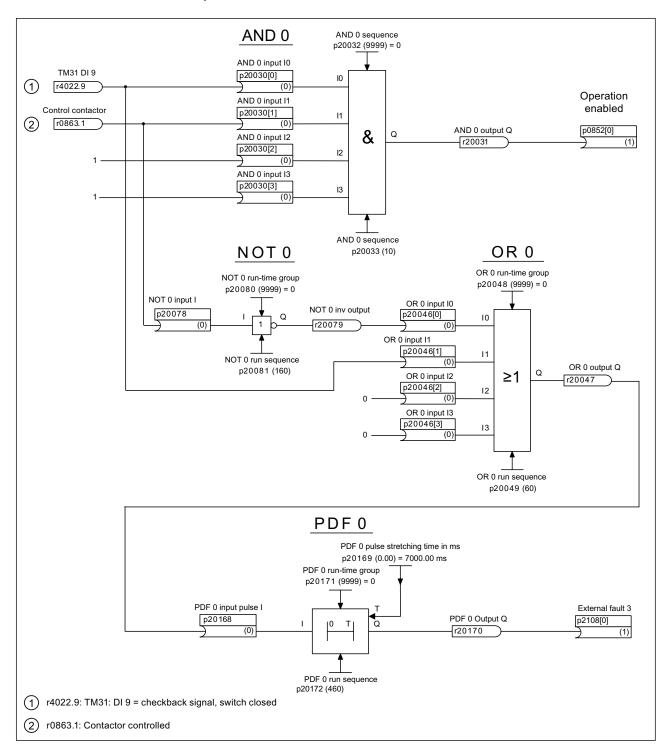


Figure 8-38 Interconnection for "Enable operation"

You must make sure that the converter only enables the pulses when the breaker is closed. This is achieved using the specified interconnection.

To activate the interconnection, parameterization (in the expert list) must be carried out as follows (in this example, it has been assumed that the drive is called "Drive_1" in the project navigator):

Table 8- 53 Parameterization for the interconnection for "Operation enabled"

Parameterization	Description
(Drive_1) p20161 = 0	The "switch on delay 0 (PDE 0)" function block is assigned to run-time group 0.
(Drive_1) p20158 = (Drive_1) r0863.1	Input pulse I of the function block "Switch on delay 0 (PDE 0)" of the drive is interconnected using the "control contactor" drive signal.
(Drive_1) p20159 = 4000.00	The pulse delay time of function block "Switch on delay 0 (PDE 0) of the drive is set to 4000.00 ms.
(Drive_1) p20146 = 0	The "Pulse generator 1 (MFP 1)" function block is assigned to run-time group 0.
(Drive_1) p20143 = (Drive_1) r20160	Input pulse I of function block "Pulse generator 1 (MFP 1)" is interconnected with output Q of function block "Switch on delay 0 (PDE 0)".
(Drive_1) p20144 = 5000.00	The pulse duration of the "Pulse generator 1 (MFP 1)" function block is set to 5000.00 ms.
(Drive_1) p20048 = 0	The "OR 0" function block is assigned to run-time group 0.
(Drive_1) p20046[0] = (Drive_1) r20145	Output pulse Q of function block "Pulse generator 1 (MFP 1)" of the drive is interconnected at input I0 of the "OR 0" function block.
(Drive_1) p20046[1] = (TM31) r4022.9	Input signal DI9, terminal X541.3 of TM31 is interconnected at input I1 of function block "OR 0".
(Drive_1) p20046[2] = 0	A "0" signal is interconnected at input I2 of function block "OR 0"
(Drive_1) p20046[3] = 0	A "0" signal is interconnected at input I3 of function block "OR 0".
(Drive_1) p20032 = 0	The "AND 0" function block is assigned to run-time group 0.
(Drive_1) p20030[0] = (Drive_1) r20047	Output signal Q of function block "OR 0" of the drive is interconnected at input I0 of function block "AND 0" of the drive.
(Drive_1) p20030[1] = (Drive_1) r0863.1	The "control contactor" signal of the drive is interconnected at input I1 of the "AND 0" function block of the drive.
(Drive_1) p20030[2] = 1	A "1" signal is interconnected at input I2 of function block "AND 0" of the drive.
(Drive_1) p20030[3] = 1	A "1" signal is interconnected at input I3 of function block "AND 0" of the drive.
(Drive_1) p0860[0] = (Drive_1) r20031	The output signal of the "AND 0" function block of the drive is used for the "Line contactor feedback" signal of the drive.
(Drive_1) p0852[0] = (TM31) r4022.9	Input signal DI9, terminal X541.3 of TM31 is used for the signal "enable operation" of the drive.
(Drive_1) p0861 = 5000	The monitoring time of the line contactor is set to 5000 ms.

8.31 L34, output-side circuit breaker

Interconnection for "ON command"

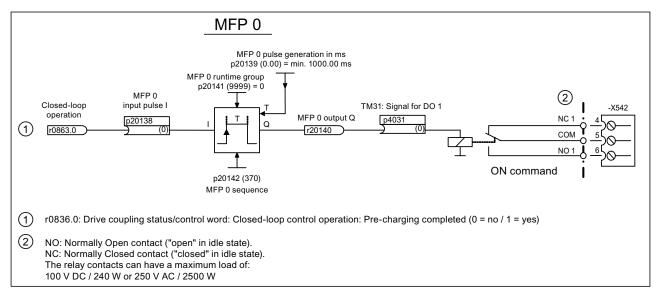


Figure 8-39 Interconnection for "ON command"

The drive must only be switched on when a DC link voltage is available. This is achieved using the specified interconnection.

To activate the interconnection, parameterization (in the expert list) must be carried out as follows (in this example, it has been assumed that the drive is called "Drive_1" in the project navigator):

Table 8- 54 Parameterization for the interconnection for "On command"

Parameterization	Description
(Drive_1) p20141 = 0	The "Pulse generator 0 (MFP 0)" function block is assigned to run-time group 0.
(Drive_1) p20138 = (Drive_1) r0863.0	The "Control operation" signal of the drive is interconnected at the input of the "Pulse generator 0 (MFP 0)" function block.
(Drive_1) p20139 = 5000.00	The pulse duration of the "Pulse generator 0 (MFP 0)" function block is set to 5000.00 ms.
(TM31) p4031 = (Drive_1) r20140	The output signal of the "Pulse generator 0 (MPF 0)" function block of the drive is output to digital output 1 (DO 1) of the TM31.

8.31.4.3 Parameterization with DCC (Drive Control Chart)

The parameter settings described in section "Parameterization with free function blocks" can also be achieved using DCC. For this purpose the interconnections shown must be simulated with the corresponding DCC blocks.

8.32 L37, DC interface incl. pre-charging input circuit for the relevant DC link capacitance

8.32.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Booksize Cabinet Kits
- · Chassis format Motor Modules

Description

If the Motor Module is to be disconnected or reconnected to the DC link of a drive line-up while the other Motor Modules and Line Modules remain in operation, this can be accomplished via the DC interface.

8.32.2 DC interface incl. pre-charging for Booksize Cabinet Kits

8.32.2.1 Important safety precautions

The Motor Module can be serviced after it has been disconnected from the DC busbar via the DC interface and after the capacitor discharge time has elapsed. However, the following safety precautions must be observed:



/!\DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Once the DC busbar and the Motor Module in booksize format have been disconnected by means of the fuse switch disconnector (-Q7), the following voltages continue to be present in the adjacent Motor Modules in booksize format in the Cabinet Module:

- Up to 800 V on the DC busbar (protected against accidental contact)
- Line voltage (380 to 480 V 3 ph. AC) via the auxiliary power supply system or 230 V 2 ph. AC downstream of the transformers for the fan supply
- Up to 230 V AC via the auxiliary power supply system or via direct infeed for SITOP and fan supply
- 24 V DC on the auxiliary power supply system (electronics power supply)
- On the motor connection (e.g. regenerative voltage due to residual speed)

8.32 L37, DC interface incl. pre-charging input circuit for the relevant DC link capacitance



/ WARNING

Hazardous electrical voltage

The cabinet units are operated with high voltages.

All connection work must be carried out when the cabinet is de-energized!

All work on the cabinet must be carried out by trained personnel only.

Work on an open cabinet must be carried out with extreme caution because external supply voltages may be present. The power and control terminals may be live even when the motor is not running.

Due to the DC link capacitors, dangerously high voltage levels are still present inside the cabinet up to 5 minutes after it has been disconnected. For this reason, the cabinet should not be opened until a reasonable period of time has elapsed.

For this reason, you must take the following safety precautions when carrying out work on the Cabinet Module after the DC interface has been switched off:

- Observe the "five safety rules" for all electrical work.
- Only commission qualified specialists to carry out the work.
- Ensure that no voltage is present at the measuring points provided in the cabinet.
- Check that there is no voltage on the motor connections.
- When working close to the DC busbar in the cabinet, take care to avoid any contact with the DC busbar!
- When replacing components, make sure that no screws or small parts fall into the cabinet.
- Remove the fan fuse and fuse for the 24 V DC power supply

Note

Compliance with legal regulations

You must observe the applicable legal regulations when carrying out all work!



/!\DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

The following voltages are normally present on the auxiliary power supply system:

- 380 to 480 V 2 ph. AC for fan supply
- 230 V 1 AC
- 24 V DC for electronics power supply

8.32.2.2 DC interface, principle of operation

The DC interface connects/disconnects the DC busbar and the Motor Module in the Cabinet Kit. This option is implemented with a pre-charging input circuit. A fuse switch disconnector, which is installed as a standard feature between the Motor Module and the DC busbar, as well as pre-charging resistors and contactor disconnectors connect the Motor Module with the DC busbar.

The contactor disconnector is triggered via a time relay, which is activated by the switch installed in the door.



Switch when not under load

The DC interface should only be switched and the fuse switch disconnector should only be unplugged when not under load! A checkback signal is transferred via the internal interconnection to the CU320-2 Control Unit which locks out switching under load.

8.32.2.3 Commissioning the DC interface with option K90/K95

With option K90/K95, a feedback signal contact from the fuse switch disconnector is connected to digital input 3 of the Control Unit (this connection is realized in the factory).

NOTICE

Changes to the parameter assignment

If changes are made to the factory-set parameters, you must verify that the "Infeed ready" feedback signal is connected to digital input 3 on the Control Unit (p0864 = r722.3).

If parameter p0864 is not wired to the feedback signal, then the switch can be operated under load. This can shorten the service life of the switch.

8.32.2.4 Commissioning the DC coupling without option K90/K95

If the cabinet does not contain a Control Unit (option K90 / K95), terminal -X41.12 of the DC coupling must be connected by the customer to a digital input of the Control Unit assigned to the controlled Motor Module. The 24 V DC supply for the feedback signal is provided via terminal -X41.11 (see circuit diagram).

The digital input to which the checkback contact is assigned must be connected to the "Infeed operation" parameter (p0864) of the drive object [Drive_1].

Example of digital input 3 on the Control Unit:

[Drive_1] p0864 = [CU] r722.3

The interconnection can be made with the STARTER commissioning tool or the AOP30 operator panel (option K08).

8.32 L37, DC interface incl. pre-charging input circuit for the relevant DC link capacitance

NOTICE

Danger from switching under load when feedback signal wiring is missing

If parameter p0864 is not wired to the feedback signal, it is possible to operate the switch under load. This can shorten the service life of the switch.

Note

Additional information

The digital input parameter assignment is described in the List Manual and S120 Commissioning Manual.

8.32.3 DC interface incl. pre-charging for Motor Modules in the chassis format

The main component of option L37 is a switch disconnector. This switch disconnector is installed on the busbar between the Motor Module and the DC busbar. This option also includes a pre-charging switch for the DC link capacitors of the relevant Motor Module so that it can be switched in to the pre-charged DC busbar.

This switch can be actuated using an operating lever but only when the cabinet door is closed.

As an air guide, option L37 also includes option M60 (additional shock protection).

Note

This option is not used for switching the module on and off during operation.

Frame sizes FX and GX each contain two fuses, while frame size JX contains four fuses. Depending on the current carrying capacity, frame size HX contains either two or four fuses.

Four pre-charging resistors are also used in frame size JX for higher power ratings. For more detailed information, see the circuit diagrams.

Note

With option K90 (Control Unit), a checkback contact is wired from terminal -X41:12 to digital input 3 on customer terminal block -X55 to commission the DC interface via parameter interconnection (see "Commissioning the DC interface"). A jumper to the reference potential is also used.

8.32.3.1 Important safety precautions

The Motor Module can be serviced after it has been disconnected from the DC busbar via the DC interface and after the capacitor discharge time has elapsed. However, the following safety precautions must be observed:



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

Once the DC busbar and the Motor Module have been disconnected using the DC interface (-Q7), the following voltages may be present in the Cabinet Module:

- Up to 1200 V on the DC busbar (protected against accidental contact)
- Line voltage (380 to 480 V 3 ph. AC or 500 to 690 V 3 ph. AC) via the auxiliary power supply system or 230 V 2 ph. AC downstream of the transformers for the fan supply
- Up to 230 V AC on the optional mounting locations
- 24 V DC on the auxiliary power supply system (electronics power supply)
- On motor connection -X2 (e.g. regenerative voltage due to residual speed)



/ WARNING

Hazardous electrical voltage

The cabinet units are operated with high voltages.

All connection work must be carried out when the cabinet is de-energized.

All work on the cabinet must be carried out by trained personnel only.

Work on an open cabinet must be carried out with extreme caution because external supply voltages may be present. The power and control terminals may be live even when the motor is not running.

Due to the DC link capacitors, dangerously high voltage levels are still present inside the cabinet up to 5 minutes after it has been disconnected. For this reason, the cabinet should not be opened until a reasonable period of time has elapsed.

For this reason, you must take the following safety precautions when carrying out work on the Cabinet Module after the DC interface has been switched off:

- Observe the "five safety rules" for all electrical work:
 - Disconnect from power supply.
 - Protect against reconnection.
 - Make sure that the equipment is de-energized.
 - Ground and short-circuit.
 - Cover or enclose adjacent components that are still live.
- Only commission qualified specialists to carry out the work.

8.32 L37, DC interface incl. pre-charging input circuit for the relevant DC link capacitance

- Verify that the equipment is de-energized at the measuring points provided in the cabinet (see figures below).
- Check that there is no voltage on the motor connections.
- You must avoid coming into contact with the DC busbar when replacing a power block!
- When replacing components, make sure that no screws or small parts fall into the cabinet.
- Remove the fan fuse and fuse for the 24 V DC power supply.

Note

Compliance with legal regulations

You must observe the applicable legal regulations when carrying out all work!

The following figures show the location of the voltage source once disconnected from the DC busbar and the associated measuring points to verify isolation from the supply in the Cabinet Module.

8.32.3.2 Accessibility of the DC connection to the Motor Module

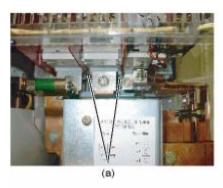


Figure 8-40 Front view



Figure 8-41 Side view (without side panel)

The current-conducting DC busbar behind the DC interface can be accessed once the power block has been removed ("(a)" in figure).

The DC busbar is sealed off sufficiently to prevent accidental contact.

8.32.3.3 Measuring points for verifying isolation from supply

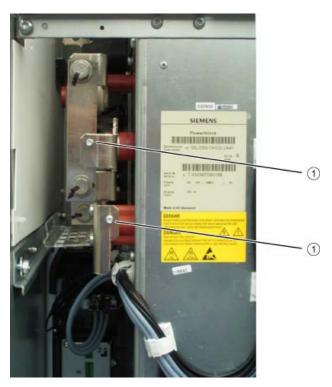


Figure 8-42 Measuring points at top, example for frame sizes FX and GX

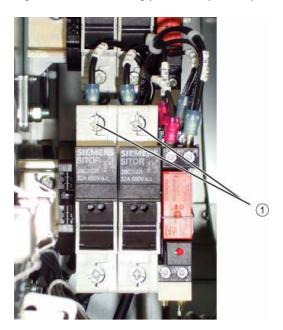


Figure 8-43 Measuring point, auxiliary power supply, fan supply bottom, frame sizes FX and GX

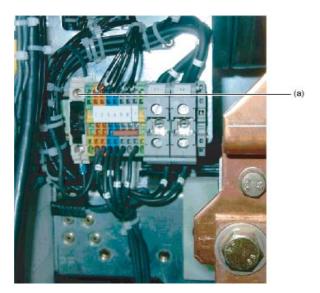


Figure 8-44 Measuring point, 24 V DC auxiliary power supply, frame sizes FX and GX

Take into account other voltages on optional components and refer to the circuit diagrams!



DANGER

Hazardous electrical voltage

The following voltages are normally present on the auxiliary power supply system:

- 380 to 480 V 2 ph. AC or 500 to 690 V 2 ph. AC for fan supply
- 230 V 1 AC
- 24 V DC for electronics power supply

8.32.3.4 Installation

The DC interface is pre-connected and installed at the factory. Only the handle is supplied with the cabinet and must be mounted before commissioning the DC interface.

- Open the cabinet door.
- Insert the handle for the DC interface in the cut-out section provided in the cabinet door.
- From the inside of the door, screw the four screws provided into the holes.

NOTICE

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The screws must only be tightened by hand. If the screws are too tight, this will prevent the handle from working properly!

8.32 L37, DC interface incl. pre-charging input circuit for the relevant DC link capacitance

8.32.3.5 DC interface, principle of operation

Table 8- 55 DC interface, principle of operation

Switch setting	Meaning	Result/Comments
0	Switching contacts are open	Neither the pre-charging section nor the main charging section are switched in.
Pre-charging	DC interface is switched to PRECHARGE.	The pre-charging section is switched to the DC link busbar (the main section remains switched
	DC link capacitors are loaded. Pre-charging remains activated until the ON command is issued.	off). Once the unit is switched on with the ON command, the Motor Module unlocks the DC interface and moves it into the operating position.
1	Switching contacts are closed	The DC interface switches to position "1".
		When the DC switch is in the operating position, the connected auxiliary contacts are switched.

The required auxiliary power supply is provided via the auxiliary power supply system. To ensure that this functions properly, a digital input must be interconnected during commissioning. Like all the other required connections, this is pre-wired in the cabinet.

If any signals are required (e.g. for checkback purposes or for activating other units), two switching contacts can be used. Two normally-open contacts (NO) are available here for use as required. The contacts switch in "Pre-charging" (contacts 53, 54) or "Operation" position (contacts 63, 64). The auxiliary contacts can be loaded with a maximum of 3 A.

Note

Only activate the DC interface with the door closed

The DC interface must only be activated when the door is completely closed, otherwise the switch coupling and the door handle could be damaged!

The door must only be opened in position "0".

In the "Pre-charging" and "1 (Operation)" positions, the door cannot be opened. Attempting to open the door by force would damage the DC interface.

Note

Considerable force must be applied to move the DC interface between positions "0" and "Pre-charge"!

8.32.3.6 Commissioning the DC interface when option K90 is being used

With option K90, a checkback contact from the switch is factory-linked to digital input 3 of the Control Unit.

NOTICE

Changes to the parameter assignment

If changes are made to the factory-set parameters, you must verify that the "Infeed ready" feedback signal is connected to digital input 3 on the Control Unit (p0864 = r722.3).

If parameter p0864 is not wired to the feedback signal, then the switch can be operated under load. This can shorten the service life of the switch.

8.32.3.7 Commissioning the DC interface without option K90

If the cabinet does not contain a Control Unit (option K90), terminal -X41:12 of the DC interface must be connected by the customer to a digital input of the Control Unit assigned to the controlled Motor Module.

The digital input to which the checkback contact is assigned must be connected to the "Infeed operation" parameter (p0864) of the drive object [Drive_1].

Example of digital input 3 on the Control Unit [CU]:

[Drive 1] p0864 = [CU] r722.3

The interconnection can be made with the STARTER commissioning tool or the AOP30 operator panel (option K08).

NOTICE

Danger from switching under load when feedback signal wiring is missing

If parameter p0864 is not wired to the feedback signal, it is possible to operate the switch under load. This can shorten the service life of the switch.

Note

To switch from the "Pre-charging" to the "1 (Operation)" position, a switching current of 4 A/24 V DC is required for 30 ms. This must be provided via the auxiliary power supply and taken into account during dimensioning (see the block diagram above).

Note

Additional information

When activating digital inputs, note the guidelines provided in the List Manual and S120 Commissioning Manual.

8.33 L41, current transformer upstream of main switch

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

If current transformers are used for measuring or monitoring purposes, they are installed in the Line Connection Modules with option L41. The current transformers are installed upstream of the main breaker in all three line phases of the infeed.

The transformers have an accuracy class of 1.0. The secondary current is 1 A maximum.

The measuring connections for the current transformers are routed in the Line Connection Module to terminal block -X60.

Transformation ratio of the current transformer in the Line Connection Module

The assignment of the order numbers of the Line Connection Modules to the transformation ratios of the current transformers is shown in the following table.

Table 8- 56 Transformation ratios of the current transformers

Order no.	Vin	Transformation ratio
6SL3700-0LE32-5AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	400/1
6SL3700-0LE34-0AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	400/1
6SL3700-0LE36-3AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	800/1
6SL3700-0LE38-0AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	800/1
6SL3700-0LE41-0AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	2000/1
6SL3700-0LE41-3AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	2000/1
6SL3700-0LE41-6AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	2000/1
6SL3700-0LE42-0AA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	4000/1
6SL3700-0LE42-0BA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	4000/1
6SL3700-0LE42-5BA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	4000/1
6SL3700-0LE43-2BA3	380 to 480 V AC, 3-phase	4000/1
6SL3700-0LG32-8AA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	400/1
6SL3700-0LG34-0AA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	800/1
6SL3700-0LG36-3AA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	800/1
6SL3700-0LG38-0AA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	800/1
6SL3700-0LG41-0AA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	2000/1
6SL3700-0LG41-3AA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	2000/1
6SL3700-0LG41-6AA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	2000/1
6SL3700-0LG42-0BA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	4000/1
6SL3700-0LG42-5BA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	4000/1
6SL3700-0LG43-2BA3	500 to 690 V AC, 3-phase	4000/1

X60 line current transformer

Table 8- 57 Terminal block X60

Terminal	Designation	Technical data
1	-T110: k/S1	Current transformer on phase U1/L1
2	-T110: I/S1	
3	-T111: k/S1	Current transformer on phase V1/L2
4	-T111: I/S1	
5	-T112: k/S1	Current transformer on phase W1/L3
6	-T112: I/S1	
Max. connecta	able cross-section: 2.5 n	nm²

8.34 L42/L43/L44, Line Connection Module for Active/ Basic/Smart Line Modules

Availability of options

These options are available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Option L42, Line Connection Module for Active Line Modules

This option means that the Line Connection Module is adjusted for connection to an Active Line Module.

If a main contactor is required in the Line Connection Module for correct functioning, then this contactor is included.

Option L43, Line Connection Module for Basic Line Modules

This option means that the Line Connection Module is adjusted for connection to a Basic Line Module.

In this case, the Line Connection Modules are equipped with the line reactor for Basic Line Modules. If the line reactor is not required, it can be deselected with option L22 (line reactor not included in scope of supply).

Option L44, Line Connection Module for Smart Line Modules

This option means that the Line Connection Module is adjusted for connection to a Smart Line Module.

If a main contactor is required in the Line Connection Module for correct functioning, then this contactor is included.

8.35 L45, EMERGENCY STOP pushbutton in the cabinet door

8.35 L45, EMERGENCY STOP pushbutton in the cabinet door

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

The EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton with protective collar is integrated in the cabinet door of the Line Connection Module. The contacts of the pushbutton are connected to a terminal block. From here, the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton can be integrated into the plant-side EMERGENCY OFF chain.

Note

Ensure the EMERGENCY OFF function on the plant side

The EMERGENCY OFF function must be ensured on the plant side.

X120 checkback contact "EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the cabinet door"

Table 8-58 Terminal block X120

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data	
1	NC	Feedback signal contacts of the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton	
2		in the cabinet door max. load current: 10 A Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC	
3	NC (internal)		
4		Max. switching power: 250 VA	
		Required minimum load: ≥ 1 mA	
Max. conne	Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²		

¹⁾ NC: NC contact

8.36 L46/L47, grounding switch upstream/downstream of main breaker

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules (frame sizes KL and LL)

Description

The grounding switch short-circuits the incoming supply line to ground for servicing. It is engaged manually by means of a rotary actuator and ensures, for example, safe isolation from supply in the Cabinet Module during servicing.

Two versions are available and can be supplied at the same time. Version 1 establishes a ground connection for the connected power lines, and Version 2 grounds the cabinet's internal components located downstream of the circuit breaker.

8.36.1 Grounding switch upstream of main breaker (option L46)

The grounding switch upstream of the internal main breaker shorts the supply network to ground.



Measures required when closing the grounding switch with the voltage available

Plant-side measures must be taken to prevent the grounding switch from engaging when the voltage is applied. For this purpose, the checkback signal "Interruption of higher-level switches" must be connected to the higher-level switching equipment and must trigger immediate opening of the upstream main breaker, if necessary.

When the grounding switch is engaged, it must not be possible to switch in the power supply.

Note

The signals required for interlocking are available on the terminal block.

X70 "Grounding switch upstream of internal main breaker"

Table 8-59 Terminal block X70

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data	
1	L1	Grounding switch enable	
2	N	230 V AC / 0.1 A	
3	NC	"Interruption of higher-level switches" feedback signal	
4	NO	Leading contact	
5	COM	Max. load current: 3 A	
		Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC	
6	NC	"Switch actuated" checkback signal	
7	NO	Max. load current: 3 A	
8	COM	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC	
Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²			

¹⁾ NC: Normally-closed contact, NO: Normally-open contact, COM: Center contact

8.36 L46/L47, grounding switch upstream/downstream of main breaker

8.36.2 Grounding switch downstream of main breaker (option L47)

The grounding switch downstream of the internal main breaker shorts the supply network to ground.



Measures required when closing the grounding switch with the voltage available

In this case, the grounding switch and the main breaker of the Line Connection Module are interlocked electrically. This ensures that when the main breaker is closed, it is opened again when the grounding switch is switched on.

If the grounding switch is engaged, it is interlocked to ensure that the main breaker cannot be switched in.

X71 terminal block "Grounding switch downstream of internal main breaker"

Table 8- 60 Terminal block X71

Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data
1	L1	Grounding switch enable
2	N	230 V AC / 0.1 A
3	NC (reserved, do not use)	Circuit breaker interlock
4	NC (reserved, do not use)	("Grounding switch open")
5	COM (reserved, do not use)	
6	NC	"Switch actuated" checkback signal
7	NO	Max. load current: 3 A
8	СОМ	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC
Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²		

¹⁾ NC: Normally-closed contact, NO: Normally-open contact, COM: Center contact

8.37 L50, cabinet lighting with service socket

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

Option L50 includes cabinet lighting with an additional service socket for a connector with protective ground contact (connector type F) according to CEE 7/4. The power supply for the cabinet lighting and the service socket is external and must be fuse-protected for max. 10 A.

The cabinet lighting consists of an LED hand lamp with on/off switch and with magnetic fasteners and an approx. 3 m long connecting cable. When delivered from the factory, the lamp is already positioned at the defined marks in the cabinet door and the connecting cable is wound on the holder.

Note

During operation of the cabinet unit, the cabinet lighting must remain attached in its position on the cabinet door. The position on the cabinet door is marked by an adhesive label. The connecting cable must be wound on its holder.

Connection

Table 8- 61 Terminal block X390 - connection for cabinet lighting with service socket

Terminal	Designation	Technical data
1	L1	230 V AC
2	N	power supply
3	PE	Protective conductor

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

8.38 L51, holder for ARC detector

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Chassis format Motor Modules
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

Special holders have been developed to enable monitoring of the cabinet system for arcing faults. The VA1DA1 arc systems from Vamp Ldt. as well as TVOC from ABB are supported by these holders.

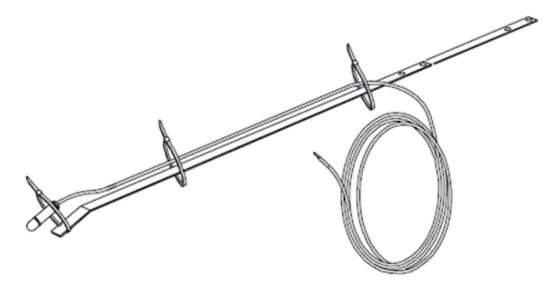


Figure 8-45 Option L51, holder for arc sensor (ARC detection)

If ARC detectors are to be used, factory-fitted holding plates are installed in the cabinet at points defined during configuration.

The ARC processing units should preferably be centrally mounted. Line Connection Modules or variable units are ideal for this.

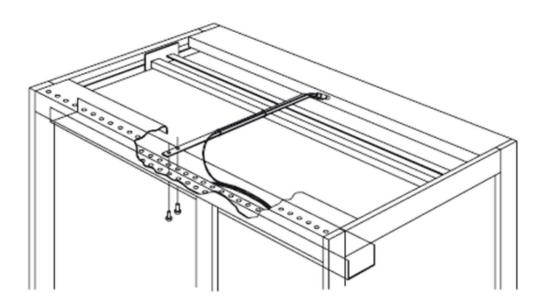


Figure 8-46 Option L51, holder for arc sensor secured in the cabinet

8.39 L55, cabinet anti-condensation heating

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules in chassis format
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

The cabinet anti-condensation heating can be used at low ambient temperatures and high levels of humidity to prevent the formation of condensation.

A 100 W heater (-E240) is used for 400 mm and 600 mm cabinets. Two 100 W heaters (-E240, -E241) are used for cabinet widths of 800 mm or higher.

The power supply (110 to 230 V AC) must be provided externally and protected with a fuse of up to 10 A.

8.39 L55, cabinet anti-condensation heating

X240 connection for cabinet anti-condensation heating

Table 8- 62 Terminal block X240

Terminal	Designation	Technical data	
1	L1	110 to 230 V AC voltage supply	
2	N	Current demand: - min.: approx. 0.43 A (for 230 V AC, 100 W) - max.: approx. 1.8 A (for 110 V AC, 200 W)	
3	PE	Protective conductor	
Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²			





Hazardous electrical voltage

Since the voltage is supplied from an external source, voltage may still be present in all of the cabinets even when the main switches in all units are open.

You must observe the "five safety rules" when carrying out maintenance work.

Note

Temperature-controlled supply voltage

The supply voltage can be provided by means of a temperature control, to prevent the anticondensation heating unnecessarily operating at a higher ambient temperature.

8.40 L61/L62, L64/L65, braking units

8.40.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Chassis format Motor Modules

Description

Braking units may be required for drives that support regenerative operating conditions but have no other facility for feeding energy back into the supply system.

The braking unit comprises two components:

- A Braking Module that is installed in the Power Module
- A braking resistor to be mounted externally (degree of protection IP20)

The braking unit functions as an autonomous unit, and does not require an external power supply.

The Braking Modules are installed in the air outlet channel of the Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, or Motor Module.

During the braking process, the kinetic energy is converted into heat in the externally mounted braking resistor.

A maximum cable length of 100 mm is permissible between the Braking Module and the braking resistor. This allows the braking resistor to be mounted externally so that heat losses can be released outside the converter enclosure. The braking resistor is connected directly to the Braking Module terminals.

The application threshold of the Braking Module can be adjusted to the plant-side requirements using a threshold switch.

Note

Higher braking powers are available on request.

8.40 L61/L62, L64/L65, braking units

8.40.2 Interfaces

Connection for the braking resistor

The braking resistor is connected directly to the Braking Module in the Motor Module, Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module and Active Line Module.

Table 8-63 Connection for the braking resistor

Terminal	Designation
R1	Braking resistor connection R+
R2	Braking resistor connection R-

Recommended connection cross sections:

- For option L61/L64 (25 kW): 35 mm²
- For option L62/L65 (50 kW): 50 mm²

Note

Strain relief

For strain relief, the cables must be clamped on the cable propping bar (C-type mounting bar).

X21 digital inputs/outputs

Table 8- 64 Terminal strip X21

	Terminal	Designation 1)	Technical data	
Ä	1	Shield	Shield connection for terminals 2 to 6	
₩2	2	0 V	High signal level: +15 30 V	
	3	DI inhibit input	current consumption: 2 15 mA	
∰. 3			Low signal level: -3 5 V	
Voltage: 24 V DC		Voltage: 24 V DC		
	5	DO fault output	Load current: 0.5 0.6 mA	
	6	+24 V	Voltage: +18 30 V Typical current consumption (intrinsic current consumption): 10 mA at 24 V DC	
Max. conn	Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm ²			

¹⁾ DI: digital input; DO: digital output

The signals of terminal block -X21 are factory-routed to customer interface -X55 (maximum connectable cross section: 2.5 mm²):

- Jumper from -X21:2 to -X55-X132:14 (ground)
- Jumper from -X21:3 to -X55-X132:12 (DI/DO14)
- Jumper from -X21:5 to -X55-X132:1 (DI4)
- Jumper from -X21:6 to -X55-X132:9 (DI/DO12)

Note

Applying a high signal level to "DI inhibit input" inhibits the Braking Module. On a falling edge, pending error messages are acknowledged.

The "DO fault output" signal can be used for evaluation in the Control Unit.

On the "+24 V" signal, 24 V DC must be provided by the customer to supply the Braking Module.

Commissioning/parameterization

If a Control Unit is not being used (option K90/K95), then the four signals of terminal block - X55-X132 must be wired to the corresponding Control Unit or to the customer interface -X55.

8.40.3 S1 - Threshold switch

The response threshold at which the Braking Module is activated and the DC link voltage generated during braking is specified in the following table.



Only actuate the threshold switch when the device is switched off

The threshold switch position may be changed only when the Basic Line, Smart Line, Active Line, or Motor Module are switched off and the DC link capacitors are discharged.

8.40 L61/L62, L64/L65, braking units

Table 8-65 Response thresholds of the Braking Modules

Rated voltage	Response threshold	Switch position	Comments		
380 480 V	673 V 774 V	1 2	774 V is the default factory setting. With line voltages of between 380 V and 400 V, the response threshold can be set to 673 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and drive. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power		
			with the square of the voltage $(673/774)^2 = 0.75$.		
			The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 75%.		
500	841 V	1	967 V is the default factory setting. With a line voltage of 500 V, the response		
converter. This does, how		2	threshold can be set to 841 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage $(841/967)^2 = 0.75$.		
			The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 75%.		
660	1070 V	1	1158 V is the default factory setting. With a line voltage of 660 V, the response		
690 V	1158 V	2	threshold can be set to 1070 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (1070/1158) ² = 0.85.		
			The maximum possible braking power is, therefore, 85%.		

Note

Threshold switch positions

The positions of the threshold switches for the braking modules are as follows when installed:

- Braking Modules for frame sizes FX, FB, GX, GB: Position "1" is up; position "2" is down
- Braking Modules for frame sizes HX, JX: Position "1" is at the back; position "2" is at the front

NOTICE

"Overvoltage" fault

Even when the response threshold is set to a low value, the DC link voltage can still reach the maximum voltage value (hardware shutdown threshold), thus triggering the "Overvoltage" error. This can occur, for example, in cases where there is too much regenerative energy for the available braking power.

To prevent a shutdown with the "Overvoltage" error, the V_{dc} max controller must be enabled (p1240 = 1) and the device connection voltage set accordingly (p0210).

8.40.4 Braking Module

Braking Module for frame sizes FX, FB

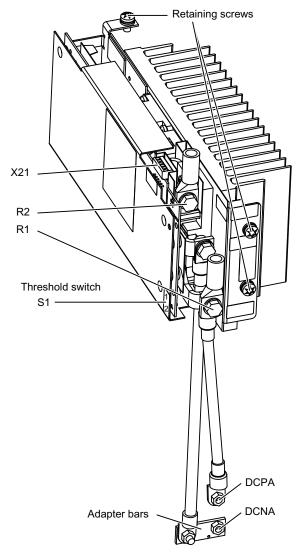


Figure 8-47 Braking Module for Active Line Module / Motor Module, frame size FX and for Basic Line Module, frame size FB

Note

Connecting interfaces

With this Braking Module, the R1 and DCPA interfaces use the same connection.

Braking Module for frame sizes GX, GB

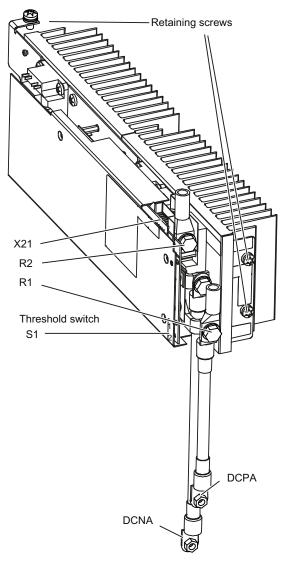


Figure 8-48 Braking Module for Smart Line Module / Active Line Module / Motor Module, frame size GX and for Basic Line Module, frame size GB

Note

Connecting interfaces

With this Braking Module, the R1 and DCPA interfaces use the same connection.

Braking Module for frame sizes HX and JX

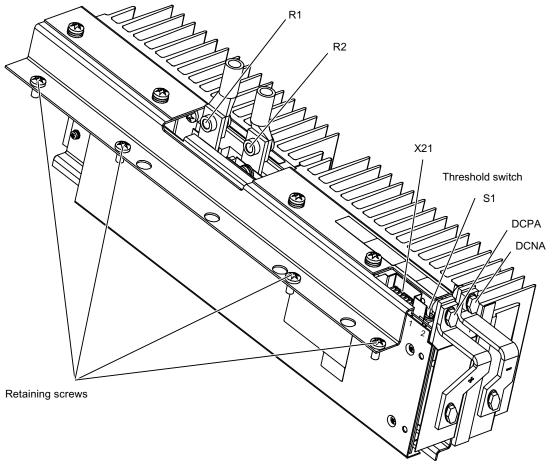


Figure 8-49 Braking Module for Smart Line Module / Active Line Module / Motor Module, frame sizes HX and JX

8.40.5 Example connection of Braking Module

The connections between the Braking Module and the DC link and control terminal strip -X21 are made in the factory.

The connection between the braking resistor on the Braking Module and R1 / R2 must be made by the customer.

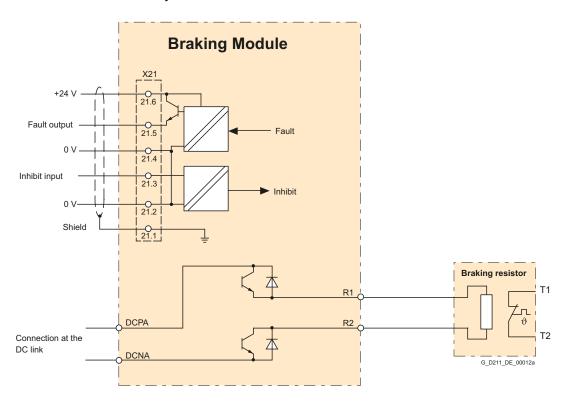


Figure 8-50 Example connection of Braking Module

8.40.6 Braking resistors

Description

The excess energy of the DC link is dissipated via the braking resistor.

The braking resistor is connected to a Braking Module. The braking resistor is positioned outside the cabinet or switchgear room. This enables the resulting heat loss around the Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, or Motor Module to be dissipated, thereby reducing the amount of air conditioning required.

Resistors with a rated power (continuous power) of 25 kW and 50 kW are available.

A thermostatic switch monitors the braking resistor for overtemperature and issues a signal on a floating contact if the limit value is exceeded.

/ WARNING

Thermal overheating

The thermostatic switch must be evaluated by the Control Unit or a higher-level controller, and a shutdown must be carried out if necessary.

These braking resistors are not the same as the components described in the "Central Braking Module" Cabinet Module and must not be connected to this Cabinet Module! Otherwise, there is a risk of overheating and subsequent damage (such as a fire).

Dimension drawings

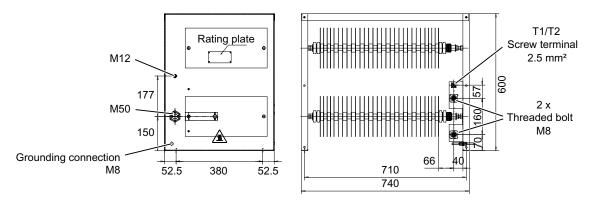


Figure 8-51 Dimension drawing for braking resistor 25 kW, 125 kW (option L61 / L64)

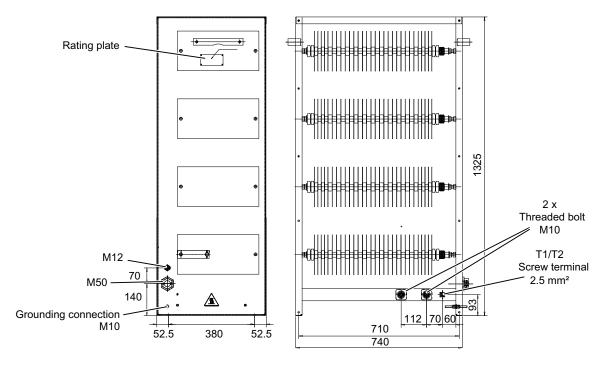


Figure 8-52 Dimension drawing for braking resistor 50 kW, 250 kW (option L62 / L65)

8.40 L61/L62, L64/L65, braking units

Safety information

NOTICE

Maintain ventilation clearances

A cooling clearance of 200 mm must be maintained on all sides of the component (with ventilation grilles).



NOTICE

Hot surfaces

The surface temperature of the braking resistors may exceed 80 °C during operation.



Risk of fire and damage to equipment due to short-circuit/ground fault

The cables to the braking resistor must be routed so that a ground fault or short circuit can be ruled out. A ground fault can result in fire with the associated smoke.

- Protect the cables from mechanical damage.
- Comply with local installation regulations that enable this fault to be ruled out.

In addition, apply one of the following measures:

- Use cables with double insulation.
- Maintain adequate clearance, using spacers, for example.
- Route the cables in separate cable ducts or pipes.

Note

Guidelines for Installation

The connecting cables to the Braking Module in the Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, or Motor Module must be kept as short as possible (maximum of 100 m).

The braking resistors are only suitable for floor mounting.

The maximum cable length between the cabinet unit and braking resistor is 100 m.

Sufficient space must be available for dissipating the energy converted by the braking resistor.

A sufficient distance from flammable objects must be ensured.

The braking resistor must be installed as a free-standing unit.

Objects must not be placed on or anywhere above the braking resistor.

The braking resistor should not be installed underneath fire-detection systems, since these could be triggered by the resulting heat.

For outdoor installation, a hood should be provided to protect the braking resistor against precipitation (in accordance with degree of protection IP20).

Connecting the braking resistor



Hazardous electrical voltage

The Braking Module must only be connected when the Basic Line Module, Smart Line Module, Active Line Module, or Motor Module has been disconnected from the power supply and the DC link has been discharged.

/ WARNING

Risk of fire and damage to equipment due to short-circuit/ground fault

The cables to the braking resistor must be routed so that a ground fault or short circuit can be ruled out. A ground fault can result in fire with the associated smoke.

- Protect the cables from mechanical damage.
- Comply with local installation regulations that enable this fault to be ruled out.

In addition, apply one of the following measures:

- Use cables with double insulation.
- Maintain adequate clearance, using spacers, for example.
- Route the cables in separate cable ducts or pipes.

8.40 L61/L62, L64/L65, braking units

Note

Maximum length of the connection cables

The length of the connecting cables between the Braking Module and external braking resistor must not exceed 100 m.

Braking resistor connection

The connection between the braking resistor on the Braking Module and R1 / R2 must be made by the customer.

Table 8- 66 Connection for external braking resistor

Terminal	Function	
R1	Braking resistor connection	
R2	Braking resistor connection	
Max. connectable cross-section: 50 mm ²		

Recommended connection cross sections:

- For option L61/L64 (25 kW): 35 mm²
- For option L62/L65 (50 kW): 50 mm²

To relieve the strain on the cables from the Braking Module to the external braking resistor, they must be propped on the cable propping bar (C-type mounting bar) above the Braking Modules.

Thermostatic switch

Table 8- 67 Thermostatic switch connection

Terminal	Function	
T1	Thermostatic switch connection	
T2	Thermostatic switch connection	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²		

/!\warning

Thermal overheating

The thermostatic switch must be evaluated by the Control Unit or a higher-level controller, and a shutdown must be carried out if necessary.

8.40.7 Technical data

Load data for the braking units

Table 8- 68 Load data for the braking units

Line voltage	Braking Module continuous power PDB	Braking Module peak power P ₁₅	Braking Module P ₂₀ power	Braking Module P ₄₀ power	Braking resistor R _B	Max. current
380 480 V	25 kW	125 kW	100 kW	50 kW	$4.4 \Omega \pm 7.5\%$	189 A
380 480 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	$2.2 \Omega \pm 7.5\%$	378 A
500 600 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	$3.4 \Omega \pm 7.5\%$	306 A
660 690 V	25 kW	125 kW	100 kW	50 kW	$9.8 \Omega \pm 7.5\%$	127 A
660 690 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	$4.9 \Omega \pm 7.5\%$	255 A

Dimensions of the braking resistors

Table 8- 69 Dimensions of the braking resistors

	Unit	25 kW resistor (Option L61/L64)	50 kW resistor (Option L62/L65)	
Width	mm	485	485	
Height	mm	605	1325	
Depth	mm	740	810	

Duty cycle

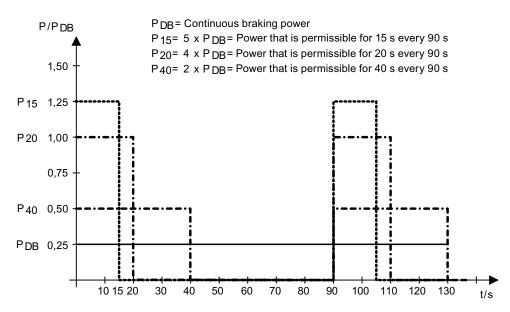


Figure 8-53 Duty cycle for braking resistors

8.41 L87, insulation monitoring

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

In non-grounded systems (IT systems), the insulation monitor checks the entire electrically-connected circuit for insulation faults. It measures the insulation resistance as well as all insulation faults in the Cabinet Modules, from the supply infeed to the motors. Two response values (between 1 $k\Omega$ and 10 $M\Omega$) can be set. If a response value is undershot, a warning is output to the terminal. System errors are output via the signaling-relay system.

When the Cabinet Module is delivered, the plant configuration (one or several loads in one electrically-connected network) and the protection philosophy (immediate shutdown in the event of an insulation fault or restricted continued motion) can vary. This means that the signaling relays of the insulation monitor must be integrated by the customer in the fault and warning sequence.

Safety information

Note

Number of insulation monitors

Only one insulation monitor can be used within the same electrically-connected network!

Note

Removing the connection clip for the interference suppression capacitor

When using the insulation monitor, you must remove the connection clamp for the noise suppression capacitor (in the Active Interface Module of the Active Line Module, Basic Line Module, or Smart Line Module).

See the chapter titled "Connections: Connecting Cabinet Modules to non-grounded line supplies (IT systems)".

Controls and displays on the insulation monitor

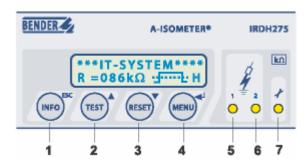


Figure 8-54 Controls and displays on the insulation monitor

Table 8- 70 Meaning of the controls and displays on the insulation monitor

Item	Meaning	
1	INFO key: To request standard information/	
	ESC key: Back menu function	
2	TEST key: Call up self-test/	
	Arrow key up: Parameter change, scrolling	
3	RESET button: Delete insulation and error messages (A-Isometer only)	
	Arrow key down: Parameter change, scrolling	
4	Menu key: Call up menu system/	
	Enter key: Confirm parameter change	
5	Alarm LED 1 lights up: Insulation fault, first alarm threshold reached	
6	Alarm LED 2 lights up: Insulation fault, second alarm threshold reached	
7	LED lights up: System error present	

8.41 L87, insulation monitoring

Connection

Table 8-71 Connections on insulation monitor

Terminal	Technical data	
A1	Voltage supply via non-replaceable fusing 6 A:	
A2	88 to 264 V AC, 77 to 286 V DC	
L1	Connection of the 3 AC system to be monitored	
L2		
AK	Connection to coupling device	
KE	PE connection	
T1	External test button	
T2	External test button	
R1	External reset button (NC contact or wire jumper, otherwise the error message is not stored)	
R2	External reset button (NC contact or wire jumper)	
F1	STANDBY with aid of F1, F2 function input:	
F2	No insulation measurement when the contact is closed	
M+	External $k\Omega$ display, analog output (0 to 400 μ A)	
M-	External k Ω display, analog output (0 to 400 μ A)	
Α	Serial interface RS 485	
В	(termination by means of 120 ohm resistor)	
11	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (mid-position contact)	
12	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (NC contact)	
14	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (NO contact)	
21	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (mid-position contact)	
22	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (NC contact)	
24	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (NO contact)	
Max. connecta	able cross-section: 2.5 mm²	

Note

Additional information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the insulation monitor can be found in the accompanying operating instructions, These operating instructions are available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.42 M06, base 100 mm high, RAL 7022

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Chassis format Motor Modules
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

Because it is raised 100 mm, the supplementary cabinet base allows for greater bending radii for cables (cable inlet from below) and cable routing within the base.

The cabinet base comes completely assembled and is usually color RAL 7022.

Table 8-72 Components of the cabinet base

Component	Connection element	Fixing elements	
1 x base element (rear)		On the cabinet:	
1 x base element (front)		The cabinet base is shipped pre-assembled.	
Base covers (option M26/M27 only)		On the foundation: The holes are in line with the holes in the	
4 x cover caps		cabinet (see dimension drawings).	

Connection to the foundation

To connect the cable marshalling compartment to the foundation, four holes for M12 screws are provided. These are in line with the holes in the cabinet. The fixing dimensions are specified on the associated dimension drawings.

8.43 M07, cable-marshalling compartment 200 mm high, RAL 7035

Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units

The individual bases are not connected for cabinet units installed in a side-by-side configuration. The connection from the base to the cabinet and between the cabinet units ensures sufficient stability.

Note

In transport units, the base covers inside the transport unit are only secured at the bottom and are folded down parallel to the ground.

8.43 M07, cable-marshalling compartment 200 mm high, RAL 7035

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Chassis format Motor Modules
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

Because it is raised 200 mm, the supplementary cable marshalling compartment made of stable sheet steel allows for greater bending radii for cables (cable inlet from below) and cable routing within the cable marshalling compartment.

The cable-marshalling compartment comes completely assembled and has color RAL 7035 as standard.

Note

The cable marshalling compartment increases the cabinet height by 200 mm.

Table 8-73 Components of the cable marshalling compartment

Component	Connection element	Fixing elements	
1 x cable marshalling compartment element		On the cabinet: The cabinet's cable marshalling compartment	
Side shutters (not shown) for the cable marshalling compartment (option M26/M27 only)		is shipped pre-assembled. On the foundation: The holes are in line with the holes in the cabinet (see dimension drawings).	

Connection to the foundation

To connect the cable marshalling compartment to the foundation, four holes for M12 screws are provided. These are in line with the holes in the cabinet. The fixing dimensions are specified on the associated dimension drawings.

Connection for side-by-side installation of cabinet units

The individual cable marshalling compartments are not connected for cabinet units installed in a side-by-side configuration. The connection from the cable marshalling compartments to the cabinet and between the cabinet units ensures sufficient stability.

Side shutters for cable marshalling compartments

When the cabinet units are installed in a side-by-side configuration, the side shutters can be folded inward and upward.

8.44 M13, Line connection from above

8.44 M13, Line connection from above

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

For option M13 the cabinet unit is equipped with an additional hood. The connection lugs for the power cables, the clamping bar for mechanically securing the cables, an EMC shield bus, and a PE busbar are located within the hood.

The roof cover increases the cabinet height by 405 mm. The busbars for connection from above are already installed when the system is delivered. For transport reasons, the hoods are delivered separately and have to be assembled at the plant. With options M23, M43 and M54, plastic ventilation grilles and filter mats are also supplied.

A 5 mm aluminum mounting plate (with no holes) is fitted in the roof of the cover for feeding in the cables. Depending on the number of cables and the cross-sections used, holes for attaching cable glands for feeding in the cables must be drilled in this mounting plate on site.

Note

Connecting control cables

The control cable and optional brake resistors are always connected from below.

Attaching the hood

- 1. Remove the crane transport assemblies (if fitted).
- Only for options M43 and M54:
 Use the sealing tape provided to attach the contact surfaces of the hood to the top of the cabinet.
- 3. Fit the hood to the top of the enclosure at the positions specified (fixing points for the crane transport assemblies).
- 4. To secure the power cables, remove the front panel of the hood.

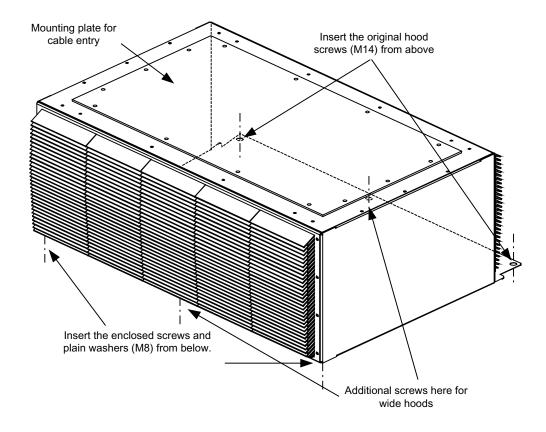


Figure 8-55 Mounting the hood for option M13

8.45 M21, degree of protection IP21

8.45.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Chassis format Motor Modules
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

8.45 M21, degree of protection IP21

Description

To increase the degree of protection of the cabinet units from IP20 (standard) to IP21, additional canopies are supplied.

Increasing the degree of protection in this way ensures that not only is the cabinet unit protected against the ingress of foreign bodies with a diameter of 12.5 mm and above (IP20, protection level provided as standard), but also against the ingress of water droplets falling vertically from above (IP21).

The canopy is mounted using spacers at a distance of 250 mm above the top cover of the cabinet. The canopy increases the height of a cabinet unit by 250 mm, as shown in the diagram below (number (1)).

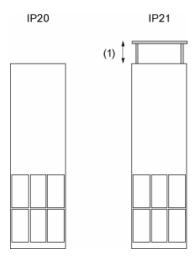


Figure 8-56 Cabinet with canopy (250 mm higher)

Note

Only the protective requirements described above can be fulfilled with IP21. For more stringent requirements, you must select the corresponding IP degree of protection (for example, IP23 for additional protection against spraying water).

Note

Installing the canopy or hood at a an early stage!

It is recommended to attach the canopy or hood at an early stage to prevent foreign matter entering the cabinet units.

8.45.2 Mounting

Mounting a canopy to increase the degree of protection to IP21 (option M21)

The canopy ② can be mounted variably in both directions (on the side and, to the front or back) on the top of the cabinet.

The arrangement can be adapted to the various installation conditions for the cabinets. This results in an adjustable protrusion of the canopy at the front ① and rear ③. In this way, it is possible to have a circumferential protrusion of the canopy, or direct contact

with the wall or between the canopies in back-to-back installation. If necessary, seal the contact points in the case of wall-mounting or back-to-back installation.

- Remove any existing crane transport assemblies.
- Attach the spacers (A) to the roof of the cabinet at the positions specified. Under certain
 circumstances, it may be necessary to remove the protective grille for installation.
 Install the screws ④ with contact washer from below through the perforated protective
 grille (tightening torque: 13 Nm for M6).
- Mount the canopy (B) on the spacers.
 Attach the screw ⑤ with contact washer from above through the canopy (tightening torque: 13 Nm for M6).

Note

Mounting the canopies for cabinets mounted side-by-side

In order to prevent water dripping into the spaces between the cabinet units connected in series, there are overlaps on the sides of the canopies. When fitting the canopies, make sure that the overlaps interlock.

8.46 M23/M43/M54, degree of protection IP23/IP43/IP54

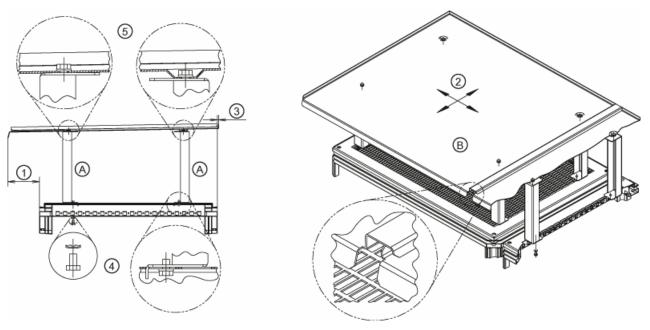


Figure 8-57 Mounting a canopy

8.46 M23/M43/M54, degree of protection IP23/IP43/IP54

8.46.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules in chassis format
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

The table below explains the properties of the various degrees of protection that are available.

Table 8-74 Degrees of protection

Degree of protection	Protection against contact	Protection against water
IP23	Protection against the ingress of solid foreign bodies with a diameter > 12.5 mm	Protection against spraying water (up to 60 ° against the vertical)
IP43	Protection against the ingress of solid foreign bodies with a diameter > 1 mm	Protection against spraying water (up to 60 ° against the vertical)
IP54	Complete shock protection Protection against damaging internal dust deposits	Protection against all-round splash water

Note

Hoods (1) increase the height of the cabinet units by 400 mm.

For degree of protection IP54, the derating values of the relevant Cabinet Modules must be observed.

Note

Installing a fan in the hood

In the Line Connection Module with option L43 and in the Booksize Base Cabinet, a fan is installed in the hood for degrees of protection IP23, IP43, and IP54.

Note

Installing the canopy or hood at a an early stage!

It is recommended to attach the canopy or hood at an early stage to prevent foreign matter entering the cabinet units.

8.46 M23/M43/M54, degree of protection IP23/IP43/IP54

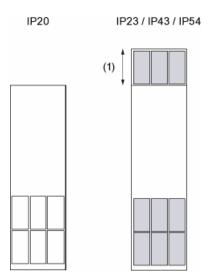


Figure 8-58 Cabinet with hood (400 mm higher)

If the degree of protection of the Cabinet Modules is to be increased, the additional hoods and filter media are delivered separately.

The hoods are flush with the cabinets at the side and front and have a recess at the rear so that air can escape even if the cabinet is wall mounted. Air escapes from the front and back.

The hoods are easily fitted and filter media easily changed from outside the cabinet. Air escapes from the front and back. Compliance with the increased degree of protection requires intact filter media, which must be replaced on a regular basis according to the prevailing environmental conditions.

8.46.2 Mounting

Preparatory steps

- Remove the crane transport assemblies (if fitted)
 (-> see the chapter titled "Mechanical installation").
- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Remove the perforated cover on the top of the cabinet (if fitted).

Attaching the hood

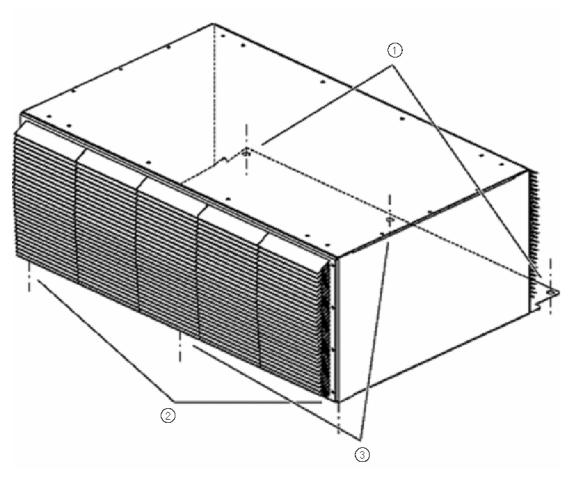


Figure 8-59 Mounted hood

The numbers in parentheses in the installation steps refer to the diagram.

Options M43 and M54 only:
 Use the sealing tape provided to attach the contact surfaces of the hood to the top of the cabinet.



Figure 8-60 Hood with attached sealing tape

2. Place the washers of the original roof screws between the cabinet upper side and the hood at the contact points of the cabinet front side. This prevents the hood from being pressed down too far when the screws are tightened, thus preventing the doors from being opened.

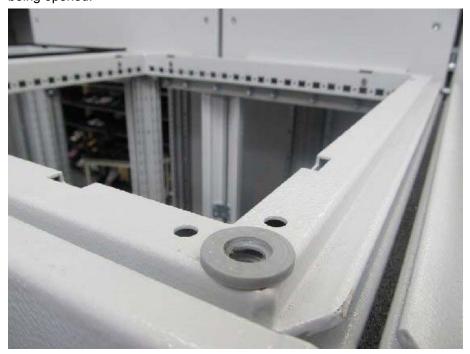


Figure 8-61 Attaching the washers

- 3. Fit the hood to the top of the enclosure at the positions specified (fixing points for the crane transport assemblies).
- 4. Attach the original M12 ① roof screws from above at the rear side.
- 5. Attach the M6 screws and washers at the front side (sequence: screw, spring-lock element, small washer, large washer) ② from below.
- 6. If the hood is very wide, insert additional screws ③ in the center of the hood (front and rear).



Figure 8-62 View with opened cabinet door



Figure 8-63 View with closed cabinet door

Note

Mounting the hoods in a side-by-side configuration

If cabinet units are installed in a side-by-side configuration, the hoods must be flush-mounted in a line across the cabinet units.

Note

Additional information

See also the chapter titled "Maintenance and servicing", "Replacing the filter mats" section.

8.47 M26/M27, side panels mounted on right and left

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules in chassis format
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

The side panels (option M26 = side panel mounted on the right; option M27 = side panel mounted on the left) are fitted at either end of a side-by-side cabinet unit configuration.

With the option M26, the Cabinet Module is fitted with a side panel on the right.

With the option M27, the Cabinet Module is fitted with a side panel on the left.

/ DANGER

Installing the side panels

For each cabinet row installed, you must mount one side panel on the right (option M26) and one on the left (option M27)!

For Cabinet Modules that are delivered with a side panel, the DC connection clamp is omitted from the side panel. If the installation sequence is modified and the side panel removed, then a DC connection clamp must be inserted!

8.48 M51, motor reactor terminal connection

8.48 M51, motor reactor terminal connection

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Booksize Cabinet Kits

Description

In conjunction with option M77 (version without component support plates and without additional control components), option L08/L09 (motor reactor / 2 motor reactors in series) allows the motor cables to be connected directly to the motor reactor.

With option M51, the connection of the motor cable is wired to a customer connection terminal -X1 (for Double Motor Module: -X1, -X2).

Table 8-75 Maximum conductor cross-section when using motor reactors for Booksize Cabinet Kits

Order number 6SL3720-	Power in kW	Maximum connection cross section
2TE13-0AB0	2 x 1.6	6 mm²
2TE15-0AB0	2 x 2.7	6 mm²
2TE21-0AB0	2 x 4.8	6 mm²
2TE21-8AB0	2 x 9.7	6 mm²
1TE13-0AB0	1.6	6 mm²
1TE15-0AB0	2.7	6 mm²
1TE21-0AB0	4.8	6 mm²
1TE21-8AB0	9.7	6 mm²
1TE23-0AB0	16	6 mm²
1TE24-5AB0	24	16 mm²
1TE26-0AB0	32	16 mm²
1TE28-5AB0	46	35 mm²
1TE31-3AB0	71	95 mm²
1TE32-8AB0	107	95 mm²

8.49 M59, closed cabinet door, air inlet from below through floor opening

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules in chassis format
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

The standard cabinet units are supplied with integrated ventilation grilles in the bottom of the doors as standard.

With option M59, the Cabinet Modules are delivered with closed doors.

Safety information

/ WARNING

Safety information

When closed doors are used, the base plates, which are available as standard for ensuring a sufficient cooling air supply, are not required.

In this case, the customer must ensure that no dirt/conductive dust or moisture can enter the Cabinet Module. Cables must not be routed in such a way that they impede the flow of air through the cabinet floor opening.

If the area beneath the Cabinet Modules can be accessed, the customer must provide shock protection.

The required ambient conditions must be taken into account to prevent, for example, overheating of the cabinet and the ingress of dirt or moisture.

When removing doors, take care not to damage the grounding strips attached to them. Make sure that the strips are reattached properly when the doors are installed.

8.50 M60, additional shock protection

Note

Opening angle of the door

The door opening angle with free-standing cabinet units is 180°.

With a side-by-side configuration of the cabinet units, this opening angle is 130°.

For degrees of protection IP23/IP43/IP54 and with option L37 (DC interface incl. precharging input circuit), the door opening angle is only 110°.

8.50 M60, additional shock protection

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Motor Modules in chassis format

Description

The standard Cabinet Modules are designed according to BGV A 3. With option M60, additional covers (out of reach of accessible control and contact elements) are installed upstream of the power unit.

Safety information

Note

Do not operate without cabinet door(s)

The additional shock protection (option M60) is not a substitute for the cabinet door(s). Cabinets must not be operated **without** cabinet door(s)!

8.51 M70, EMC shield bus

8.51.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- · Chassis format Motor Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

With option M70, an EMC shield bus is incorporated for the use of shielded power cables for power cables and motor supply cables.

The cable shields for the cables routed to the cabinet must be connected to the EMC shield bus in accordance with EMC guidelines.

8.51.2 Connecting the cables to the EMC shield bus

Preparatory steps

- Observe the "five safety rules".
- Allow unimpeded access to the EMC shield bus (if necessary, remove the protective covers during installation work)

Securing the cables to the shield bus

- 1. Remove approximately 5 cm of the protective sheath of the cable around the shield bus.
- 2. Place the shielded cable on the shield bus.
- 3. Snap the clip into the opening provided and tighten it.

8.52 M77, version without component support plates and without additional control components

8.52 M77, version without component support plates and without additional control components

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Booksize Cabinet Kits

Description

If electronic components (Control Unit, terminal module, Sensor Module) are not used in the Booksize Cabinet Kit, the mechanical component support plates are omitted with option M77.

When option L08/L09 is used (motor reactor / 2 motor reactors in series), the motor cables are connected directly to the motor reactor.

The motor cables are connected directly to the Booksize Motor Module.

Table 8- 76 Conductor cross-section when connecting motor cables directly to the Booksize Motor Module

Order number 6SL3720-	Power in kW	Connection cross-section
2TE13-0AB0	2 x 1.6	1.5 6 mm²
2TE15-0AB0	2 x 2.7	1.5 6 mm²
2TE21-0AB0	2 x 4.8	1.5 6 mm²
2TE21-8AB0	2 x 9.7	1.5 6 mm²
1TE13-0AB0	1.6	1.5 6 mm²
1TE15-0AB0	2.7	1.5 6 mm²
1TE21-0AB0	4.8	1.5 6 mm²
1TE21-8AB0	9.7	1.5 6 mm²
1TE23-0AB0	16	1.5 6 mm²
1TE24-5AB0	24	6 50 mm²
1TE26-0AB0	32	6 50 mm²
1TE28-5AB0	46	16 120 mm²
1TE31-3AB0	71	25 120 mm²
1TE32-8AB0	107	25 120 mm²

8.53 M80 to M87, DC busbar system

8.53.1 General information

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- · Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules chassis
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

The DC busbar connects the DC voltage across the drive line-up. The DC busbar comprises an upper busbar (DC P) and a lower busbar (DC N).

The following optional DC busbars are available:

- Option M80 = busbar system 1 x 60 x 10
- Option M81 = busbar system 1 x 80 x 10
- Option M82 = busbar system 1 x 100 x 10
- Option M83 = busbar system 2 x 60 x 10
- Option M84 = busbar system 2 x 80 x 10
- Option M85 = busbar system 2 x 100 x 10
- Option M86 = busbar system 3 x 80 x 10
- Option M87 = busbar system 3 x 100 x 10

Note

Current rating of the DC busbar

The required current intensity of the DC busbar depends on the individual plant configuration. For this reason, a fixed DC busbar thickness is not assigned to the individual Cabinet Modules. The required thickness must be configured for each individual case and specified as option M80 to M87 (mandatory option).

For transport units, integrated busbars are installed at the factory. Connection jumpers are not required inside a transport unit.

For option M26 (side panel on the right), connection jumpers are not required, nor are they permitted.

DC busbar



Figure 8-64 M80 - M87, DC busbar

8.53.2 Safety information

NOTICE

Connecting the DC busbars

With a side-by-side configuration of the cabinet units, the DC busbars of the individual cabinet units must be connected to each other.

8.54 M90, crane transport assembly (top-mounted)

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Motor Modules in chassis format
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

A top-mounted crane transport assembly can be ordered as an option for Cabinet Modules.

Depending on the width of the module, the crane transport assembly consists of either transport eyebolts (for cabinet width \leq 800 mm) or transport rails (for cabinet width \geq 800 mm).

Note

A crane transport assembly is included if transport units are supplied (option Y11).

Safety information



Note the weight!

The transport rails are heavy and must be removed very carefully.

8.55 N52, DC link fuses for Basic Line Modules

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Basic Line Modules

Description

Fuses are installed on the DC side to protect the Basic Line Module.

Installation of DC fuses is recommended if the DC current load in the configured drive line-up can be larger than the rated DC link current of the Basic Line Module.

Furthermore, the DC fuses protect the Basic Line Module against an overvoltage on the DC busbar of the drive line-up in the event of a malfunction.

8.56 P10, measuring instrument for line values (installed in the cabinet doors)

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

• Line Connection Modules

Description

The measuring instrument "DIRIS A40" with display, installed in the cabinet door of the Line Connection Module, acquires measured values of the power supply. In addition to these measured values, additional plant values (such as power and power factor, etc.) are calculated from the measured values using powerful, state-of-the art microprocessors. The measuring instrument is equipped with a serial RS485 interface with JBUS/MODBUS ®, which supports a max. transmission rate of 38.4 kbaud.

The device can measure the following as standard:

- Actual currents per phase and actual currents of the neutral conductor.
- Average currents and maximum currents over programmable time intervals from 8 to 30 min.
- Phase-to-neutral voltages and phase-to-phase voltages
- Frequency (Hz)
- Four-quadrant measurement of the actual, average, and maximum active power (+/-), reactive power (+/-) and apparent power per phase and in total over programmable time intervals from 8 to 30 min.
- Display of active energy in kWh.
- Power factor (PF) per phase and in total with the specifications "L" for inductive and "C" for capacitive.

Note

Current transformers are required in the Line Connection Module to measure line currents. Option L41 (current transformer upstream of the main switch) is included in option P10. The measuring instrument "DIRIS A40" is wired according to connection type 3NBL/4NBL in the factory.

The current transformers must not be operated unloaded.

Note

Additional information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information regarding the "DIRIS A40" measuring instrument can be found in the accompanying operating instructions, These operating instructions are available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.57 P11, measuring instrument for line values with PROFIBUS connection (installed in the cabinet door)

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

Line Connection Modules

Description

A "SENTRON PAC4200" measuring instrument with display, installed in the cabinet door of the Line Connection Module, acquires measured values of the power supply. In addition to these measured values, additional plant values (such as power and power factor, etc.) are calculated from the measured values using powerful, state-of-the art microprocessors. The measuring instrument has a PROFIBUS interface that enables a transfer rate of up to 12 Mbit/s.

The device can measure the following as standard:

- Actual currents per phase and actual currents of the neutral conductor.
- Average currents and maximum currents over programmable time intervals from 1 to 60 min.
- Phase-to-neutral voltages and phase-to-phase voltages
- Frequency (Hz)
- Four-quadrant measurement of the actual, average, and maximum active power (+/-), reactive power (+/-) and apparent power (+/-) per phase and in total over programmable time intervals from 1 to 60 min.
- Display of active energy in kWh.
- Power factor (PF) per phase and in total with the specifications "L" for inductive and "C" for capacitive.

8.57 P11, measuring instrument for line values with PROFIBUS connection (installed in the cabinet door)

Note

Current transformers are required in the Line Connection Module to measure line currents. Option L41 (current transformer upstream of the main switch) is included in option P11. The "SENTRON PAC4200" measuring instrument is wired according to connection type 3P3W in the factory.

The current transformers must not be operated unloaded.

Note

Additional information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information regarding the "SENTRON PAC4200" measuring instrument can be found in the related operating instructions. These operating instructions are available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

8.58 Y11, factory assembly into transport units

Availability of option

This option is available for the following S120 Cabinet Modules:

- Line Connection Modules
- Basic Line Modules
- Smart Line Modules
- Active Line Modules
- Booksize Base Cabinets
- Chassis format Motor Modules
- Central Braking Modules
- Auxiliary Power Supply Modules

Description

Cabinet Modules can be ordered as factory-assembled transport units with a maximum width of up to 2400 mm. In this case, the relevant modules are shipped as interconnected units (both electrically and mechanically).

Note

No additional wiring between the Cabinet Modules is required, with the exception of the DRIVE-CLiQ connections used to interconnect the cabinets.

A crane transport assembly in the form of a crane transport rail is already included if transport units are supplied.

Table 8-77 Installation sequence of the transport unit

Plain text required to order	TU 1 - 16
Transport unit	TU
Consecutive number of the transport unit	1 -
Position of the Cabinet Module within the transport unit	1 6

8.58 Y11, factory assembly into transport units

Index

	Fuse switch disconnector (-Q1), 260 Integration, 257
11	Line infeed, 136 Options, 264
"Fuse switch disconnector" checkback contact, 145	Technical data, 265
"Main contactor" checkback contact, 472	Terminal blocks X45, X46, X47, 137
	X45, X46, X47, 137
	Auxiliary power supply system
A	Availability, 81
Accessory kit	Description, 262
Original roof screws, 56	Fuse protection, 262
Active Interface Modules	Infeed for supplying power, 89
LEDs, 361	Side-by-side installation of cabinet units, 87
Active Line Modules, 31	
Cable routing, 120	
Connection example, 182	В
Customer terminal block (X55), 126	DE4
Description, 181	B51
DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables, 124	VSM10, 404
Integration, 182	Basic Line Modules, 29
Options, 191	Cable routing, 112
Parallel connection to increase power rating, 188	Connection example, 157
PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Control	Customer terminal block (X55), 115
Unit, 122	Description, 156
Technical data, 192	DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables, 114
X41, 189	Integration, 157 Options, 163
X55 (customer terminal block), 126	Parallel connection to increase power rating, 160
Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52), 406	PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Contro
AOP30, 470	Unit, 113
AOP30 advanced operator panel, 384	X41, 161
ARC detection (arc sensor), 502	X55 (customer terminal block), 115
Arc sensor (ARC detection), 502	Benefits, 28
Auxiliary power module	Blade fuses, 335
Basic Line Modules, 88	Booksize Base Cabinets, 201
Connecting cables, 86	Technical data, 207
Connections, 86	Booksize Cabinet Kits, 201
Description, 81	Cable routing, 127
Fuse, 85	Braking Modules, 33
Line Connection Module, 84	Connection example, 512
X100, 83	LEDs, 361
X101, 83	Response thresholds, 508
Auxiliary Power Supply Modules	X21, 512
Cable routing, 136	Braking resistor
Configuration, 258	Cable length (max.), 249
Configuration example, 259	Cable routing, 134
Connection example, 257	Configuring the "Overtemperature" checkback, 251
Customer terminals, 263	Connection, 515
Description, 255	Connection example, 512

Cabinet Modules

Description, 512 Dimension drawings, 513 Dimensions, 517 Duty cycle, 517 PD, switch-on ratio of the braking resistor, 244 Power connections, 250 R1, 516 R2, 516 Setting of the switch-on ratio, 244 Technical data, 252 Braking units, 505 Description, 505 Dimensions, 517 Technical data, 517 Breakaway torques, 234	Center of gravity of the cabinet, 55 Central Braking Modules, 33 Cable length (max.), 249 Cable routing, 134 Configuration, 239 Connection example, 237 Description, 235 Duty cycle, 247 Integration, 237 Interface overview, 241 Interfaces, 240 LEDs, 361 Options, 245 Parallel connection, 240 Technical data, 246 Voltages and power ratings, 236 X2, 135
C	X5.1, 134
Cabinet anti-condensation heating, 503 Cabinet lighting with service socket, 501 Cabinet Modules	X5.2, 134 Chassis Cabinets, 33 Checklist Electrical installation, 65
Connection overview, 74	Mechanical installation, 46
System structure, 36	Circuit breaker
Cable and screw terminals, 269	In withdrawable unit design, 474
Cable lugs, 73	Output-side, 475
Cable marshaling compartment, 522	CompactFlash card, 457
Cable routing, 107	Slot,
Active Line Modules, 120	Connecting cabinet units, 58
Auxiliary Power Supply Modules, 136	Connection
Basic Line Modules, 112	Auxiliary power supply system, 86
Basic rules, 107	Cabinet units installed side-by-side, 58
Booksize Cabinet Kits, 127	To the foundation, 57
Braking resistor, 134	Connection work, 263
Central Braking Modules, 134	Contactor monitoring, 382
Line Connection Modules, 109	Control Interface Module
Motor cable, 127	LEDs, Active Line Module, 358
Motor Modules in chassis format, 127	LEDs, Basic Line Module, 356
Safe Torque Off and Safe Stop 1, 131	LEDs, Smart Line Module, 357
Smart Line Modules, 116	Replacing, frame size FX, 298
Terminal blocks X45, X46, X47, 137	Replacing, frame size GX, 300
Terminal Module TM54F, 131	Replacing, frame size HX, 302
CBC10 Communication Board	Replacing, frame size JX, 304
CAN bus, 369	Control Unit
Interface overview, 370	Replacing, 306
Option G20, 368	Control Unit CU320-2 DP, 416
CBE20 Communication Board	Description of the LED states, 348
Installation, 374	LEDs after booting, 349
Interface overview, 373	LEDs during booting, 348
LEDs, 354	Control Unit CU320-2 PN, 440
MAC address, 373	Description of the LED states, 351
Option G33, 372 PROFINET, 372	LEDs after booting, 352 LEDs during booting, 351

Crane transport aids, 55	E
Crane transport assembly (top-mounted), 543 CU320-2 DP, 416 CU320-2 PN, 440 Current transformer upstream of main breaker, 496 Customer terminal block -X55, 445 Customer terminal block -X55.1, 204 Cylindrical fuses, 335	Electromagnetic fields, 24 EMC shield bus, 539 EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton, 498 Encapsulated fuses, 330 Encoder cable length (max.), 395 Encoder interface -X520, 393 ESD protective measures, 18 External EMERGENCY OFF, 145
D	
D14, 368 DC busbar, 542 Availability, 78 For side-by-side installation of cabinet units, 79 DC fuses Frame size HX, JX, replacement, 333 Frame sizes FX and GX, replacement, 331 DC interface Commissioning, 495 Incl. pre-charging input circuit, 485 Principle of operation, 494 Replacing, 338 DC link capacitors Reforming, 342 DC link fuses, 544 Degrees of protection, 529 Derating, 39 Derating data, 39 Current derating as a function of the installation altitude and ambient temperature, 39 Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m above sea level, 40 Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature, 40 Diagnostics, 347 using LEDs on Control Unit CU320-2 DP, 349 using LEDs on Control Unit CU320-2 PN, 352 Direction of motor rotation, 92 Disconnect the basic interference suppression module, 96 Double Motor Module in Booksize Cabinet Kit format Connection example, 200 DRIVE-CLiQ interface, 453 Dust deposits, 268 Duty cycle	Fan Replacing, Booksize Cabinet Kit, 307 Replacing, frame size FI, 321 Replacing, frame size GI, 323 Replacing, frame size HI, 325 Replacing, frame size HX - left, 315 Replacing, frame size HX - right, 317 Replacing, frame size JI, 327 Replacing, frame size JX, 319 Replacing, frame sizes FB, GB, GD, 311 Replacing, frame sizes FX, GX, 313 Fan power supply K70, 407 Field of application, 27 Filter mats, replacing, 273 Five safety rules, 20 Floor levelness, 50 Flying restart, 404 Forming the DC link capacitors, 342 Foundation, 57 Fuse switch disconnector, 143 Fuses in the fuse switch disconnector Replacing, 331 G G20, 368 G33, 372 G51, 375 G56, 382 Grounded line supply, 96 Grounding switch, 498 Downstream of the internal main breaker, 500
Braking resistor, 250 Motor Modules in booksize format, 211 Motor Modules in chassis format, 234 dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter, 463 dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter, 468	Upstream of the internal main breaker, 499 H Hood, 531 HTL encoder, 403

1	L41, 496
Identification number, 342	L42, 497
Incremental encoder sin/cos 1 Vpp, 2,048, 394	L43, 497
Infeed	L44, 497
Auxiliary power supply system, 89	L45, 498
Installation	L46, 499
CBE20 Communication Board, 374	L47, 500
Line connection from above, 524	L50, 501
Installation device for power blocks, 272	L51, 502
Installation site, 48	L55, 503
Insulation monitoring, 518	L61, L62, L64, L65, 505
Insulation test, 71	L87, 518
Internet addresses, 4	LEDs, 347
IP2 degree of protection, 525	Active Line Module, 358
IP20, 49	Basic Line Module, 356
IP21, 49	CBE20 Communication Board, 354
IP23, IP43, IP54, 528	Central Braking Modules, 361
IT line supply, 96	Control Unit CU320-2 DP, 349
	Control Unit CU320-2 PN,
	Motor Modules in booksize format, 360
K	Motor Modules in chassis format, 359
V04 V05 393	SITOP power supply unit, 365
K01 - K05, 382	Smart Line Module, 357
K08, 384	SMC10 Sensor Module, 362
K46, 386	SMC20 Sensor Module, 362
K48, 391	SMC30 Sensor Module, 363
K50,	TM150, 364
K51, 404	TM54F, 364
K52, 406	Voltage Sensing Module in the Active Interface
K70, 407	Module, 361
K73, 407 K76, 408	License code, 457 Line Connection Modules
K82, 410	Cable routing, 109
	——————————————————————————————————————
K87, 411 K88, 413	Configuration example (frame size HL), 141
K90, 415	Configuration example (frame size JL), 142 Description, 140
K94, 438	Line infeed, 110
K95, 439	Options, 151
KTY84-130 / PTC thermistor, 386	Technical data, 152
KTT04-130 / FTO thermistor, 300	Versions, 146
	X30, 111
L	X40, 111
	X50, 111
L00, 461	Line infeed
L07, 463	Cable routing, 110
L08/L09, 466	Line Modules, 29
L10, 468	Line reactor, 473
L13, 471	LV HRC fuses, 335
L21, 472	2
L22, 473	
L25, 474	M
L34, 475	
L37, 485	M06, 521

M07, 522	Motor connection (112/T1 133
M13, 524	Motor connection (U2/T1, 133 Options, 223
M21, 527	Parallel connection to increase power rating, 217
M23, M43, M54, 528	PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Control
M26, M27, 535	Unit, 128
M51, 540	Signal cables to the SMC10/20/30 Sensor
M59, 537	Module, 132
M60, 538	Small overload, 234
M70, 539	Terminal Module TM54F, 131
M80 - M87, 541	U2/T1, 133
M90, 543	X55 (customer terminal block), 130
MAC address	Motor reactor, 466
CBE20 Ethernet interfaces, 373	Mounting
Main contactor	Canopy to increase the degree of protection to
Line Connection Modules < 800 A, 471	IP21, 527
Maintenance and servicing, 267	Mounting grid arrangement in the cabinet, 203
Measuring instrument	Mounting rails, 55
For line values, in cabinet door, 544	
For line values, with PROFIBUS connection, 545	A.I
Measuring points, verification of isolation from	N
supply, 492	N52, 544
Motor cable	,
Cable routing, 127	
Connection, 89	0
Motor cable lengths, 467	
Motor Modules, 33	Operation in an IT system, 472
Technical data, 224	Operation on an ungrounded line supply, 96
X41 EP terminal / temperature sensor	Option
connection, 220	D14, 368
X46, 222	G20, 368
X55, 220	G33, 372
Motor Modules in booksize format	G56, 382
Configuration, 201	K01 - K05, 382
Description, 198	K08, 384
Duty cycle, 211	K46, 386
Integration, 199	K48, 391
LEDs, 360	K50, 395
Mounting grid arrangement in the cabinet, 203	K51, 404
Options, 205	K52, 406
Replacing, 276	K70, 407
Motor Modules in chassis format, 131	K73, 407
Cable lengths (min.), 218	K76, 408
Cable routing, 127	K82, 410
Configuration, 214	K87, 411
Connection example, 213	K88, 413
Customer terminal block (X55), 130	K90, 415
Description, 212	K94, 438
DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables to the	K95, 439
Control Unit, 129	L00, 461
High overload, 234	L07, 463
Integration, 213	L08/L09, 466
LEDs, 359	L10, 468
•	•

L13, 471	For side-by-side installation of cabinet units, 76
L21, 472	General information, 75
L22, 473	Power block
L25, 474	Installation device, 272
L34, 475	Replacing, frame size FB, 277
L37, 485	Replacing, frame size FX, 283
L41, 496	Replacing, frame size GX, 286
L42, L43, L44, 497	Replacing, frame size HX - left, 289
L45, 498	Replacing, frame size HX - right, 292
L46, L47, 498	Replacing, frame size JX, 295
L50, 501	Replacing, frame sizes GB, GD, 280
L51, 502	Power units
L55, 503	Replacing, 275
L61, L62, L64, L65, 505	Pre-charging input circuit, 485
L87, 518	PROFIBUS
M06, 521	Address switches, 431
M07, 522	Setting the address, 431
M13, 524	PROFIBUS interface, 430
M21, 525	PROFINET
M23, M43, M54, 528	CBE20 Communication Board, 372
M26, M27, 535	PROFINET interface, 455
M51, 540	
M59, 537	
M60, 538	Q
M70, 539	Q1 (fuse switch disconnector), 260
M80 - M87, 541	Q7 (fuse switch disconnector), 485
M90, 543	W (luse switch disconnector), 400
N52, 544	
P10, 544	R
P11, 545	
Y11, 547	R1 (braking resistor), 516
Options	R2 (braking resistor), 516
Active Line Modules, 191	Rating plate, 342
Auxiliary Power Supply Modules, 264	Removal, 56
Basic Line Modules, 163	Replacement fuses,
Central Braking Modules, 245	Replacing, 270
Line Connection Modules, 151	Backup battery of the cabinet operator panel, 340
Motor Modules in booksize format, 205	Control Interface Module, frame size FX, 298
Motor Modules in chassis format, 223	Control Interface Module, frame size GX, 300
Overview, 34	Control Interface Module, frame size HX, 302
Smart Line Modules, 176	Control Interface Module, frame size JX, 304
Original roof screws, 56	Control Unit, 306
Output-side circuit breaker, 475	Cylindrical fuses, 335
Overload reserve, 234	DC fuses, frame size HX, JX, 333
	DC fuses, frame sizes FX, GX, 331
D	DC interface, 338
P	Encapsulated fuses, 330
P10, 544	Fan, Booksize Cabinet Kit, 307
P11, 545	Fan, frame size FI, 321
PE busbar, 75	Fan, frame size GI, 323
Description, 75	Fan, frame size HI, 325
External cables, 77	Fan, frame size HX - left, 315

Fan, frame size HX - right, 317	SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules
Fan, frame size JX, 327	Example of a drive line-up, 26
Fan, frame sizes FB, GB, GD, 311	Main components, 25
Fan, frame sizes FX and GX, 313	Overview, 25
Filter mats, 273	Parallel connection, 26
Fuses in the fuse switch disconnector, 331	Power range extension, 26
LV HRC fuses, 335	System data, 37
Motor Modules in booksize format, 276	Technical data, 37
Power block, frame size FB, 277	Voltage ranges and power ratings, 26
Power block, frame size FX, 283	Single Motor Module in Booksize Cabinet Kit format
Power block, frame size GX, 286	Connection example, 199
Power block, frame size HX - left, 289	SITOP power supply unit
Power block, frame size HX - right, 292	LEDs, 365
Power block, frame size JX, 295	SIZER, 457
Power block, frame sizes GB, GD, 280	Smart Line Modules, 30
Power units, 275	Cable routing, 116
Pre-charging resistors of the DC interface, 339	Connection example, 169
Replacement fuses,	Customer terminal block (X55), 119
Replacing the fan, 310	Description, 168
Required room height, 49	DRIVE-CLiQ connections and signal cables to the
Requirements, 17	Control Unit, 118
Residual risks, 22	Integration, 169
Resolver, 386	Options, 176
Connection example, 390	Parallel connection to increase power rating, 173
RS 232, 385	PROFIBUS or PROFINET connection to the Contro
13 232, 303	Unit, 117
	Technical data, 177
S	X41, 174
9	
S1 (reset key), 242	X55 (customer terminal block), 119 SMC10, 386
S1 (threshold switch), 507	
S2 (reset key), 242	Interface overview, 388 SMC10 Sensor Module
S3 (braking resistor monitoring), 243	
Safe Brake Adapter, 413	Description, 386
230 V AC, 413	LEDs, 362
Safe Brake Control, 413	SMC20, 391
Safe STOP 1, 410	Interface overview, 392
Safe Torque Off, 410	SMC20 Sensor Module
Safety Integrated functions, 410	Description, 391
Safety precautions, 46	LEDs, 362
Safety regulations, 19	SMC30,
Saving the parameter settings, 459	Interface overview, 400
SBC (Safe Brake Control), 413	SMC30 Sensor Module
Serial interface (RS232), 455	Description, 395
Servicing, 268	LEDs, 363
Shipping and handling indicators, 51	SMC30 sensor module for detecting the actual motor
Shock indicator, 51	speed (option K50), 395
Tilt indicator, 51	SS1 (Safe Stop 1) (time-controlled), 410
Shock indicator, 51	SSI encoder, 395
Shock protection, 538	STARTER, 470
Side panels, 535	System requirements, 458
p	STO (Safe Torque Off), 410
	Storage, 45

Switch disconnector, 488	V
System data SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules, 37	Ventilation, 268
System structure, 36	Voltage Peak Limiter, 468
System structure, 50	Voltage Sensing Module
	K51, 404
T	LEDs, 361
	VSM10, 404
T1 (thermostatic switch connection), 516	
T2 (thermostatic switch connection), 516	X
T2 (transformer), 260	^
Technical data Active Line Modules, 192	X1 (supply infeed), 140
Active Line Modules, 192 Auxiliary Power Supply Modules, 265	X1/X2 (motor connection), 536
Basic Line Modules, 164	X10 (thermostatic switch checkback contact), 251
Booksize Base Cabinets, 207	X100, 453
Braking resistors, 252	X100 (LCM), 85
Braking units, 517	X101, 453
Central Braking Modules, 246	X101 (auxiliary power module), 87
Line Connection Modules, 152	X102, 453
Motor Modules, 224	X103, 453
SINAMICS S120 Cabinet Modules, 37	X120 (EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the cabinet
Smart Line Modules, 177	door), 498 X122 (digital inputs/outputs), 450
Technical support, 4	X122 (digital inputs/outputs), 450 X126, 430
Terminal block -X50, 143	X132 (digital inputs/outputs), 452
Terminal blocks X45, X46, X47	X140, 455
Cable routing, 137	X1400 (Ethernet interface), 373
Terminal Module TM150, 375	X150, 455
Terminal Module TM54F, 411	X2 (control terminals), 242
Thermostatic switch	X2 (terminal block), 135
Connection, 516	X21 (Braking Modules), 512
Tightening torques, 269 Tilt indicator, 51	X21 (digital inputs/outputs), 506
TM150, 375	X240 (cabinet anti-condensation heating), 504
Connection, 377	X30
LEDs, 364	Cable routing, 111
Protective conductor connection and shield	X30 (external EMERGENCY OFF), 145
support, 379	X40
TM54F	Cable routing, 111
LEDs, 364	X40 (external 230 V AC auxiliary infeed), 145
Tool, 268	X41, 448 X41 (Active Line Modules), 189
Transformer (-T2), 260	X41 (Basic Line Modules), 161
Tap, 260	X41 (Motor Module - chassis format), 220
Transformer for voltage adaptation (-T2), 260	X41 (Smart Line Modules), 174
Transport, 43	X45, 137
Transport eyebolts, 55	X45 (for tapping the line voltage), 263
Transport unit, 547	X451 (CAN bus), 370
Transport units, 55	X452 (CAN bus), 371
TTL encoder, 403	X46, 137
	X46 (brake control and monitoring), 222
	X46 (power supply for SITOP), 263
	X46 brake control and monitoring, 449

X47, 137 X47 (for tapping the 230 V AC, 1-phase voltage), 263 X5 (braking resistor connection), 242 X5.1, 134 X5.2, 134 X50 Cable routing, 111 X50 ("circuit breaker" checkback contact), 474 X50 ("Fuse switch disconnector" checkback contacts), 145 X50 ("main contactor" checkback contact), 472 X50 (checkback contact), 145 X520, 395 SMC30, 401 X520 (encoder interface), 389 X520 (SMC20), 393 X521, 402 X531, 402 X55, 445 X55 (customer terminal block), 220 X55.1 (temperature monitoring), 204 X60 (line current transformer), 497 X70 (Grounding switch upstream of internal main breaker), 499 X71 (Grounding switch downstream of internal main breaker), 500



Y11, 547

Siemens AG Industry Sector Drive Technologies Large Drives P.O. Box 4743 90025 NUREMBERG GERMANY Subject to change without prior notice © Siemens AG 2006 - 2013

www.siemens.com/automation